LATIN
BY THE NATURAL METHOD

FIRST YEAR

(Third Revised Edition)

by

WILLIAM G. MOST, PH.D.

Professor of Latin

Loras College

Dubuque, Iowa

Henry Regnery Company

114 West Illinois St.

Chicago, Ill. 60610

Printed in the United States of America

FOREWORD

On December 31, 1939, in the encyclical *On Education* His Holiness Pope Pius XI wrote about the Christian teacher:

> . . . in accepting the new, he will not hastily abandon the old, which the experience of centuries has found expedient and profitable. This is particularly true in the teaching of Latin, which in our days is falling more and more into disuse, because of the unreasonable rejection of methods so successfully used by that sane humanism, whose highest development was reached in the schools of the Church.[1]

The thirteenth and sixteenth centuries were certainly eras when Christian humanism flourished. Also, methods of teaching are means to the objectives; and methods are naturally adapted as goals vary. Hence, the Holy Father's words clearly manifest his desire for a return to the objectives and methods of Latin teaching used with success in the thirteenth and sixteenth centuries, coupled with modern improvements.

Precisely that is what is achieved by Father William G. Most's textbooks for teaching and learning Latin by "The Natural Method." They employ, not slavishly but with wise adaptation to changed modern circumstances, the objective (facility in using Latin as a means of communication) and methods (habit formation by frequent repetition) used in 1250 or 1550. They lead the student to reproduce the natural processes of habit formation by which Roman children learned Latin as their mother tongue. While doing this, the books do not discard the valuable training of mind, knowledge of grammar, and other benefits hitherto sought by Latin teachers of the twentieth century, but merely postpone their achievement until after the student has gained facility in using Latin. Also, they apply to the teaching of Latin many of the most effective techniques of teaching modern languages, and much that has been learned from the modern science called "descriptive linguistics." They are the first published American Catholic Latin textbooks which do all this.

The great change in objectives and procedures of teaching Latin between the sixteenth and the twentieth centuries can be sketched here only with the utmost brevity.[2]

In the centuries of St. Thomas Aquinas (1225-1274) and St. Ignatius of Loyola (1491-1556) virtually all education was imparted from Latin textbooks explained by oral Latin. The pupils learning Latin were almost entirely between the ages of six and about fourteen. The chief objective of the teachers was to impart the *art* of reading, writing, and speaking Latin with facility, that it might be used as a means of communicating thought, or, in other words, as an indispensable tool in all higher studies and then in later life. They made extensive use of Latin conversation and of textbooks of easy Latin, such as dialogues, or "colloquia" about everyday life, the *Pater, Ave,* psalms, and Gospels. Thus by means of easy materials the teachers gave their pupils the copious practice and repetition which alone develop a set of habits—and that is the essence of learning a language successfully. The pupils, in truth, felt a sense of achievement in expressing their thought in a new language. Learning Latin was fun rather than drudgery. The Latin words directly evoked the ideas, not vernacular equivalents or grammatical nomenclature which was laboriously used to catch the ideas. Through mastering the threefold art of reading, writing, and speaking Latin the pupils automatically acquired much training of mind and cultural knowledge. But nobody thought of setting up discipline of mind or cultural knowledge as the goal of Latin teaching. That goal was mastery of the art of using Latin with ease.

This entire situation gradually changed from about 1700 onwards. The vernaculars replaced Latin in textbooks and as the medium of instruction. As Latin more and more ceased to be necessary as the means of acquiring and expressing learning, men were less and less motivated to study it, and its place in the curriculum continually waned. To defend it, especially after the times of John Locke (1632-1704) and Christian Wolff (1679-1754), the teachers pointed to the training of mind and the cultural knowledge it brought. Growing stress was put upon knowledge of Ciceronian style and grammatical analysis. In time, pupils began Latin not at the age of six but at fourteen. They learned declensions, conjugations, rules of syntax, vocabulary lists, and grammatical nomenclature. Then, after 1890 in the United States, they decoded the long difficult sentences of Caesar, and parsed the words. They repeated the process with a speech or two of Cicero and a few books of Vergil. They were acquiring knowledge about Latin, but not the *art* of using it with ease as a means of communicating thought. (Ability to read Latin at sight was ranked only in last place among the nineteen objectives of Latin teaching listed by the teachers during

[1] *Acta Apostolicae Sedis,* 22, 80; America Press Edition, p. 29.

[2] For a longer account, see "A Sketch of the History of Latin Teaching," pp. 218-258 of Ganss, G.E., S.J., *St. Ignatius' Idea of a Jesuit University,* Marquette University Press, Milwaukee, 1956.

the Classical Investigation of 1923.) With most students the learning of Latin became drudgery rather than fun and a growing sense of achievement. Enrollments fell. In 1910, 49.05% of the American high school students were taking Latin. By 1954, only 7% were studying it (-1.3% in Alabama, 5.8% in Wisconsin, 16.4% in Connecticut).[3]

Most Americans who have studied Latin, with our priests and seminarians included, have employed this method, which they thought was "traditional." But as something fully developed, this tradition scarcely goes farther back than 1880; and even in its beginnings it hardly antedates the seventeenth century.

In contrast to this method of grammatical analysis, Father Most's textbooks reproduce much of the "natural method" by which children learn their native language. Hence, the significance of Father Most's books is manifestly great for the Latin classes in any Catholic high schools or colleges. So much of our Catholic doctrine and culture have been deposited in Latin that we want many of our educated Catholics to be able to use Latin with ease.

But the special significance of Father Most's texts is for the Latin classes in our seminaries. Here the students still have much the same cogent motives to master the *art* of using Latin with ease as the pupils of the thirteenth or sixteenth century. They need it as an indispensable means of communicating thought in their higher studies, and afterwards throughout life. The objectives (knowledge about Latin and training of mind) and corresponding methods (grammatical analysis and translation) "traditional" since 1880 have taken over in our seminaries; and there too the students have been experiencing an ever growing inability to use Latin. Father Most's textbooks can contribute much towards revolutionizing the teaching of Latin by bringing back, as the chief objective, the *art* of reading, writing, and (when desired) speaking Latin with ease. Thus they will help towards realizing not only the desires of Pope Pius XI cited above, but also those expressed by Pope Pius XII to the Carmelite Congress on September 13, 1951:

> Alas, the Latin language, the glory of priests, now has rather few devotees, and even they are constantly languishing. . . . Let there be no priest who does not know how to speak and read it easily and quickly. Beyond this, may there arise among you some neither mediocre nor few who can write it even in a compressed and elegant style of speech.[4]

Towards the accomplishment of these lofty objectives, our hope and prayer is that Father Most's important textbooks using the "natural method" will have a wider and wider use.

GEORGE E. GANSS, S.J., PH.D.
Director, Department of Classics,
Marquette University,
January 20, 1957

[3] *The F.L. Program, Report No. 2* (August, 1955), Boston, D.C. Heath Co., p. 5.
[4] *Acta Apostolicae Sedis* 43, 737.

Table of Contents

LECTIO PRIMA

De tertia persona in numero singulari in tempore perfecto
De casu nominativo et de casu obiectivo in numero singulari

María hábuit parvum agnum.
Agnus fuit albus.
María venit in scholam.
Agnus venit in scholam.
Agnus venit cum María.
Marcus vidit agnum in schola.
Agnus dixit: baa, baa.

Mary had a . . . (three guesses)

hábuit-*had*
parvus-*small, little*
agnus-*lamb*
albus-*white*
fuit-*was*
venit-*came*
cum-*with*
vidit-*saw*
dixit-*said*

We Are Discovered

Colúmbus fuit nauta. Sed Columbus non hábuit navem. Colúmbus venit ad Regínam Isabéllam. Colúmbus dixit: Mundus est rotúndus. Mundus non est planus. Regína dedit pecúniam. Colúmbus non invénit Índiam. Colúmbus invénit Américam. América non fuit parva.

Vocabularium

dedit-*gave*	sed-*but*
dixit-*said*	agnus-*lamb*
fuit-*was*	mundus-*world*
hábuit-*had*	nauta-*sailor*
invénit-*found*	navis-*ship*
venit-*came*	parva-*small*
vidit-*saw*	parvus-*small*
ad-*to*	pecúnia-*money*
cum-*with*	planus-*flat*
ergo-*therefore*	puélla-*girl*
in-*in, into, on*	regína-*queen*
non-*not*	rotúndus-*round*

Now Let's Think

Here is an English sentence: *Marcus saw the lamb* (Marcus vidit agnum). There are three important words in it: *Marcus* is the subject; it is in the nominative case. The verb is *saw*. The object is *lamb*; therefore, it is in the objective case. Notice that the Latin verbs above all end in-*it*. Notice that the word *lamb* in English, comes after the verb. *Lamb* is the object. In Latin we do not depend on the order of words to show the object—we depend on the **ending.** Notice that many words above end in *-m*. That is the ending for the object. Some have *-am*: some have *-um*: some have *-em*. Notice the various endings for the nominative case. We need not be concerned about them today. After words like *ad, cum*, and *in*, we have still other endings. Do not bother about them today. We can understand the story without knowing about them.

Notice also that Marcus is just *one* person. So we say the subject is *nominative singular*. There is also only *one* lamb in school. That is *singular* too. More than one would be *plural*. More than one lamb would not only be plural. It would be too much. So we could say that the object in our sentence, *agnum*, is objective singular. And we could say that the subject in our sentence, *Marcus*, is nominative singular. There is no Latin word for *the*, no word for *a* or *an*. Just supply these in English when you need them.

Columbus and Lamb Stew

Colúmbus non fuit puélla. María fuit puélla. Colúmbus non fuit planus. Fuit Colúmbus rotúndus? Colúmbus non hábuit pecúniam. Isabélla hábuit pecúniam. Isabélla non hábuit parvum agnum. Isabélla hábuit pecúniam. Colúmbus non hábuit parvum agnum. María hábuit parvum agnum. María non dedit pecúniam. Isabélla dedit pecúniam. Sed María non dedit parvum agnum. Isabélla non venit in scholam. Colúmbus non venit in scholam. Colúmbus venit in Américam. Colúmbus non venit in Américam cum agno. Colúmbus non venit in Américam cum Isabélla. Isabélla non venit in Américam cum Colúmbo. Isabélla non venit in navem. Agnus

albus non venit in navem. María non venit in navem. Agnus albus non fuit in Índia. Colúmbus non fuit in Índia. Índia non est agnus. Índia non est navis. Colúmbus fuit albus. Sed Índia non fuit alba. Mundus fuit rotúndus. Sed Índia non fuit alba. Mundus fuit rotúndus. Sed Índia non fuit rotúnda.

Exercise

Find all the English words that are similar to those in the vocabulary. This should be done with every vocabulary.

LECTIO SECUNDA

De tertia persona in numero plurali in tempore perfecto
De casu obiectivo in numero plurali

Quinque (5) Porci: or:
Some get to Market. Some get none.

Hic (*this*) parvus porcus venit in forum. Hic parvus porcus remánsit domi. Hic parvus porcus hábuit carnes bovínas assas. Hic parvus porcus non hábuit. Hic parvus porcus exclamávit: Oui! Oui! Oui! Porci dixérunt: Oink! Oink!

SUMMARY: The Romans didn't know the truth about the founding of Rome: What Romulus and Remus didn't do, the Etruscans did.

Roma fuit urbs magna. Románi amavérunt Romam. Roma fuit antíqua. Románi dixérunt quod Rómulus et Remus fundavérunt Romam. Sed non dixérunt veritátem.

In anno millésimo (*1000 BC*) ante Christum, viri iam fuérunt in terra Romána. Etrúsci (*Etruscans*) fundavérunt Romam. Etrúsci amavérunt Romános. Románi amavérunt terras Románas. Sed non habuérunt urbes magnas.

forum-*market, forum*
remánsit-*remained*
domi-*at home*
carnes bovínas assas-*roast beef*
exclamávit-*shouted*
urbs-*city*
magna-*great*
amavérunt-*loved*
quod-*that*
dixérunt-*said*
fundavérunt-*founded*
véritas-*truth*
fuérunt-*were*
vir-*man*
iam-*already*
terra-*land*

VOCABULARIUM

amávit-*loved*	annus-*year*
exclamávit-*shouted*	forum-*market, forum*
remánsit-*remained*	magnus-*great, large*
domi-*at home*	terra-*land*
hic-*this*	urbs-*city*
quod-*that*	vir-*man*
ante-*before*	véritas-*truth*
iam-*already*	

NOW LET'S THINK

VERBS: Last time we saw verbs ending in *-it*. They were singular. The subject of those verbs was singular. But when the subject is plural, the verbs must be plural too. To make the verbs plural, we change the ending *-it* to *-erunt*. But we do not care if the object is plural. That does not affect the verb.

To sum up: we have two verb endings so far: *-it* for singular: *-erunt* for plural.

NOUNS: But on nouns we can have four different endings now. We can have singular or plural for the subject (nominative case). And we can have singular or plural for the object (objective case). We will not bother to learn the subject patterns today. But we could look at the object patterns.

We have several different types of nouns. Let us look at one of each family. We will give singular and plural objective case endings for each.

1.		2.		3.	
terram	terras	porcum	porcos	urbem	urbes

Therefore the endings are:

-am	-as	-um	-os	-em	-es

Notice that some words are much longer in the objective case than they are in the nominative: for example

véritas	veritátem	urbs	urbem

ADJECTIVES: Words like *magnus* and *parvus* are adjectives. For the present, just be satisfied to get their meaning, which is easy.

QUOD: Notice how *quod* was used. We have used it only in combinations such as these: he says that, or he thinks that. We call this one use of *quod*: the *dixit quod* pattern

or the *indirect statement*. In it we tell, without quote marks, and in an inexact way, what someone says or thinks.

A Bit More Stew

María et Marcus vidérunt agnum. Agnus fuit in schola. Marcus et María dixérunt quod agnus fuit in schola. Vidérunt agnum in schola. Non vidérunt Colúmbum in schola. Non dixérunt quod Colúmbus fuit in terra Romána. Sed agnus exclamávit in schola. Agnus dixit: *baa*. Colúmbus dixit quod agnus dixit: *baa*. Porci non fuérunt in schola. Porci fuérunt in terra Romána. Porci dixérunt: *oink*. Porci dixérunt: *oui!* Porci non fuérunt albi. Porci fuérunt rotúndi. Hic porcus fuit in urbe. Agnus non dixit:*oink*. Colúmbus non dixit quod agnus dixit: *oink*. Colúmbus dixit quod agnus dixit: *baa*. Colúmbus veritátem dixit. Marcus dixit quod agnus dixit: *oink*. Marcus veritátem non dixit. Colúmbus non hábuit porcos. Agni venérunt in navem. Colúmbus amávit agnos. Colúmbus non amávit porcos. Colúmbus invénit agnos in América. Regína non fuit parva. Regína dedit pecúniam. Marcus amávit puéllam.

LECTIO TERTIA

De ablativo singulari
De praepositionibus

SUMMARY: Rome at first was ruled by Etruscan kings. But the last king, Tarquin, became arrogant. The Romans drove him out.

In primis annis Románi habuérunt reges. Reges fuérunt Etrúsci. Etrúsci erant in throno Románo. Etrúsci regnavérunt in terra Romána. Primi reges fuérunt boni. Sed rex últimus fuit malus. Hic rex últimus fuit Tarquínius. Románi non amavérunt Tarquínium. Tarquínius fuit rex malus. Non fuit rex bonus. Non fuit rex magnus. Rex malus non est rex magnus. Rex malus est rex parvus. Tarquínius non fuit magnus. Fuit malus. Ergo Románi non amavérunt Tarquínium regem. Ante Tarquínium reges fuérunt boni. Sed Tarquínius non fuit bonus. Ergo Tarquínius non remánsit in terra Romána. Tarquínius non amávit veritátem. Románi dixérunt quod Tarquínius fuit malus. Ergo non remánsit in urbe. Sed Románi remansérunt in urbe.

primus-*first*
rex-*king*
Etrúsci-*Etruscans*
erant-*were*
regnávit-*ruled*
bonus-*good*
últimus-*last*
malus-*bad*
est-*is*

VOCABULARIUM

est-*is*	malus-*bad, evil*
regnávit-*ruled*	primus-*first*
quando-*when*	rex-*king*
bonus-*good*	últimus-*last*

COGITEMUS NUNC (now let's think)

ABLATIVE CASE: There isn't much new in this lesson. So let us catch up on a bit of old business. Notice the phrases:

in terra Romána, in throno Románo, in urbe.

They all have the word *in*. That word is a preposition. Notice the endings of the words that come after it: *a*, *o*, and *e*. They are in a special case: the *ablative* case.

The preposition *in* often (not always) takes the ablative case. Let us notice what the ablative endings are:

terr*a*   thron*o*   urb*e*

So we see three families of nouns again in the ablative, just as there were in the nominative and objective cases. The ablative endings we have here are all singular. They are:

-a   -o   -e

Let us add up all the noun endings we now know, keeping the three classes of nouns separate (the exact name for the three classes or families is DECLENSIONS).

	1. Sing.	1. Pl.	2. Sing.	2. Pl.	3. Sing.	3. Pl.
Objective	am	as	um	os	em	es
Ablative	a		o		e	

Now let us turn back to the first two lessons and find other prepositions: What case comes after *cum*? It is the ablative which ALWAYS comes after *cum*. We also saw the preposition *ad*. What case comes after it? It is ALWAYS the objective case.

But our old friend the preposition *in* sometimes takes the objective case. Remember some of the sentences we have already seen:

María venit *in* schol*am*. Colúmbus venit in Améric*am*.

Now what is the difference between the following two sentences?

1. María venit in schol*am*.
2. María fuit in schol*a*.

In 1. Mary is going somewhere—she is *moving into* somewhere.

In 2. Mary is going nowhere—she is stuck *in* school.

Therefore—sometimes *in* means *into*, motion travelling into; it then takes the *objective* case. Sometimes *in* means *in* (or *on*)—no motion: it then takes the *ablative* case.

If we add up all our prepositions thus far we get:

ad with *objective* means *to, up to*
ante with *objective* means *before*
cum with *ablative* means *with*
in with *objective* means *into* (*motion*)
in with *ablative* means *in* or *on* (*no motion*).

Find all examples of prepositions in the text thus far.

Now for Some Exercise

Look for ablative patterns.

Etrúsci fuérunt reges in terra Romána. Etrúsci venérunt in terram Románam. Etrúsci fuérunt in terra Romána in anno sescentésimo (*600*) ante Christum. Colúmbus venit in terram Americánam. Sed Status Foederáti Américae (*guess what*) non fuérunt in terra quando Colúmbus venit. Colúmbus non invénit Status Foederátos Américae. Fuit Geórgius Wáshington vir bonus? Status Foederáti Américae fuérunt boni et magni. Colúmbus fuit primus vir albus in América. Colúmbus dixit quod invénit Américam. Colúmbus veritátem dixit. Geórgius Wáshington non dixit quod invénit Américam. Geórgius veritátem dixit. María non dixit quod invénit Américam. María dixit quod invénit agnum album. Dixit quod invénit agnum album in schola. Agnus venit ad scholam. Agnus venit in scholam cum María. Románi non dixérunt quod Etrúsci fundavérunt Romam. Agnus non fuit in América quando Colúmbus venit. Agnus albus non venit in Américam cum Colúmbo. Agnus albus remánsit cum María. Sed agnus albus non remánsit domi. Agnus albus venit in scholam cum María. Hic agnus albus fuit primus agnus albus in schola. Hic agnus albus fuit últimus agnus albus in schola. Agnus albus non remánsit in schola. Agnus exclamávit *baa* in schola. Ergo Marcus non amávit agnum album. María non amávit porcos. Porci non fuérunt albi.

LECTIO QUARTA

Nihil novi hodie: veteribus studeamus
Nothing new today, let's study old (things).

SUMMARY: After the expulsion of Tarquin, there was war with the Etruscans. The Romans attempt to burn the bridge leading to the city. The Etruscans try to cross. Horatius holds them off. Horatius makes a grand slam.

Postquam Románi expulérunt Tarquínium bellum habuérunt. Tarquínius enim Etrúscus fuit. Ergo Etrúsci venérunt ad bellum cum Románis. Etrúsci dixérunt quod Románi mali fuérunt: expulérunt Tarquínium. Románi dixérunt quod Tarquínius malus fuit: ergo expulérunt Tarquínium. Bellum non parvum fuit. Bellum fuit magnum. Multi viri magni fuérunt in bello. Viri Románi amavérunt Romam. Exclamavérunt quod Tarquínius malus tyránnus fuit. Viri Románi dixérunt veritátem. Tarquínius fuit tyránnus malus.

Etiam rex Etrúscus venit cum Tarquínio ad bellum. Rex Etrúscus fuit Lars Porsénna. Románi vidérunt exércitum Etrúscum. Exércitus Etrúscus magnus fuit. Románi vidérunt quod exércitus Etrúscus magnus fuit. Sed exércitus Románus etiam magnus fuit. Viri Románi magni fuérunt. Sed viri Etrúsci etiam magni fuérunt. Non parvi fuérunt. Ergo viri Románi et viri Etrúsci paravérunt ad pugnam. Viri Etrúsci dixérunt: Románi mali sunt: expulérunt Tarquínium. Sed Románi dixérunt quod Tarquínius malus fuit. Románi non agni fuérunt—viri fuérunt. Románi fuérunt ad urbem. Stetérunt ad pontem. Étiam Etrúsci stetérunt ad pontem Románum. Románi iecérunt ignem in pontem. Vir Románus magnus stetit in ponte. Hic vir fuit Horátius. Amávit Romam. Sed Etrúsci venérunt in pontem. Ignis venit in pontem. Pons cécidit in aquam. Horátius étiam cécidit in aquam.

postquam-*after*
bellum-*war*
éxpulit-*expelled*
enim-*for*
étiam-*also, even*
exércitus-*army*
parávit-*prepared*
pugna-*battle*
sunt-*are*
ad pontem-*near the bridge*
stetit-*stood*
pons-*bridge*
iecit-*threw*
ignis-*fire*
cécidit-*fell*

VOCABULARIUM

cécidit-*fell*	postquam-*after* (*conjunction*)
éxpulit-*expelled*	ubi-*where*
iécit-*threw*	aqua-*water*
parávit-*prepared*	bellum-*war*
stetit-*stood*	exércitus-*army*
ad-*near* (*with objective*)	ignis-*fire*
enim-*for*	pons-*bridge*
étiam-*even, also*	pugna-*battle*

VIDEAMUS FORMAS VETERES:
Let us see the old patterns:

VERBS: Let us review all the verb forms we have learned: we have seen only two forms. Verbs that end in *-it* and *-erunt*. They are third person *singular* and third person *plural*. They belong to the tense (time) that we call *perfect*. The perfect tense refers to something that is past.

NOUNS: On nouns we have used three cases: nominative, objective, and ablative.

The nominative is the case for the subject.

The objective is the case for the direct object of a verb. It is also used for the object of some prepositions: *ad, ante,* and *in* (when *in* means *into*: motion). The ablative case so far has been used only after some prepositions: *cum* and *in* (when *in* means *in* or *on*—no motion).

We have not yet bothered to learn the nominative patterns. But we do know the objective patterns in three declensions:

1. -am -as 2. -um -os 3. -em -es

We know the ablative singular endings for these three declensions: 1. *-a* 2. *-o* 3. *-e*.

Constructions: We have learned some kinds of dependent clauses:

We have seen *quod* for indirect statements after verbs of saying.

We have seen *quando* in the sense of *when*.

We have seen *postquam* in the sense of *after* (It never means *afterwards*.)

Enim: Notice the odd word *enim*. It means *for*. But it can never be the first word in its own clause. If I want to say: For the Romans were great—I may say:

Románi enim fuérunt magni. *But not:* Enim Románi fuérunt magni.

Nunc Exerceamus Nos
(Now let us exercise ourselves)

Look for object patterns.

Tarquínius fuit rex malus. Ergo Románi expulérunt regem malum. Sed Tarquínius venit cum Etrúscis contra (*against*) Romam. Etrúsci paravérunt exércitum magnum. Románi étiam paravérunt exércitum magnum. Colúmbus non venit cum Etrúscis. Et agnus albus non venit cum Etrúscis. Agnus enim Tarquínium non amávit. Agnus enim dixit *baa* Tarquínio (*to Tarquinius*). Sed Tarquínius non iécit agnum in aquam. Agnus enim in ponte non fuit. Fuítne (*Note: The little ending -ne is often attached to the first word of a question unless that word is already a question word.*) Tarquínius in ponte? Non. Tarquínius in ponte non fuit. Horátius in ponte fuit. Sed Horátius non remánsit in ponte. Ignis enim in pontem venit. Románi ignem iecérunt in pontem. Etrúsci enim in ponte fuérunt. Pons non amávit ignem. Pons ergo cécidit in aquam. Horátius étiam in aquam cécidit. Horátius enim non hábuit navem. Horátius non stetit in ponte cum igne. Pons etiam non stetit. Colúmbus non vidit ignem in ponte. Colúmbus enim non fuit in ponte quando ignis venit. Fuítne Colúmbus in urbe Romána quando ignis venit? Non. Colúmbus étiam non fuit in América quando ignis venit. Colúmbus non dixit quod fuit in América quando ignis venit in pontem Románum. Colúmbus dixit veritátem. Colúmbus enim non fuit in mundo in illo (*that*) anno.

LECTIO QUINTA

De ablativo plurali

SUMMARY: The Romans make two consuls instead of the kings. But there is strife between the two classes in the state: Patricians and plebeians. The plebeians walk out to the Sacred Mount. But they come back when the patricians create a new office: the tribunes of the people, to protect them.

Románi expulérunt Etrúscos. Nunc Etrúsci non sunt reges in terra Romána. Románi non sunt reges in terra Romána, sed Románi fecérunt cónsules duos (*two*). Cónsules fuérunt viri boni. Reges Etrúsci fuérunt mali. Sed cónsules non sunt mali—viri magni sunt. Cónsules habuérunt magnam potestátem. In urbe Romána cives pugnavérunt cum cívibus. Románi patrícii fuérunt dívites: magnam pecúniam habuérunt. Patrícii étiam magnam potestátem habuérunt. Sed plebs Romána fuérunt paúperes. Plebs non habuérunt pecúniam. Plebs non habuérunt potestátem in urbe. Plebs voluérunt potestátem. Plebs voluérunt pecúniam. Patrícii non dedérunt pecúniam. Patrícii non dedérunt potestátem in urbe. Ergo plebs pugnavérunt cum patríciis. Plebs non remansérunt in urbe. Plebs venérunt in Sacrum Montem. Patrícii exclamavérunt: Veníte in urbem! Sed plebs remánsit in Monte Sacro. Magni patrícii venérunt ad plebem. Dixérunt: VENITE! veníte in urbem Románam! Sed plebs remánsit in Monte Sacro. Ergo patrícii creavérunt offícium novum. Creavérunt tribúnos plebis (*of the plebs*). Fuérunt duo (*two*) tribúni plebis. Ergo plebs non remansit in Monte Sacro. Plebs venit in urbem. Plebs venit cum tribúnis. Tribúni magnam potestátem habuérunt. Cónsules habuérunt magnam potestátem. Sed tribúni étiam habuérunt magnam potestátem.

nunc-*now*
sunt-*are*
fecit-*made*
consul-*consul*
potéstas-*power*
civis-*citizen*
patrícius-*patrician*
dives-*rich*
plebs-*plebeian(s)*
vóluit-*wished*
veníte-*come*
offícium-*office*
novus-*new*
tribúnus-*tribune*

VOCABULARIUM

fecit-*made, did*	civis, i-*citizen*
sunt-*are*	novus-*new*
vóluit-*wished, willed*	potéstas-*power*
nunc-*now*	

COGITEMUS NUNC

NOUNS IN VOCABULARY: Thus far we have been learning the nominative singular in vocabularies. Now that we have the ablative, we shall learn both the nominative and the ablative singular. We can tell what family the noun belongs to by the ablative singular.

Therefore, the ablative singular does two things for us:

1. It shows which declension a noun belongs to (and so we know which set of endings to use).
2. It shows the base on which we build the endings (ablative singular minus ending).

Now, to help you bring your vocabulary notebook up to date, here are the ablatives of all the nouns we have learned so far:

agnus, o	pons, ponte
annus, o	potéstas, potestáte
aqua, a	puélla, a
bellum, o	pugna, a
civis, i	regína, a
forum, o	rex, rege
ignis, i	terra, a
mundus, o	urbs, urbe
nauta, a	véritas, veritáte
navis, i	vir, viro
pecunia, a	

(*Exercitus* is fourth declension, which we shall see later. Ablative is: *exercitu*).

ABLATIVE PLURALS: The ablative plural endings for the three families are: 1. *-is* (e.g., *nautis*) 2. *-is* (e.g.,

agnis) 3. *-ibus* (e.g., *cívibus*). If we add it all up we get both the singular and the plural of the ablative thus:

1.		2.		3.	
Sing.	-a	Sing.	-o	Sing.	-i *or* -e
Pl.	-is	Pl.	-is	Pl.	-ibus

Notice that some third declension nouns have *-i*, while some have *-e*. We shall see more about that fact later on. It makes little difference to us.

EXPLETIVE "THERE": AN INTRODUCTORY WORD: Notice this sentence: *Non sunt reges in terra Románа.* We could translate it in two ways. 1. Kings are not in the Roman land. 2. *There* are not kings in the Roman land.

The word *there* in the second sentence is an expletive (a "filler"). Latin does very well without it. It is used in English sometimes to start a sentence which has the verb *to be* (any form) in it. This use of the word *there* is different from the use in which it means "in that place." Latin does have a word that means *there* in the sense of "in the place." But Latin has no expletive *there*. So we will fill it in in English whenever we need it.

Plebs: This word is collective: the form is singular, but the sense is plural—so—we can use either a singular or a plural verb with it. Find examples in the story above.

EXERCEAMUS NOS
(Let us exercise ourselves)

Ubi sunt Románi? Románi sunt in urbe Romána. Suntne plebs in urbe Romána? Non. Plebs non est in urbe Romána. Plebs est in Monte Sacro. Plebs venérunt ex urbe (*out of the city*). Venérunt in Montem Sacrum. Non remansérunt in urbe. Estne Colúmbus in Monte Sacro? Non. Colúmbus non est in Monte Sacro. Colúmbus non est in urbe. Colúmbus est in navi. Navis est in aqua. Ubi est agnus? Agnus non est in Monte Sacro. Agnus est in schola. Marcus non vóluit agnum in schola. Sed Marcus vóluit Maríam. Marcus dixit: O! María est agna parva! Marcus amávit Maríam. María amávit Marcum. María étiam dixit: O! Marcus est agnus parvus. Estne Colúmbus agnus parvus? Non. Colúmbus hábuit uxórem (*wife*). Uxor non dixit: Colúmbus est agnus parvus. Uxor dixit quod Colúmbus fuit porcus magnus. Sed uxor amávit Colúmbum. Et Colúmbus amávit uxórem. Colúmbus non fuit porcus magnus. Colúmbus non fuit porcus parvus. Colúmbus non fuit porcus. Sed Colúmbus fuit rotúndus. Mundus étiam est rotúndus. Agnus étiam est rotúndus. Mundus non est planus. Pecúnia est rotúnda. Ergo: mundus est rotúndus—et pecúnia est rotúnda: estne mundus pecúnia? Non. Mundus non est pecúnia. Sed viri mali dixérunt quod pecúnia est rex in mundo. Horátius hábuit pecúniam. Horátius étiam stetit in ponte. Sed pons cécidit in aquam. Ignis cécidit in pontem. Románi pugnavérunt cum Etrúscis. Sed patrícii étiam pugnavérunt cum plebe. Cives pugnavérunt cum Etrúscis. Sed patrícii étiam pugnavérunt cum plebe. Cives pugnavérunt cum cívibus.

LECTIO SEXTA

De nominativo singulari et plurali—in tribus declinationibus

SUMMARY: The Romans go to war with the Aequi. During this war, the Roman army is trapped by the Aequi. The senate appoints Cincinnatus dictator. Cincinnatus rescues the Roman army. He goes to the senate and resigns as dictator, and goes back to his farm.

Románi habuérunt bellum cum Aequis. Consul Románus venit cum exércitu Románo ad pugnam. Exércitus Románus pugnávit cum Aequis. Aequi pugnavérunt cum Románis. Aequi viri fortes fuérunt. Sed Románi étiam viri fortes fuérunt. Ergo viri fortes pugnavérunt cum viris fórtibus. Sed exércitus Románus venit in magnum perículum. Viri Románi exclamavérunt: in magno perículo sumus (*we are*)! Sed viri Románi fortes fuérunt. Et in urbe Romána fuit senátus Románus. Viri boni fuérunt in senátu Románo. Ergo senátus Románus fecit consílium: Dictatórem creavérunt. Cincinnátus fuit vir bonus, vir fortis. In veritáte, Cincinnátus fuit Románus bonus. Legáti ex senátu venérunt ad Cincinnátum. Cincinnátus fuit in agris. Legáti ex senátu dixérunt quod exércitus Románus in período magno fuit. Dixérunt quod senátus creávit Cincinnátum dictatórem. Ergo Cincinnátus non remánsit in agris. Cincinnátus fuit dictátor. Cincinnátus venit cum viris fórtibus. Cincinnátus pugnávit cum Aequis. Cincinnátus vicit Aequos. Sed Cincinnátus non remánsit Dictátor. Cincinnátus non vóluit magnam protestátem. Cincinnátus vóluit agros bonos. Ergo Cincinnátus venit in senátum. Cincinnátus dixit in senátu quod non vóluit magnam potestátem. Cincinnátus venit rursus in agros. Nunc Cincinnátus non est Dictátor.

Aequi-the Aequi
fortis-*brave*
perículum-*danger*
senátus-*senate*
consílium-*plan*
dictátor-*dictator*
creávit-*created*
legátus-*legate*
ager-*field*
ex-*from*
vicit-*conquered*
rursus-*again*

VOCABULARIUM

creávit-*created, made*	ager, agro-*field, farm*
vicit-*conquered*	consílium, consílio-*plan*
e, ex-*from, out from* (*with ablative case*)	fortis-*brave, strong*
	perículum, o-*danger*
senátus, u-*senate*	

NUNC COGITEMUS

NOMINATIVE ENDINGS: We have been using the nominative endings for the subject for some time now. So let us add them up, for the three declensions that we know:

	Singular	Plural
1.	-a (nauta)	-ae (nautae)
2.	-us, -r (agnus ager vir)	-i (agni agri viri)
3.	———	-es

Notice that we did not indicate an ending for the nominative singular of third declension—that is because there is so large a variety: we must learn each word as it is. Notice also that there are a few words that we have already had that do not fit into the table above. Do not bother about them now. We will see about them later. We can use them easily without knowing all about them. But let us be sure to learn the *nominative* and the *ablative singular* of each word. Then they will not be hard to handle.

PREPOSITION EX: Notice the preposition *ex* has two forms: *e* and *ex*. *E* is used before consonants. *Ex* is used before vowels (sometimes before consonants also).

EXERCEAMUS NOS

Románi enim fortes viri fuérunt. Quando pugnavérunt cum Aequis, Románi vicérunt Aequos. Románi venérunt ex urbe ad pugnam. Aequi venérunt ex urbe ad pugnam. Horátius pugnávit cum Etrúscis. Etrúsci étiam fuérunt viri fortes. Románi fuérunt in magno período postquam regem Tarquínium expulérunt. Románi fuérunt in magno período quando pugnavérunt cum

Aequis. Sed Románi vicérunt Etrúscos et Aequos. Cincinnátus fuit Dictátor Románus. Sed Cincinnátus non vóluit potestátem magnam. Cincinnátus amávit Romam. Cincinnátus fecit consílium bonum. Cincinnátus non remánsit Dictátor. Plebs non remánsit in urbe. Plebs non venit in scholam. Marcus venit in scholam cum María. Agnus venit in scholam cum María. Fuítne Marcus agnus? María dixit quod Marcus fuit agnus. Fuítne Marcus rotúndus? Tribúni plebis habuérunt magnam potestátem. Cónsules étiam habuérunt magnam potestátem. Sed cónsules et tribúni plebis non fuérunt viri mali. Fuérunt viri boni. In veritáte fuérunt Románi fortes. Exércitus Románus étiam fuit fortis. Viri fortes fuérunt in exércitu. Horátius stetit in ponte. Pons cécidit in aquam. Horátius étiam cécidit in aquam. Porci non cecidérunt in aquam. Porci non amavérunt aquam. Étiam agnus non cécidit in aquam. Sed agnus albus fuit. Porci non albi fuérunt.

LECTIO SEPTIMA

De casu objectivo et casu ablativo in declinationibus iv et v

SUMMARY: After many wars, the Romans still had no peace. In 390 B.C. the Gauls invaded Italy. They conquered many peoples and even defeated a Roman army. They entered Rome, and captured all but the Capitoline. There the geese awakened the sleeping Romans.

In rebus humánis, perículum non est rarum. Románi bellum habuérunt in multis diébus et in multis annis. Románi bellum habuérunt cum Etrúscis. Étiam bellum habuérunt cum Aequis. Habuérunt bellum cum multis. Sed Románi fortes fuérunt. Viri magni in exercítibus Románis fuérunt. Ergo Románi vicérunt Etrúscos. Étiam vicérunt Aequos. Sed Románi non semper vicérunt. In anno trecentésimo nonagésimo (*390*) ante Christum, bárbari venérunt ex Gállia in Itáliam. Galli fuérunt bárbari. Galli pugnavérunt cum multis in Itália. Galli vicérunt multos. Galli étiam pugnavérunt cum Etrúscis. Galli vicérunt Etrúscos in pugna. Galli étiam venérunt in terram Románam. Galli pugnavérunt cum exércitu Románo. Galli vicérunt exércitum Románum. In exércitu Románo fuérunt multi viri magni et fortes. Sed Galli étiam fuérunt magni et fortes. Galli vicérunt Romános. Galli venérunt étiam in urbem Románam. Galli cepérunt *fere* totam urbem. Sed Galli non cepérunt totam urbem. Galli non cepérunt Capitólium. In Capitólio viri fortes fuérunt. Sed viri fortes dormiébant (*were sleeping*) in Capitólio. Viri non audivérunt Gallos in Capitólio. Sed ánseres fuérunt étiam in Capitólio. Ánseres non dormiébant. Ánseres audivérunt Gallos. Ánseres exclamavérunt. Románi audivérunt ánseres. Románi pugnavérunt cum Gallis.

res-*thing*
rarus-*rare*
dies-*day*
multus-*much, many*
semper-*always*
bárbari-*barbarians*
Galli-*Gauls*
cepit-*captured*
fere-*almost*
tota-*whole*
audívit-*heard*
anser-*goose*

VOCABULARIUM

audívit-*heard*	dies, die (5)-*day*
cepit-*took, captured*	multus-*much, many*
fere-*almost, in general*	res, re(5)-*thing*
semper-*always*	totus-*whole*

NUNC COGITEMUS

ADJECTIVES USED ALONE: Notice the use of *multis* in the sentence: pugnavérunt cum *multis*. It means: They fought with many. Of course, *multis* means—many peoples or nations. We may leave a word *understood* with an adjective. We must then supply the right word in English; we usually supply one of these: men, things, etc.

OBJECTIVE AND ABLATIVE OF FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS: So far we have been studying only three declensions. We have used some words from the fourth declension. We must now take a closer look at the new forms. They are as follows (endings are underlined):

4.

	Obj.	Abl.
Singular	exércit<u>um</u>	exércit<u>u</u>
Plural	exércit<u>us</u>	exercít<u>ibus</u>

5.

	Obj.	Abl.
Singular	di<u>em</u>	di<u>e</u>
Plural	di<u>es</u>	di<u>ébus</u>

As to the fourth declension—notice that it has the same objective singular as the second declension. And it has the same ablative plural as the third.

As to the fifth declension—notice that all four forms above are the same as third declension (although the third sometimes has ablative singular in *-i*) except that the ablative plural has *-ebus* instead of *-ibus*.

How can we tell which declension? If we want to

know what family a word belongs to, we take a look at the ablative singular:

1. -a
2. -o
3. -e *or* -i
4. -u
5. -e

Are there any that are alike? Yes, the fifth declension has *-e*, and the third sometimes has *-e*. But there is no real problem—there are very few words that belong to the fifth declension. We shall mark them all thus: dies, -e(5).

ABLATIVE USED WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS: It is possible to use the ablative case without prepositions. It can have various meanings then. Study these examples:

1. Románi non vicérunt *pecúnia.*
   The Romans did not conquer *by money.*
2. Románi fuérunt multi *número.*
   The Romans were many *in number.*
3. Románi exclamavérunt *voce magna.*
   The Romans shouted *with a great voice.*

Notice the English prepositions that we may supply. They are: *in, by, with.* We could fill out the translation more if we wanted to: in the first sentence we could say: *by means of* money. In the second sentence we could say: *in respect to* number. But the third sentence could not be filled in more. There are a few other uses of the ablative without prepositions. We shall meet them later. But for the present let us remember to try that list of prepositions: IN, BY, WITH whenever we see an ablative without a preposition.

EXERCEAMUS NOS

Look for ablative patterns

Galli exércitum Románum vicérunt. Galli étiam Etrúscos vicérunt. Galli non venérunt in Itáliam magnis návibus. Galli non venérunt multis návibus. Galli návibus non venérunt. Galli venérunt multis exercítibus. Románi fuérunt magni fortitúdine (*abl. sing.-bravery*). Galli étiam magni fortitúdine fuérunt. Galli non vicérunt pecúnia. Quando Galli venérunt in Capitólium, ánseres exclamavérunt voce (*voice-abl.sing.*) magna. Románi étiam exclamavérunt voce magna. Románi étiam boni fuérunt consíliis. Galli non fuérunt boni consíliis. Galli mali consíliis fuérunt. Senátus Románus fuit bonus consíliis. Senátus creávit Dictatórem. Senátus dixit quod Cincinnátus fuit vir fortis. Cincinnátus Aequos vícit. Cincinnátus Aequos non vicit pecúnia. Cincinnátus Aequos non vicit igni. Cincinnátus Aequos vicit fortitúdine. Sed Colúmbus étiam fuit magnus fortitúdine. Colúmbus enim in Américam venit. Colúmbus venit ad Américam návibus. Agnus non venit ad Américam návibus. Agnus ad Américam non venit. Primis diébus Románi bellum habuérunt. Románi multis annis bellum habuérunt. Románi fere semper bellum habuérunt. Románi non pugnavérunt aqua. Románi non pugnavérunt igni. Románi pugnavérunt magnis exercítibus. Roma fuit fortis cívibus fórtibus. Roma fuit magna potestáte. Nunc Roma est magna veritáte Christiána.

LECTIO OCTAVA

Nihil novi hodie: veteribus studeamus

SUMMARY: Legend tells how the Roman laws came to be written. At first only the patricians knew the law—the plebs therefore were at a disadvantage. More civil strife resulted. Finally a commission was sent to Greece to study the laws of Solon. When the men returned, the laws were written down. This quieted the plebs, and civil strife was stopped for the time being.

Románi narravérunt fábulam de légibus Románis. In primis diébus Románi habuérunt leges. Sed soli patrícii scivérunt leges Románas. Plebs non scivit leges. Ergo plebs in período fuit. Plebs non amávit perículum. Et plebs non amávit patrícios. Plebs dixérunt quod patrícii non amavérunt plebem—patrícii non scripsérunt leges. Plebs in período est quia patrícii non scripsérunt leges. Patrícii mali sunt. Non sunt boni. Ergo rursus pugna fuit in urbe. Cives pugnavérunt cum cívibus. Patrícii pugnavérunt cum plebe. Plebs pugnávit cum patríciis. In primis diébus, quando plebs pugnávit cum patríciis, plebs non remánsit in urbe. Plebs venit in Montem Sacrum. Sed plebs non remánsít semper in Monte Sacro. Plebs rursus venit in urbem quando patrícii dedérunt tribúnos plebis. Sed nunc plebs remánsit in urbe. Plebs non venit in Montem Sacrum. Plebs non remánsit in urbe quia amavérunt patrícios. Plebs remánsit in urbe quia amavérunt Romam. Ergo senátus Románus misit viros in Graéciam. Viri Románi vidérunt leges Solónis (*of Solon*). Leges Solónis bonae fuérunt. Postquam viri Románi vidérunt leges Solónis in Graécia, rursus venérunt in terram Románam. Rursus venérunt in urbem. Senátus scripsit leges. Plebs rursus vicit patrícios. Patrícii enim scripsérunt leges. Postquam patrícii scripsérunt leges, plebs non hábuit pugnam cum patríciis. Plebs non fuit in período magno. Plebs scivérunt leges. Leges bonae fuérunt.

de-*about*
narrávit-*told*
fábula-*legend*
lex-*law*
solus-*alone, only*
scivit-*knew*
scripsit-*wrote*
quia-*because*
misit-*sent*

VOCABULARIUM

misit-*sent*	fábula, a-*legend*
scivit-*knew*	lex, lege-*law*
scripsit-*wrote*	solus-*alone, only*
quia-*because*	

RURSUS VIDEAMUS FORMAS VETERES

We have learned that there are five sets of endings for nouns, which we call five declensions. We have learned to distinguish one declension from another by means of the ablative singular form (we have to add the number 5 for the fifth since it has *-e*, and the third declension also has *-e* on some nouns). A noun never changes its declension—it always stays in the same family of endings. We have seen nearly all the forms of three cases in the five declensions (all except the nominative of fourth and fifth declensions). Let us review them all. We shall put the singular in one line, the plural in another.

	Nom.	Obj.	Abl.
1.	naut*a*	naut*am*	naut*a*
	naut*ae*	naut*as*	naut*is*
2.	agn*us*	agn*um*	agn*o*
	agn*i*	agn*os*	agn*is*
3.	lex	leg*em*	leg*e*
	leg*es*	leg*es*	lég*ibus*
4.	senát*us*	senát*um*	senát*u*
	senát*us*	senát*us*	senát*ibus*
5.	di*es*	di*em*	di*e*
	di*es*	di*es*	di*ébus*

Of course, we remember that the nominative singular of second declension may have other forms (such as: *vir, ager*) and also, the nominative of third may have various forms. In lesson nine we shall learn the nominative plurals of fourth and fifth.

Exerceamus Nos

Watch for patterns!

Románi habuérunt leges multas. Románi fuérunt magni bello. Románi boni fuérunt consíliis. Románi fuérunt boni légibus bonis. Sed primis diébus plebs non scivit leges. Plebs leges bonas voluérunt. Colúmbus scivit legem. Sed agnus albus non scivit legem: ergo agnus albus venit in scholam. Galli non scivérunt legem Románam, quia Galli non fuérunt Románi. Galli cepérunt fere totam urbem Románam. Galli exclamavérunt voce magna. Galli Romános vicérunt magna potestáte. Sed Galli non cepérunt Capitólium. Viri fortes dormiébant in Capitólio. Sed ánseres non dormiébant. Ánseres audivérunt Gallos. Ánseres voce magna exclamavérunt. Románi pugnavérunt magna fortitúdine. Quando Galli fuérunt in urbe, plebs non pugnávit cum patríciis. Et patrícii non pugnavérunt cum plebe. Plebs enim pugnávit cum Gallis. Sed Galli exércitum Románum vicérunt. Galli non remansérunt in urbe. Románi enim Gallos vicérunt pecúnia. Cincinnátus non fuit in urbe quando Galli venérunt. Senátus non fecit Cincinnátum Dictatórem quando Galli venérunt. Senátus non misit Cincinnátum in Graéciam. Isabélla misit Colúmbum in Américam. Colúmbus in Américam venit multis návibus. Sed Colúmbus non invénit Índiam. Agni albi non fuérunt in návibus. Cincinnátus non fuit in schola. Sed Cincinnátus bonus consíliis fuit. Primis diébus Románi non habuérunt scholas. Sed Románi habuérunt agnos albos. Primis diébus agni albi non fuérunt in schola, quia Románi non habuérunt scholas. Agni albi in agris fuérunt. Marcus non vidit Maríam in Graécia, quia María non fuit in Graécia. Graéci fuérunt in Graécia. Sed Románi étiam fuérunt in Graécia quando vidérunt leges Solónis. Románi dixérunt quod Graéci fuérunt boni légibus bonis. Solon fuit vir bonus consíliis. Fuítne Colúmbus Graecus? Non. Colúmbus venit ex Itália. Graeci fuérunt in Graécia.

LECTIO NOVA

De nominativo in declinationibus quarto et quinto
De infinitivo

PRELIMINARY NOTE: Today we are going to begin to use the present infinitive. In Latin, these present infinitives all end in *-re*. Translate them with the word "to" in English. For example: *serváre*-to save.

SUMMARY: The Romans were almost constantly at war—if not with foreigners, with one another. The Greeks in Southern Italy, called Magna Graecia, began to fear Rome. They invited the King of Epirus, Pyrrhus, to destroy Rome. Pyrrhus scared the Romans with the elephants. But he was not successful, and finally returned home.

Románi fere semper bellum habuérunt. Quando bellum cum áliis natiónibus non habuérunt, patrícii pugnavérunt cum plebe. Quando patrícii non pugnavérunt cum plebe, bellum habuérunt cum áliis. Ergo fere semper Roma in bellis fuit. Roma fuit magna bellis. Graeci non solum in Graécia fuérunt: Graeci étiam fuérunt in Itália meridionáli. Dixérunt quod Itália meridionális fuit "Magna Graécia." Graeci timuérunt potestátem Románam. Graeci voluérunt serváre urbes Graecas a Románis. Voluérunt deféndere terram Graecam a Románis. Voluérunt serváre terram Graecam a Románis. Ergo Graeci misérunt legátos in Epírum. In Epíro rex fuit Pyrrhus. Graeci rogavérunt Pyrrhum veníre. Pyrrhus venit in Itáliam. Venit cum exércitu. Venit étiam cum elephántis. Románi timuérunt elephántos. Románi non vidérunt elephántos ante hoc (*this*) bellum. Multi Románi non remansérunt in pugna quando vidérunt elephántos. Románi voluérunt serváre Romam. Románi voluérunt deféndere terram Románam. Sed Románi dixérunt quod in perículo fuérunt ab elephántis. Románi potuérunt pugnáre cum viris magnis et fórtibus. Sed Románi timuérunt pugnáre cum elephántis. Elephánti magni fuérunt—viri parvi fuérunt. Románi non potuérunt stare ante elephántos. Ergo Pyrrhus vicit Romános. Sed Pyrrhus non potuit cápere urbem Románam. Pyrrhus vóluit cápere urbem Románam. Graeci rogavérunt Pyrrhum cápere urbem Románam. Sed non pótuit. Románi vicérunt Pyrrhum áliis pugnis. Románi pugnavérunt étiam cum elephántis. Voluérunt serváre Romam. Ergo Pyrrhus non remánsit in Itália. Pyrrhus venit rursus in Epírum.

álius-*other*
nátio-*nation*
non solum-*not only*
meridionális-*south*
tímuit-*feared*
serváre-*to save*
a, ab-*from*
deféndere-*defend*
Epírus-*Epirus*
rogávit-*asked*
veníre-*to come*
pótuit-*was able*
stare-*to stand*
cápere-*to seize*

VOCABULARIUM

posse, pótuit-*be able*	timére, tímuit-*fear*
rogáre, rogávit-*ask*	non solum-*not only*
serváre, servávit-*save*	álius-*other, another*

NUNC COGITEMUS

INFINITIVES: Notice in the vocabulary above that we now give two forms for each verb. It will be necessary to learn both forms. The first will be the infinitive. The second will be the perfect tense, the form we have been accustomed to using. Notice that all regular infinitives end in *-re* (*posse* is irregular—there are only a few irregular infinitives). Notice that each vowel ahead of the *-re* is different. For different verbs you may find an *-are, -ere* or *-ire*. We shall see about that later on. But now we need to pick up the infinitives of the verbs we have already learned in the first eight lessons. That is not a large task for we have learned only about two dozen verbs. We can pick them up a bit at a time: a dozen now, a dozen later. They are not hard to learn, because they are so obviously similar to the parts we

already know, and all end in *-re,* except for a very few irregular ones. To make it easy let us list a dozen now:

amáre, amávit-*love*	esse, fuit-*be* (*notice that* esse *is irregular*)
audíre, audívit-*hear*	exclamáre, exclamávit-*shout*
cádere, cécidit-*fall*	expéllere, éxpulit-*drive out*
cápere, cepit-*take, capture*	fácere, fecit-*make, do*
creáre, creávit-*create*	habére, hábuit-*have*
dare, dedit-*give*	
dícere, dixit-*say*	

Notice that the first letter *e* in the ending *-ere* of *habere* is a long *e*. Therefore we put the accent on that letter thus: *habére*. The accent does not fall on the first *e* of the other *-ere* endings in this list e.g., *capere* is accented on the *a*. We shall write the accent on the *e* of such infinitives as habére, to make it easy to pronounce them correctly. And besides, that difference of accent will be useful for something else later on. Those in *-are* and *-ire* are always *-áre* and *-íre*.

NOMINATIVE OF FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS: There are only two endings to learn—we already know the nominative singulars: fourth has *-us*; fifth has *-es*. The nominative plurals are the same as the singulars in these declensions. Therefore we now know nearly all the endings of the five declensions (a few other forms to come later).

EXERCEAMUS NOS

Watch for infinitive patterns.

María vóluit vidére agnum. Agnus vóluit vidére scholam. Agnus audívit multas res in schola. Sed agnus non audívit porcos in schola. Porci non fuérunt in schola. Marcus vóluit amáre Maríam. María vóluit cápere Marcum. Isabélla pótuit dare pecúniam. Románi potuérunt expéllere Gallos ex urbe. Románi Gallos expulérunt pecúnia. Cincinnátus vóluit esse bonus. Tarquínius vóluit esse rex. Exércitus Románus pótuit serváre urbem ab exércitu Gállico. Horátius non pótuit timére—Horátius fortis Románus fuit. Ánseres voluérunt serváre Romam. Colúmbus vóluit habére naves bonas. Colúmbus venit in Américam návibus bonis. Pyrrhus hábuit multos elephántos. Pyrrhus étiam fuit bonus consíliis. Magna Graécia fuit in Itália meridionáli. Fuítne Magna Graécia magna? Fuítne ália Graécia? Ubi fuit ália Graécia? Fuítne ália Graécia parva? Non. Ália Graécia fuit maior quam (*larger than*) Graécia Magna. Ergo quando Graeci dixérunt quod Magna Graécia fuit magna, non dixérunt veritátem. Magna enim Graécia non fuit maior quam Graécia. Fuerúntne nautae in Magna Graécia? Útique (*yes*) multi nautae fuérunt in Magna Graécia. Multi nautae fuérunt étiam in Graécia. Graeci boni nautae fuérunt. Románi étiam boni nautae fuérunt. Venítne Pyrrhus solus ex Epíro? Non. Non venit solus. Venit cum multis viris áliis. Venit étiam cum multis elephántis. Románi non potuérunt amáre elephántos. Románi timuérunt elephántos. Románi non rogavérunt elephántos veníre in urbem. María non rogávit agnum veníre in scholam. Colúmbus non rogávit porcos veníre in navem.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

From now on, we shall take just a few sentences from English to Latin. That is, naturally, more difficult than Latin to English. It calls for more exactness. But it is excellent exercise.

1. Mary loved the lamb. 2. Mary wanted to find the lamb. 3. The Romans conquered Pyrrhus.

LECTIO DECIMA

De nominibus neutralibus

SUMMARY: There was a great mercantile city in north Africa, Carthage, founded from Phoenicia in the 9th century B.C. Vergil was wrong in saying Dido founded it in the 12th century. Their ships sailed every sea, for trade. Rome was not fond of trade at this time. But the Carthaginians were not fond of service in their army. Rome preferred agriculture to trade.

In África septentrionáli fuit urbs magna—Cartháago. Carthaginiénses fuérunt mercatóres. Multas naves habuérunt. Mercatúram fecérunt cum multis natiónibus. Carthaginiénses boni fuérunt mercatúra. Multam pecúniam habuérunt. Poéta Románus, Vergílius, dixit quod Dido fundávit Cartháginem. Sed veritátem non dixit. Colóni ex Phoenícia fundavérunt Cartháginem. (Phoenícia est terra in Ásia). Vergílius putávit quod Dido fundávit Cartháginem in sáeculo duodécimo (XII). Sed Vergílius non dixit veritátem. Colóni ex Phoenícia fundavérunt Cartháginem (probabíliter saéculo nono (IX) ante Christum. Ergo Vergílius non narrávit veritátem—narrávit fábulam. Quia Carthaginiénses venérunt ex Phoenícia, Románi dedérunt áliud nomen: Púnici. Carthaginiénses fuérunt Púnici. Púnici misérunt naves in multa mária, in multas terras. Carthaginiénses étiam habuérunt exércitum. Sed viri Carthaginiénses non voluérunt pugnáre—Carthaginiénses voluérunt mercatúram fácere—voluérunt habére multam pecúniam. Mercatóres Púnici venérunt étiam in Sicíliam. Multae naves venérunt in mari ad Sicíliam. Románi non fuérunt magni mercatúra. Románi amavérunt agros. Románi amavérunt pugnáre et fortes esse. Románi fuérunt boni fortitúdine.

septentrionális-*north*
mercátor-*merchant*
mercatúra-*trade*
colónus-*colonist*
putávit-*thought*
saéculum-*century, age*
nomen-*name*
mare-*sea*

VOCABULARIUM

We include the remaining dozen old verbs, to learn the infinitives. In addition, we shall learn only three nouns—that makes it easy.

iácere, iecit-*throw*	scríbere, scripsit-*write*
inveníre, invénit-*find*	stare, stetit-*stand*
míttere, misit-*send*	velle, vóluit-*want, will* (*irregular*)
paráre, parávit-*prepare*	veníre, venit-*come*
regnáre, regnávit-*rule*	vidére, vidit-*see*
remanére, remánsit-*remain*	víncere, vicit-*conquer*
scire, scivit-*know*	

mare, i-*sea*
nomen, nómine-*name*
saéculum, o-*century, age*

NUNC COGITEMUS

NOUNS WITH NOMINATIVE AND OBJECTIVE PLURAL IN -A: There are some nouns whose nominative and objective plurals end in *-a*. These belong to the second and the third declension (there are a few in fourth—we shall see them later). We have met only seven of them so far. Here they are, with their nominative and objective plurals. Note the identical endings in the nominative and objective.

Singular	Plural
bellum	bella
Similarly for:	
consílium	consília
forum	fora
perículum	perícula
saéculum	saécula
mare	mária
nomen	nómina

All but *mare* and *nomen* belong to the second family. Notice that the nominative singular is the same as the objective singular. That is true of all *neuter nouns in all declensions*. So in second declension, we have some

nominatives in *-um*, and in third declension, the objective singular may be something other than *-em*.

Notice that the nominative and objective plurals *all* have *-a*—both in second and in third declension. But some have not merely *-a*, but *-ia*. How can we tell when to use the *-ia*? It is obvious in second declension—when the nominative singular has *-ium*, the nom.-obj. plural will be *-ia*. But it is easy in third declension. Some third declension words use *-e* for the ablative: these have only *-a*, for example: *nomen, nómine* has *nómina* for plural. But some use *-i* in the ablative: these will have *-ia* for nom.-obj. plural of neuter nouns: e.g., *mare, -i* has *mária* for plural.

How can we tell which nouns will have one of these *-a* endings? In the second declension, all nouns whose nominative ends in *-um* will have the *-a* endings. In third declension, we have a longer rule: all nouns whose nominative ends in: *-n, -t, -men, -ma, -e, -al,* or *-ar* are neuter and will have the *-a* endings. But we will see more of this in the next lesson.

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Find all neuter patterns.

Románi multa bella habuérunt primis saéculis. Senátus Románus hábuit multa consília bona. Et Roma étiam hábuit fora multa. Quia Roma multa bella hábuit, étiam hábuit multa perícula. Románi habuérunt perícula in pugnis. Étiam habuérunt perícula in mari. Quia Románi misérunt naves in multa mária. Carthaginiénses étiam misérunt naves in multa mária. Carthaginiénses boni mercatúra fuérunt. Sed Románi viri fortes fuérunt. Nomen Románum magnum fuit. Colúmbus étiam hábuit nomen magnum. Et agnus albus hábuit nomen magnum. Agnus albus venit in scholam; multi agni non potuérunt veníre in scholam. Tarquínius vóluit regnáre in terra Romána. Sed non pótuit remanére in terra Romána. Románi potuérunt expéllere Tarquínium. Exércitus Etrúscus venit ad urbem. Sed non potuérunt víncere exércitum Románum. Colúmbus pótuit inveníre Américam. Isabélla rogávit eum (*him*) inveníre Índiam. Colúmbus non pótuit scire Índiam. Non pótuit stare in Índia. Stetit in América. Sed non pótuit vidére Status Foederátos Américae. Status Foederáti non fuérunt in América quando Colúmbus venit. Colúmbus non pótuit iácere pecúniam in mare—Colúmbus non hábuit pecúniam. Senátus vóluit míttere Romános viros in Graéciam. Viri voluérunt vidére leges Graecas. Leges Graecae fuérunt bonae. Elephánti sunt in África. Suntne elephánti in América? Útique, elephánti sunt in Circo. Elephánti sunt animália magna. Ánimal magnum est bonum. Marcus est vir fortis. Sed non pótuit iácere elephántum. Sed Marcus pótuit stare in navi. Marcus bonus nauta fuit. Mali nautae non potuérunt stare in návibus.

English to Latin

1. The Romans were in danger. 2. Marcus was able to come to the city. 3. Marcus said that Columbus was good.

LECTIO UNDECIMA

De concordia adiectivi cum substantivo

SUMMARY: There were three Punic wars. The Mamertini, a band of brigands in control of Messana, were at war with Hiero of Syracuse. The Mamertini appealed to Rome to help. This meant war with Carthage, whose trade interests were involved in Sicily. Carthage, a great sea power, had the advantage. But Rome overcame it, and won the war.

Roma gessit tria (III) bella cum Cartháginé. Fuérunt ergo tria bella Púnica. Bellum Púnicum est bellum Carthaginiénse. Primum bellum Púnicum venit in médio saéculo tértio (III) ante Christum. Messána fuit urbs in Sicília. Viri mali regnavérunt in Messána. Nomen eorum fuit Mamertíni. Mamertíni pugnavérunt cum Hieróne. Híero fuit rex in ália urbe in Sicília. Híero fuit rex Syracusárum. Ergo Mamertíni, viri mali, pugnavérunt cum rege Syracusárum. Mamertíni in perículo fuérunt. Mamertíni misérunt legátos ad senátum Románum. Legáti rogavérunt senátum míttere auxílium. Románi misérunt exércitum ad Mamertínos.

Sed Carthaginiénses non voluérunt Romános esse in Sicília. Carthaginiénses voluérunt mercatúram fácere in Sicília. Ergo voluérunt expéllere Romános. Ítaque Románi bellum gessérunt cum Carthaginiénsibus. Primum bellum Púnicum fuit. Púnici habuérunt multas et bonas naves. Románi non habuérunt bonas naves. Sed Románi fecérunt naves multas. Misérunt viros fortes multos in naves. Carthaginiénses non habuérunt multos fortes viros in návibus. Ergo Románi potuérunt víncere Carthaginiénses. Púnici non remansérunt in Sicília. Púnici dedérunt pecúniam multam. Ítaque Románi vicérunt Cartháginem in primo bello Púnico. Vicérunt anno ducentésimo quadragésimo primo (*241*) ante Christum. Carthaginiénses non amavérunt Romános. Odérunt Romános. Sed Románi laeti fuérunt. Habuérunt victóriam egrégiam.

gessit-*waged*
in médio saéculo tértio-*in middle (of) third century*
eórum-*of them*
Syracusárum-*of Syracuse*
auxílium-*help*
mercatúra-*trade*
ítaque-*and so*
odit-*hated*
laetus-*glad*
egrégius-*excellent*

VOCABULARIUM

gérere, gessit-*wage, wear*
——, odit-*hate* (odit *has no present infinitive*)
ítaque-*and so*
auxílium, o-*help*
egrégius, a, um-*excellent*
laetus, a, um-*glad*
victória, a-*victory*

NUNC COGITEMUS

USE OF MEDIUS: Notice the expression above: *in médio saéculo tértio*: in the middle *of* the third century. The word *medius* in Latin is an adjective. But when it goes with a noun, we must supply the word *of* in English between the word *middle* and the noun: that is, we must say: middle *of*.

GENDER: There are three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter. In English we say a word is masculine if it stands for anything male—feminine if it stands for anything female, and neuter if it stands for a thing. But in Latin we do not care about the sex of the object that the word stands for—Latin has an artificial, grammatical type of gender. For example: a ship is a thing, but the word for *ship, navis* is feminine—a ship is a she. And *trade, mercatúra*, is a thing, but the Latin word is feminine. We do not need to memorize the gender of every noun in Latin. We have handy rules that cover many (not all) words. Here they are:

1. All nouns of first declension are feminine unless they obviously denote a male. For example: *nauta* is obviously masculine (or used to be before the Waves came).

2. In the second declension, nouns in *-um* are neuter: others are masculine.
3. In the fourth declension, all *-us* nouns are masculine except *domus* (feminine—means *house*) and *manus* (feminine—means *hand* or *band*).
4. In the fifth declension, all are feminine except *dies*, which is masculine.
5. In the third declension, neuters have the nominative singular in: *-n, -t, -men, -ma* (these will have ablative in *-e)*; or in: *-e, -al, -ar*. (These will have ablative singular in *-i*). But there is no good rule to distinguish masculines and feminines in the third declension; hence it is necessary to learn the gender with each noun.

Practical Rule: We shall indicate the gender of all third declension nouns (and any others that are not obvious) by means of an *adjective in the vocabulary*. It is easier to learn a pair of words, than to memorize the gender separately. The form of the adjective will show the gender: for example: (here are all the third declension nouns we have learned thus far)

bonus civis—the *-us* ending is masculine (see rule 2 above)
bona lex—the *-a* ending is feminine (see rule 1 above)
magnum mare—the *-um* ending is neuter (see rule 2 above)
bonum nomen—neuter
magna navis—feminine
bonus pons—masculine
magna potéstas—feminine
bonus rex—masculine
magna urbs—feminine
magna véritas—feminine

Agreement of Adjectives and Nouns: The list of forms we have just seen brings us to study another rule. It will not disturb us, as we have been seeing it used in the stories all along. Here it is: AN ADJECTIVE MUST AGREE WITH ITS NOUN IN THREE THINGS: 1. GENDER 2. NUMBER 3. CASE

Take the example: bonus civis. The word *civis* is masculine—so is *bonus*. The word *civis* is singular—so is *bonus*. The word *civis* is nominative—so is *bonus*. But notice that *bonus does not* agree with *civis* in declension—*bonus* has second declension endings when it is masculine or neuter (and first declension when it is feminine)—but *bonus* never gets a third declension ending.

There are two classes of adjectives:

1. The *bonus* type has three sets of endings—
second declension for masculine
first declension for feminine
second declension for neuter.

2. Third declension type has all its endings in the third declension (for all genders).

Therefore, the *bonus* type uses first and second declension endings—the third declension type uses only third declension endings. We already know nearly all these endings. But today we shall review those of the *bonus* type. In Lesson 13, we shall see about the third declension type. Here are all the endings of *bonus* (all of which we know).

	Masculine		Feminine	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	bonus	boni	bona	bonae
Obj.	bonum	bonos	bonam	bonas
Abl.	bono	bonis	bona	bonis

	Neuter	
	Singular	Plural
Nom.	bonum	bona
Obj.	bonum	bona
Abl.	bono	bonis

N.B. In the vocabulary WE SHALL LIST ALL *BONUS* TYPE ADJECTIVES THUS: *BONUS, A, UM*: THE THREE FORMS ARE THE NOMINATIVE SINGULAR MASCULINE, FEMININE, AND NEUTER.

And now, to help us get used to this idea of agreement—

Exerceamus Nos

Look for agreement patterns.

Roma hábuit cives bonos. Roma vicit Cartháginem magnis návibus. Colúmbus dixit veritátem magnam. Senátus Románus scripsit leges bonas. Naves multae fuérunt in mari magno. Carthágo magna fuit mercatúra multa (*the last two words are ablative*). Románi expulérunt regem malum. Agnus albus venit in bonam scholam. Mundus est magnus. Románi gessérunt bella multa. Románi odérunt malos cives. Románi voluérunt esse magni. Románi habuérunt nomen bonum. Híero non fuit rex malus. Sed Tarquínius non est rex bonus. Románi iecérunt ignem in magnum pontem. Románi

vicérunt potestáte magna. Puélla non est parva. Sed agnus parvus est. Carthaginiénses voluérunt habére pecúniam multam. Voluérunt habére mercatúram magnam. Boni mercatúra fuérunt. Bello Púnico primo, Románi fecérunt multas naves bonas. Bonae naves fuérunt in máribus multis. Senátus Románus dedit multa egrégia consília. Románi venérunt in urbem magnam. Urbs Romána bona fuit. Carthágo étiam fuit bona urbs.

English to Latin

1. Columbus knew a great truth. 2. Isabella had much money. 3. Rome had great citizens.

LECTIO DUODECIMA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

Summary: After the first Punic War, Carthage was in need of money and trade—they had paid a heavy indemnity to Rome. Hamilcar, father of Hannibal, went to Spain as general. Hannibal went with him. According to legend, Hannibal put his hand on the altar and swore eternal hatred against Rome. When he became general, Hannibal attacked Saguntum, a city friendly to Rome. Rome demanded the recall of Hannibal. It was refused. War starts.

Post bellum Púnicum primum pax fuit. Sed Carthaginiénses non habuérunt pecúniam multam. Roma enim accépit aurum multum a Carthaginiénsibus post bellum primum. Carthágo ergo non hábuit multum aurum. Necésse fuit inveníre terras novas. Necésse fuit veníre in Hispániam. Quia in Hispánia fuit aurum multum. Et mercatóres Carthaginiénses potuérunt fácere mercatúram multam in Hispánia. Hánnibal fuit puer Carthaginiénsis. Pater Hannibális (*of Hannibal*) fuit imperátor Carthaginiénsis magnus. Pater Hamílcar fuit. Hamílcar fuit vir fortis, et imperátor bonus. Hamílcar fuit bonus consíliis. Románi narravérunt fábulam de Hannibále. Dixérunt quod Hánnibal, quando in Hispánia fuit cum patre, Hamílcare, pósuit manum in altáre et promísit ódium aetérnum contra Romános. Fuítne véritas in fábula? Nescímus (*we do not know*). Sed Hánnibal, quando vir fuit, gessit bellum magnum cum Románis. Urbs magna fuit in Hispánia—nomen urbis (*of the city*) fuit Sagúntum. Hánnibal vóluit cápere Sagúntum. Sed Saguntíni amavérunt Romános. Et Románi amavérunt Saguntínos. Ergo Saguntíni misérunt legátos ad Romános. Legáti venérunt in senátum Románum. Legáti Saguntíni rogavérunt auxílium. Rogavérunt Romános veníre exércitu magno. Ergo Románi misérunt legátos in senátum Carthaginiénsem. Legáti Románi dixérunt quod necésse fuit revocáre Hannibálem. Sed Carthaginiénses non revocavérunt Hannibálem. Carthágo odit Romam. Ergo Románi misérunt exércitum magnum contra Hannibálem. Ítaque gessérunt bellum Púnicum secúndum.

pax-*peace*
accépit-*received*
aurum-*gold*
post-*after*
necésse-*necessary*
Hispánia-*Spain*
puer-*boy*
pater-*father*
imperátor-*general*
pósuit-*put*
manus-*hand*
altáre-*altar*
promísit-*promised*
ódium-*hatred*
aetérnum-*eternal*
contra-*against*
revocáre-*recall*

Vocabularium

accípere, accépit-*receive*	manus, u-*hand* (*feminine gender*)
pónere, pósuit-*put, place*	necésse (*only form*) -*necessary*
promíttere, promísit-*promise*	ódium, o-*hatred*
contra (*with obj. case*) -*against*	bonus pater, tre-*father*
post (*with obj. case*)-*after*	bona pax, pace-*peace*
aurum, o-*gold*	puer, púero-*boy*
bonus imperátor-*general*	

Iterum Videamus Formas Veteres

1. How do you say: to conquer, to fall, to do, to be, to give, to capture, to wish, to send, to know, to throw?
2. Supply the proper form of *magnus* to go with each of these words:
   a) ablative case: návibus, légibus, potestátibus, imperatóribus, úrbibus
   b) objective case: reges, mária, pontes, veritátes, consília, nómina.
3. How do you say: they captured, they created, they gave, he had, he found, they wished, he put, they waged?

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Hánnibal promísit ódium aetérnum contra Romános. Románi accepérunt victóriam egrégiam. Nomen Románum magnum fuit. Románi non magni fuérunt mercatúra. Sed Carthaginiénses magni fuérunt mercatúra. Románi magni fuérunt bello et victóriis. Mercatóres

amavérunt habére multum aurum in mánibus. Non est necésse habére aurum multum. Aurum est bonum, sed non est necésse habére aurum. Románi habuérunt bellum cum Carthágine saéculo tértio (III) ante Christum. Pater Hannibális fuit imperátor bonus. Colúmbus pósuit aurum multum in naves. Sed Colúmbus non pósuit agnos multos in naves. Agni enim non amavérunt mare. Agni non fuérunt nautae. Fuítne María nauta? Non, sed Marcus fuit nauta. Et Colúmbus fuit nauta. Colúmbus pótuit inveníre Américam. Colúmbus vidit Isabéllam in Hispánia.

Post bellum, Carthaginiénses voluérunt inveníre pacem. Pax est bona. Románi non potuérunt habére pacem aetérnam. Quando fuit pax in terra Romána? Fere semper bellum fuit. Románi non odérunt bellum. Sed bellum habére fuit necésse. In rebus humánis, pax non semper est. Carthaginiénses non semper dixérunt veritátem. Sed étiam Románi non semper dixérunt veritátem. Románi amavérunt veritátem. Sed Románi non semper potuérunt inveníre veritátem. Románi misérunt legátos in senátum Carthaginiénsem. Sed Carthaginiénses étiam misérunt legátos. Voluerúntne Carthaginiénses habére pacem? Habuítne Hánnibal elephántos? Útique, Hánnibal hábuit multos elephántos. Hánnibal misit multos elephántos contra Romános in pugnis. Sed Románi non timuérunt elephántos. Románi viri fortes fuérunt. Románi potuérunt víncere elephántos. Románi laeti fuérunt quia victóriam habuérunt.

English to Latin

1. When did Hannibal come? 2. Hamilcar said that Rome was bad. 3. But Rome wanted peace.

LECTIO DECIMA TERTIA

De adiectivis tertiae declinationis
De tempore plusquam perfecto

SUMMARY: Saguntum fell. The soldiers plundered the town. They then marched through Spain, across the Pyrenees Mountains through Gaul and after much fighting came to the Alps. The soldiers started to cross, after Hannibal calmed their fears. On the descent they came to a steep cliff. Since it could not be avoided, they heated the rock, poured vinegar on it, and then cut paths (so says the legend). Thus all, even elephants, came down.

Sagúntum cécidit. Mílites Púnici venérunt in urbem. In urbe cepérunt multum aurum. Étiam cepérunt ália bona. Sed Hánnibal non vóluit remanére. Hánnibal vóluit veníre in terram Románam. Ergo Hánnibal et mílites fecérunt iter. Venérunt per Hispániam. Venérunt trans montes Pyrenaéos in Gálliam. Sed Hánnibal non remánsit in Gállia. Vóluit vidére Romam. Necésse fuit pugnáre fortitúdine magna. Hánnibal ergo, cum mílítibus, iter fecit per Gálliam. Venérunt ad Alpes. Alpes sunt montes magni. Mílites timuérunt Alpes. Sed Hánnibal fortis fuit. Hánnibal dixit quod non fuit necésse timére Alpes. Mílites laudavérunt Hannibálem. Non iam timuérunt Alpes. Ítaque ascendérunt montes. Exércitus Románus vóluit pugnáre cum Hannibále in Gállia. Sed non potuérunt, quia Hánnibal non remánsit in Gállia. Hánnibal et mílites ascendérunt Alpes. Étiam elephánti venérunt cum Hannibále et exércitu Púnico. Sed in Álpibus venérunt ad rupem árduam. Mílites non potuérunt descéndere. Elephánti non potuérunt descéndere. História Romána scripsit fábulam magnam de rupe árdua. Fábula dixit quod mílites Púnici fecérunt viam in rupe: ignem posuérunt in rupe—rupes mollítur (*is softened*) acéto—ítaque vias fecérunt in rupe. Estne véritas in fábula? Probabíliter non est véritas in fábula. Sed—fábula dixit—Hánnibal et exércitus Púnicus descendérunt, cum elephántis per viam in rupe.

miles-*soldier*
bona-*good things*
iter-*journey*
per-*through*
mons-*mountain*
trans-*across*
laudávit-*praised*
non iam-*no longer*
ascéndit-*climbed*
rupes árdua-*steep cliff*
descéndere-*go down*
de-*about*
via-*path*
ignis-*fire*
acétum-*vinegar*
probabíliter-*probably*

VOCABULARIUM

de-(*with ablative*) *about, concerning, down from*
non iam-*no longer*
per (*with objective*)-*through*
acer, acris, acre, acri-*sharp, eager, keen*
ferox, ferốci-*fierce*
fortis, e, i-*brave, strong*
gradus, u-*step*
magnum iter, itínere-*journey*
bonus miles, mílite-*soldier*
magnus mons, monte-*mountain*

NUNC COGITEMUS

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES: Most third declension adjectives are declined like *fortis*:

	Singular MF	Singular N	Plural MF	Plural N
Nom.	fortis	forte	fortes	fórtia
Obj.	fortem	forte	fortes	fórtia
Abl.	forti	forti	fórtibus	fórtibus
	(Like navis)	(Like mare)		

Notice that in the nominative singular, *fortis* has two forms: *fortis* and *forte*. If we know that, plus the fact that the ablative has *-i* (as practically all third declension adjectives do)—we can figure out the rest. For we will know that the nominative plural neuter will be *-ia*.

If then we use the old rule, that the nominative is the same as the objective in the neuter (both in singular and in plural) then we immediately know that the objective singular neuter must be *forte*, and the neuter plural

must be *fortia*. The nominative singular form *fortis* is both masculine and feminine.

But some third declension adjectives have three forms in the nominative singular. Such as: *acer, acris, acre* in today's vocabulary. What then?—no real difference—it behaves just like *fortis* everywhere except in the nominative singular feminine, for which there is the special form *acris*. Other forms work just as if it were: *acer, acre*—to match: *fortis, forte*.

Still other third declension adjectives have only one form in the nominative singular: *ferox* is an example. That one form serves for all three genders. How do we decline it? Just use our rules and we cannot miss: the objective singular masculine and feminine will be: *ferócem*—but the neuter will be *ferox* (same as nominative). Similarly for the objective plurals: *feróces* and *ferócia* (which are also, in this instance, nominatives). But to make it easy, let us write it all out:

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	ferox	ferox	feróces	ferócia
Obj.	ferócem	ferox	feróces	ferócia
Abl.	feróci	feróci	ferócibus	ferócibus

Therefore there are three types of third declension adjectives—but there is no real difficulty, for the differences come only in the nominative singular: they may have one, two, or three forms for the nominative singular.

IN THE VOCABULARY WE SHALL GIVE THE ONE, TWO, OR THREE FORMS OF THE NOMINATIVE SINGULAR, FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE SINGULAR OF THESE THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES.

PLUPERFECT TENSE (TIME): How do we say: He *had* come? Very easy. Just take *venit*, which means: he came, he *has* come, and change the *-it* to *-erat*. And, by using *-erant*, we get: They had come:

vénerat—he had come   vénerant—they had come.

We can make this change on *any* verb. We call it the *pluperfect* or *past perfect* tense (time). It is one notch farther in the past than the perfect (*dixit*).

ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS: In Lesson 7 we found that we could use the masculine form of adjectives, WITHOUT ANY NOUN. We then supplied some noun in English—such as people, or men. Now we find that we can do the same with the *neuter* form of an adjective: therefore

bonum *means* a good thing
bonus *means* a good man
boni *means* good men
bona *means* good things

The possibilities are numerous—but all easy to follow:

EXERCEAMUS NOS

Watch for pluperfect "had" patterns.

Hánnibal hábuit ódium acre contra Romános. Románi vícerant Carthäginem in primo bello Púnico. Ergo Carthaginiénses feróces fuérunt. In primo bello, Púnici fúerant boni mílites. Hánnibal venit cum exércitu trans montes. Mílites voluérunt aurum multum accípere. Hánnibal promíserat multum aurum. Ergo mílites laeti fuérunt quando cepérunt Sagúntum. Exércitus Románus venit contra Hannibálem. Senátus misit mílites egrégios. Mílites egrégii fortitúdine fuérunt. In primo bello Púnico mílites Románi fúerant in návibus—nunc sunt in Gállia. Sed non potuérunt invenire Hannibálem in Gállia. Quia Hánnibal vénerat ad Alpes. Hánnibal fécerat vias multas in rupe árdua. Mílites posúerant acétum in rupe. Elephánti laeti fuérunt—elephánti non voluérunt remanére in Álpibus. Elephánti amavérunt Áfricam. Elephánti timuérunt ignem. Sed mílites non timúerant ignem. Agnus albus non amávit ignem. Horátius non amávit ignem. Ignis cecíderat in pontem—et Horátius cécidit in aquam. Colúmbus non odit Isabéllam. Isabélla déderat pecúniam et naves. María non odit agnum album: agnus albus vénerat in scholam cum María. In schola María víderat Marcum. Marcus non odit Maríam. Et María non odit Marcum.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. Marcus saw the fierce soldiers. 2. The battle was sharp. 3. He came with brave men.

LECTIO DECIMA QUARTA

De voce passiva in tempore perfecto

SUMMARY: After crossing the Alps, Hannibal won a small victory over Scipio at the Ticinus river. Sempronius then took command for the Romans. Sempronius was rash and impatient, and Hannibal knew it; he made a trap. He fed his men early, and sent horsemen across the Trebia river to entice the Romans over. The Romans had not eaten—they went through cold water, and then tried to fight. Other Carthaginians came up behind them. Hannibal nearly wiped out the Roman army.

Hánnibal et exércitus Púnicus descénderant ex Álpibus. Vénerant in Itáliam. In Itália invenérunt exércitum Románum ad flumen Ticínum. Scípio fuit imperátor Románus. Scípio fuit imperátor egrégius et acer. Sed Hánnibal vicit Scipiónem et exércitum Románum. Nunc imperátor Ro-mánus est Semprónius.

Hánnibal scivit quod Semprónius fuit impátiens. Hánnibal ergo fecit insídias. Hánnibal dedit cibum milítibus (*to the soldiers*). Sed mílites Románi non accéperant cibos. Hánnibal ergo misit équites (postquam cibum accéperant) trans flumen Trébiam. Semprónius vidit équites. Románi mílites non accéperant cibum. Sed Semprónius misit mílites Romános contra équites Púnicos. Románi venérunt per flumen.

Aqua frígida fuit—et Románi non habúerant cibos. Équites Púnici habúerant cibos ante pugnam. Postquam Románi venérunt trans flumen, necésse fuit pugnáre cum milítibus Púnicis. Pugna ferox fuit. Mílites Púnici acres sunt—sed mílites Románi non accéperant cibos—vénerant per flumen frígidum. Álii mílites Púnici venérunt post Romános. Ergo Románi non potuérunt víncere Púnicos. Hánnibal hábuit victóriam egrégiam. Non multi Románi remansérunt post pugnam. Románi non fuérunt laeti. Sed mílites Púnici exclamavérunt quia laeti fuérunt.

ad-*near*
flumen-*river*
impátiens-*impatient*
insídiae-*ambush*
cibus-*food*
équites-*horsemen*
trans-*across*
frígidus-*cold*

VOCABULARIUM

trans (*with objective case*)-*across*	magnum flumen, flúmine-*river*
cibus, o-*food*	frígidus, a, um-*cold*
bonus eques, équite-*horseman*	insídiae, is (*plural only*)-*ambush, snare*

NUNC COGITEMUS

PERFECT PASSIVE: With the verb forms we know thus far we can say certain things: thus, for example, we can say

The Roman army conquered.
or
The Roman army has conquered.

In Latin, either one would be: Románus exércitus *vicit*.

But suppose the Roman army loses—we then would need to say:

The Roman army *was* conquered.
or
The Roman army *has been* conquered.

Notice how we make the change in English—we have to add a word, depending on what form of the English we wish to use. We add the words in italics above.

The forms given first, the ones we have been using and translating by forms like *vicit*, those forms are called ACTIVE. They mean that the army (or other subject) is *acting* on someone else. But in the second set, the tables are turned: the Roman army is not ACT-ING—it is BEING ACTED ON. Quite a difference. Now although it is not too easy to learn the difference of the English active and passive forms, it is much more simple in Latin. In Latin, the active is—*vicit* (or plural

—*vicérunt*). The passive is—*victus est* (or plural—*victi sunt*).

How do we make these forms in Latin? We need to learn a new part of the verb. This part is called the *perfect passive participle*. We use it like an *adjective* with *est* or *sunt*.

For the word participle means sharing in—sharing in what? A participle is a half-breed. It is HALF verb—so it carries the idea of something being done. It is HALF adjective—so its endings are handled just like those of an adjective. For example, if I want to say:

The Roman soldiers were heard—

it will be

Mílites Románi *audíti sunt*.

For one soldier:

Miles *audítus est*.

Audítus, the participle, is half-adjective—so it must agree with the subject: *mílites*. But if the subject were *puéllae*, *girls*:

Puéllae *audítae* sunt.

Or for one girl:

Puélla *audíta* est.

Notice that we need two words to make the perfect passive third singular or plural:

1. The participle, which is the third part of the verb
2. *est* or *sunt*.

PARTICIPLES AS ADJECTIVES: Sometimes these participles are used, without *est* or *sunt*, as merely adjectives —for example, *exércitus victus* could mean *the conquered army*. Or *fábula scripta* could mean *a written legend*.

PARTS OF VERBS ALREADY LEARNED: We must pick up the passive participles of the verbs we already know. For convenience, we add a table of them below. But to make it easy, we will assign half the list to be learned in Lesson 15, and the other half in Lesson 16—and we will not learn any new forms in those lessons. There are less than three dozen verbs thus far. Some of them do not have a perfect passive participle, usually because they cannot be passive. When there is no perfect passive participle, we will give the future active participle (if there is one) and mark it with an asterisk. You need not learn that future active now, unless you want to. But we will need it sometime.

INFINITIVE	PERFECT ACTIVE	PERFECT PASSIVE	MEANING
accípere	accépit	accéptus	receive
amáre	amávit	amátus	love
audíre	audívit	audítus	hear
cádere	cécidit	*casúrus	fall
cápere	cepit	captus	take, capture
creáre	creávit	creátus	create, make
dare	dedit	datus	give
dícere	dixit	dictus	say
esse	fuit	*futúrus	be
exclamáre	exclamávit	exclamátus	shout
expéllere	éxpulit	expúlsus	drive out
fácere	fecit	factus	make, do
gérere	gessit	gestus	wage, wear
habére	hábuit	hábitus	have
iácere	iecit	iactus	throw
inveníre	invénit	invéntus	find
míttere	misit	missus	send
———	odit	*osúrus	hate
paráre	parávit	parátus	prepare
pónere	pósuit	pósitus	put, place
posse	pótuit	———	be able
promíttere	promísit	promíssus	promise
remanére	remánsit	*remansúrus	remain
regnáre	regnávit	regnátus	rule
rogáre	rogávit	rogátus	ask
scire	scivit	scitus	know

INFINITIVE	PERFECT ACTIVE	PERFECT PASSIVE	MEANING
scríbere	scripsit	scriptus	write
serváre	servávit	servátus	save
stare	stetit	*statúrus	stand
timére	tímuit	———	fear
velle	vóluit	———	wish, will
veníre	venit	*ventúrus	come
vidére	vidit	visus	see
víncere	vicit	victus	conquer

You will soon learn to recognize certain patterns in the parts of verbs: note especially how many run: *-are, -avit, -atus*. And a fair number have: *-ire, -ivit, -itus*. Pick out all examples of these kinds in the list. It is worthwhile.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Pick out "has been" or "was" patterns.

Románus exércitus victus est. Colúmbus missus est in Américam. Agnus albus non est missus in scholam. Sed agnus venit in scholam. María est missa in scholam. Porci non sunt missi in scholam. Pecúnia pósita est in naves. Pecúnia accépta est. Galli expúlsi sunt e terra Romána. Bellum est promíssum. Hánnibal non est captus. Bellum est gestum in Gállia. Mílites expúlsi non fuérunt laeti.

María est amáta. María étiam amávit Marcum. Marcus amátus est a (*by*) María. María amáta est a Marco.

Geórgius Wáshington amátus est a Státibus Foederátis Américae. Cincinnátus amátus est a cívibus Románis. Cincinnátus Romam servávit consíliis bonis. Roma serváta est a Cincinnáto. Pax non promíssa est ab Hannibále. Hánnibal promísit ódium aetérnum et bellum. Bellum gestum est ab Hannibále. Hánnibal non captus est a Románis.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. The Punic army was sent into Gaul. 2. Much gold was found. 3. The horsemen were heard.

LECTIO DECIMA QUINTA

De participiis passivis

Summary: The year after Trebia, Hannibal beat Flaminius. Flaminius did not think Hannibal would cross the Apennines in the spring. But Hannibal did it, and came between Flaminius and Rome. Flaminius pursued, and Hannibal led him through a narrow pass by Lake Trasimene into a trap. The Roman army was annihilated.

Románus exércitus victus est ab Hannibále ad flumen Trébiam. In próximo anno, Hánnibal fecit áliam magnam victóriam. Iam álius consul fuit imperátor Románus. Hic consul fuit Gaius Flamínius. Gaius Flamínius dixit quod Hánnibal non pótuit veníre trans montes Apennínos, quia nix fuit in móntibus. Sed Hánnibal non tímuit nivem. Hánnibal venit cum exércitu trans montes. Venit inter Flamínium et Romam. Roma tímuit. Flamínius tímuit. Non voluérunt Hannibálem cápere Romam. Flamínius ergo venit ad pugnam. Sed Hánnibal rursus fecit insídias. Hánnibal amávit pugnáre insídiis. Flamínius et exércitus Románus venérunt per angústias. Hánnibal posúerat mílites Púnicos post angústias in insídiis. Itaque quando exércitus Románus venit ex angústiis, invenérunt mílites Púnicos in insídiis. Mílites Púnici fuérunt ante et étiam post exércitum Románum. Románi mílites pugnavérunt. Viri fortes fuérunt. Sed non potuérunt víncere mílites Púnicos. Púnici enim fuérunt ante Romános. Et étiam fuérunt post Romános. Románi mílites vix potuérunt vidére mílites Púnicos, quia nébulae fuérunt ad Lacum Trasiménum. Ergo exércitus Románus fortis victus est ab Hannibále. Hánnibal rursus vícerat Romános. Hánnibal fuit imperátor bonus et fortis.

próximus-*next*
iam-*now*
trans-*across*
nix-*snow*
inter-*between*
insídiae-*ambush*
angústiae-*narrow place*
vix-*hardly*
nébula-*mist, haze*
lacus-*lake*

Vocabularium

Learn the parts of the first seventeen verbs listed in Lesson 14.

Nunc Cogitemus

Nothing really new today. Let us digest what we learned in the last lesson. But we might notice the new meaning we can get from the preposition *a, ab*: when we use it with one of these passive forms, it means *by*. We have already seen many samples: e.g., *Exércitus victus est ab Hannibále*: The army was conquered by Hannibal.

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Watch for dixit quod *and perfect passive "has been" patterns.*

Marcus victus est a María. Marcus enim amávit Maríam. Marcus dixit quod María fuit agna parva. Dixítne María *baa*? Non. Et María étiam dixit quod Marcus fuit agnus parvus. María amáta est a Marco. In schola, parvus agnus albus audítus est: dixit enim: *baa*. Et in foro, hic parvus porcus audítus est: Dixit enim: oui! Cincinnátus est créatus Dictátor. Sed Cincinnátus non vóluit esse Dictátor. Multa (*many things*) dicta sunt a Cincinnáto. Multa dicta sunt a senátu Románo. Sed Cincinnátus étiam fecit multa et magna. Multa et magna facta sunt a Cincinnáto. Cincinnátus fuit magnus fortitúdine et consíliis.

Tarquínius expúlsus est a Románis. Tarquínius vóluit remanére in urbe—sed non accéptus est. Pecúnia non est hábita a Colúmbo. Sed pecúnia est hábita ab Isabélla. Isabélla dedit multas naves bonas. Horátius stetit in ponte Románo. Pons factus est a Románis. Sed ignis est iactus in pontem. Et pons cécidit in flumen. Románus exércitus venit in insídias ad Lacum Trasiménum. Hánnibal vicit Romános insídiis. Multi Románi iacti sunt in lacum. Exércitus Románus audítus est ab Hannibále. Sed exércitus Púnicus non est audítus a Románis: Púnici enim fuérunt in insídiis. Multa bona consília facta sunt a senátu Románo. Multi mílites feróces fuérunt in exércitu Púnico. Hánnibal et elephánti descendérunt grádibus. Elephánti non fuérunt animália

parva. Elephánti fecérunt itínera magna—venérunt enim trans Alpes cum Hannibále. Potuítne Hánnibal iácere elephántum trans Alpes? Non. Hánnibal fuit vir fortis. Fuit étiam imperátor fortis. Sed étiam imperátor fortis non pótuit iácere elephántos. Sed Hánnibal pótuit iácere agnum in flumen. Et étiam pótuit iácere ália animália.

Mohámmed vóluit montem veníre—sed mons non venit. Ergo Mohámmed venit ad montem. Potuítne Geórgius Wáshington iácere pecúniam trans flumen Potómac? Útique—senátus enim Americánus pótuit étiam iácere pecúniam trans Océanum Atlánticum.

English to Latin

1. Cincinnatus was asked to come. 2. Marcus seemed (i.e., was seen—passive of *vidére*) to love Mary. 3. The legend was written.

LECTIO DECIMA SEXTA

Iterum nihil novi hodie: sed studeamus participiis passivis

SUMMARY: After the disaster at Lake Trasimene, Q. Fabius Maximus was made Dictator. He knew he dare not risk a pitched battle, and contented himself with small operations. This policy was unpopular: he was labeled "The Delayer." The next year two consuls were elected instead of Fabius. If we may believe Livy (not clear) Paulus favored the policy of Fabius—Varro did not. Hannibal, since they commanded on alternate days, waited for Varro's day, and enticed him into battle at Cannae. The result was another disaster, one of the worst in Roman history.

Postquam exércitus Románus victus est ad Lacum Trasiménum, vir magnus creátus est Dictátor Románus: Quintus Fábius Máximus. Fábius vidit quod non pótuit víncere Hannibálem statim. Ergo Fábius vóluit expectáre. Quia Fábius semper vóluit expectáre, Rományi dedérunt novum nomen: vocavérunt Fábium "Cunctatórem." Románi non vidérunt quod Fábius bonum faciébat (*was doing*). Sed necésse fuit expectáre. Hánnibal vóluit pugnáre magnam pugnam cum exércitu Románo. Cives Románi voluérunt magnam pugnam cum Hannibále. Sed bonum fuit expectáre. Fábius vóluit víncere consílio bono. Fábius ergo expectávit. Fábius non pugnávit. Sed cives Románi non amavérunt expectáre. Dixérunt: Fábius non est bonus imperátor.

Ergo próximo anno (*217 BC*) elegérunt duos (II) cónsules: Lúcium Aemílium Paulum, et Gaium Teréntium Varrónem. Non iam habuérunt Fábium Dictatórem. Scriptor Románus, Lívius, dixit quod Aemílius Paulus non vóluit pugnáre cum Hannibále, sed Varro vóluit pugnáre. Dixítne Lívius veritátem? Non est clarum. Sed, secúndum Lívium, Hánnibal vóluit pugnáre—et Hánnibal scivit quod Paulus non vóluit pugnáre, sed Varro vóluit. Paulus et Varro fuérunt imperátores in altérnis diébus. Ítaque, quando Varro fuit imperátor, Hánnibal parávit ad pugnam. Et Varro fecit pugnam cum Hannibále. Sed Hánnibal fuit imperátor bonus. Et Varro non fuit imperátor bonus. Ergo Hánnibal íterum vicit Romános. Pugna facta est ad Cannas.

statim-*at once*
expectáre-*wait*
vocávit-*called*
Cunctátor-*delayer*
elégit-*elected*
scriptor-*writer*
clarus-*clear*
secúndum-*according to*
altérnus-*alternate*
íterum-*again*

VOCABULARIUM

Learn the parts of the rest of the verbs listed in Lesson 14.

NUNC COGITEMUS

Again nothing new today—isn't Latin easy! But get those participles up!

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Pax non promíssa est. Sed pax est bona. Mílites Románi paráti sunt ad pugnam. Imperátor enim promísit pugnam acrem. Mílites étiam acres sunt et fortes. Non voluérunt remanére in urbe, voluérunt pugnáre cum Hannibále. Fábius rogátus est pugnáre. Roma serváta est a Fábio. Primis diébus, Roma serváta est ab Horátio. Horátius enim pugnávit in ponte. Horátius cécidit in flumen, quia ignis cécidit in pontem. Hánnibal vicit Romános quia Románi non accéperant cibum.

Colúmbus vóluit inveníre Índiam, sed invénit Américam. Ítaque Índia non est invénta a Colúmbo. Agnus albus invéntus est in schola. Fuítne necésse habére agnum in schola? Non. Non est necésse habére agnos in schola. Sed necésse est habére púeros et puéllas in scholis. Estne necésse habére porcos in foro? Non est necésse—Románi sunt in foro. Et Marcus Porcius Cato est in foro. Cato fuit Románus fortis et magnus. Cato habúerat magnam potestátem in urbe. Cato pugnávit in

multis bellis. Cato fuit ferox contra Cartháginem. Cato dixit quod necésse fuit víncere Cartháginem.

Carthágo hábuit magnam potestátem in mari. Carthágo fuit fortis návibus. Sed Roma fuit fortis exércitu magno. In primo bello Púnico Roma vícerat Cartháginem. Sed in bello Púnico secúndo Carthágo fere vicit Romam. Roma fere victa est ab Hannibále. Mílites Púnici fuérunt in insídiis. Románi venérunt in insídias. Románi iacti sunt in lacum—lacus frígidus fuit. Aqua frígida fuit. Malum est esse in aqua frígida. Sed étiam malum est esse in aqua cálida (*hot*).

English to Latin

1. Hannibal was conquered by the Romans. 2. But he had conquered the Romans in many battles. 3. Hannibal was a brave general.

LECTIO DECIMA SEPTIMA

De ablativo absoluto

SUMMARY: Hannibal remained at the height of his power for two or three years after Cannae. But then Rome began to have successes. Marcellus took several cities. Scipio was especially outstanding. After some victories in Spain, he was made consul. He wanted to carry the war into Africa. The senate agreed if he would pay the troops. He went and also obtained the help of Masinissa, king of Numidia. They cut off Carthage from food supplies. Carthage recalled Hannibal. Scipio defeated him at Zama. The war came to an end.

Postquam victi sunt ab Hannibále ad Cannas, Románi non habuérunt victórias magnas per tres (III) annos. Sed post tres annos Marcéllus factus est consul Románus. Marcéllus cepit áliquas (*some*) urbes. Sed Scípio Africánus fuit máximus imperátor Románus in últimis annis. Scípio enim vicit exércitum Púnicum in Hispánia. Post victórias in Hispánia, Scípio nihilóminus vóluit míttere exércitum in Áfricam. Ergo senátus Románus non vóluit míttere exércitum Románum in Áfricam. Quidam (*certain*) senatóres dixérunt: "Non est necésse míttere exércitum in Áfricam: Hánnibal enim, máximus imperátor Púnicus, est in Itália." Sed Scípio nihilóminus vóluit míttere exércitum in Áfricam. Ergo senátus dedit potestátem míttere exércitum in Áfricam. Sed non dedérunt pecúniam pro exércitu. Ergo álii Románi pecúniam dedérunt pro expeditióne.

Scípio pósuit mílites in naves, et navigavérunt in Áfricam multis návibus. In África fuit rex Masiníssa. Masiníssa fuit rex Numídiae (*of Numidia*). Masiníssa dedit auxília. Scípio et Masiníssa interclusérunt Cartháginem a fruménto. Ergo Carthágo pacem rogávit. Étiam Hannibálem in Áfricam revocavérunt. Ítaque Hánnibal et exércitus Púnicus venérunt rursus in Áfricam. Hoc facto (*this having been done*) Carthaginiénses pacem non servavérunt.

Sed Scípio fuit imperátor magnus. Scípio vicit Hannibálem in pugna ad Zamam. Ergo pax facta est. Roma víceràt Cartháginem in bello Púnico secúndo. Carthágo dedit multam pecúniam et multas naves.

máximus-*greatest*
nihilóminus-*nevertheless*
pro-*for*
navigávit-*sailed*
auxília-*reinforcements*
interclúsit-*cut off*
fruméntum-*grain*
vocávit-*called*

VOCABULARIUM

interclúdere, interclúsit, interclúsus-*cut off*
navigáre, navigávit, navigátus-*sail*
vocáre, vocávit, vocátus-*call*
auxília, is (*plural of auxílium*)-*reinforcements, auxiliaries*
fruméntum, o-*grain*
máximus, a, um-*very great, greatest*
nihilóminus-*nevertheless*
pro (*with ablative*)-*for*

NUNC COGITEMUS

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE: The Romans had something of the spirit of a Scotch telegrapher—there are some very handy short-cuts in the language. One of these is the *ablative absolute*. It may seem odd at first, but it is not hard to get used to it. Notice—in English we may say:

This being the case, let us go ahead.

Now in Latin, we do the same sort of thing, but put the pattern in the ablative case (and in a greater variety than English):

Rege expúlso, Románi pugnavérunt.

This pattern is called ablative absolute. Now there is a literal—but very crude—translation possible. It is useful as a start:

The king HAVING BEEN expelled,
the Romans fought.

Notice how we treat the two words: *rege,* and *expúlso*. *Rege,* of course, is merely translated: *the king*. But the

participle *expúlso* becomes: *having been expelled.* That is crude—but the HAVING BEEN formula is a good way to start, to get the sense.

Please memorize a sentence containing an *ablative absolute,* and its English translation—you may take the one just given, or make up one of your own. But if you memorize one, it will serve as a pattern.

Now that starting translation is too crude—and besides, we said that the Romans at times were men after the heart of a Scotch telegrapher—so—we can expand that cramped, crude translation. We have quite a choice:

1. *When* (or *after*) the king was expelled, the Romans fought.
2. *Because* (or *since*) the king was expelled, the Romans fought.
3. *Although* the king was expelled, the Romans fought.
4. *If* the king was expelled, the Romans fought.

You will find it pays richly to memorize a complete set of sentences like the above—or at very least, to memorize the words in italics: *when, after, because, although,* and *if.*

But there is a fifth type of expansion—not ordinarily necessary to know, but very often handy. In it, we make an independent clause out of the absolute and join it to the rest of the sentence by the word *and.*
For example:

5. The king was expelled AND the Romans fought.

N.B. *These principles on the ablative absolute are extremely important—almost every page of a regular Latin author will have at least one such absolute.* They are easy when you get used to them. Do it now. And therefore—

Exerceamus Nos

Find the ablative absolute patterns.

Pace facta, mílites venérunt in urbem. Románis victis, Carthaginiénses laeti fuérunt. Hannibále viso, Fábius non vóluit pugnáre. Agno viso, porci dixérunt: oink. Urbe capta, Marcéllus misit legátos ad Fábium. Bello gesto, pax rursus venit. Pecúnia iacta trans flumen Potómac, Geórgius Wáshington laetus fuit. América invénta, Colúmbus accépit aurum multum. Fábio rogáto, legáti venérunt rursus in senátum. Roma serváta, Cincinnátus vóluit veníre in agros. Fruménto in naves pósito, Colúmbus navigávit in Américam. Porcis captis, mílites cibos habuérunt. Agno ex schola expúlso, Marcus laetus fuit: non enim amávit audíre: *baa.* Amávit vidére Maríam. Milítibus parátis, Fábius iter fecit. *Baa-Baa* dicta, agnus laetus fuit. Scipióne misso in Áfricam, senátus accépit pacem. Sagúnto capto, mílites Púnici accepérunt aurum multum.

English to Latin

1. Columbus sailed into the new world. 2. Carthage has been cut off from grain. 3. Masinissa received much gold. 4. Much gold having been received, the soldiers were glad. 5. Although the Romans were conquered, Hannibal was not glad. 6. Because grain had been received, the men called the general.

LECTIO DECIMA OCTAVA

De casu possessivo

Summary: The second Punic War left Rome the greatest power in the Mediterranean world. But Rome still had many wars—wars with Macedonia, and with Antiochus, king of Seleucia. But other powers learned to fear Rome. Thus, when Antiochus IV invaded Egypt, a Roman senator, Popilius, ordered him out. Antiochus asked time to consider. Popilius drew a circle about him in the sand and demanded an immediate answer before leaving the circle. Or again, a mere order from Rome stopped King Prusias of Bithynia from taking Pergamum.

Post bellum Púnicum secúndum, Carthágine victa, Roma potestátem máximam hábuit in toto mundo. Sed necésse fuit gérere multa ália bella. Románi bella gessérunt cum Macedónia, cum Rege Antíocho (Antíochus fuit rex in Seleúcia) et cum Graécia. Sed étiam reges scivérunt quod in perículo fuérunt quando bellum cum Roma gessérunt. Exémpli grátia (*for the sake of example*) Antíochus rex, in saéculo secúndo ante Christum vóluit cápere Aegýptum. Sed unus ex senatóribus Románis, Popílius nómine, venit ad regem Antíochum in Aegýptum. Popílius, in nómine Románo, iussit regem Antíochum discédere ex Aegýpto. Hoc (*this*) facto, Antíochus dixit quod deliberáre vóluit. Popílius ítaque scripsit círculum in aréna circum Antíochum. Popílius dixit quod necésse fuit non discédere ex círculo ántequam daret (*before giving*) respónsum. Hoc (*this*) audíto, Antíochus rex statim discéssit ex Aegýpto.

Sed potéstas magna est visa étiam quando rex Prúsias Bithýniae (*of Bithynia*) vóluit Pérgamum cápere. Roma iussit—et factum est. Prúsias Pérgamum non cepit. Prúsias remánsit in terra Bithýniae. Prúsias scivit quod necésse fuit timére potestátem Románam. Et Prúsias veritátem scivit: Románi fuérunt máximi potestáte in toto mundo. Quando Roma iússerat —necésse fuit fácere iussa.

totus-*whole*
unus-*one*
iussit-*ordered*
discédere-*to go out of*
deliberáre-*to consider*
aréna-*sand*
circum-*around*
ántequam-*before*
respónsum-*answer*
statim-*at once*

Vocabularium

deliberáre, -ávit, -átus-*deliberate*	ántequam (*conjunction*)-*before*
discédere, -céssit, -cessúrus-*depart*	circum (*with objective*)-*around*
iubére, iussit, iussus-*order*	aréna, a-*sand*
	respónsum, o-*answer*

Nunc Cogitemus

Possessive Case: The possessive case is the "*of*" case, or the " *'s*" case. All Latin nouns have endings for the *possessive* case. We form it by substituting the possessive endings for the ablative singular endings, thus:

1.	2.	3.	3.	4.	5.
naut*ae* naut*árum*	agn*i* agn*órum*	leg*is* leg*um*	civ*is* cív*ium*	senát*us* senát*uum*	di*éi* di*érum*

So—*agni* means either: *the lamb's* or *of the lamb*.

Notice that we have given two words as samples for the third declension. In the singular, both have *-is*. But in the plural, one has *-um*, and the other has *-ium*. Why so? *It depends on the ablative singular*. Those nouns that have ablative singular in *-i* (and adjectives too) will have the *-ium* possessive plural.

Those that have the ablative singular, in *-e*, will have only *-um* in the possessive plural. Simple isn't it. And gender makes no difference—all three genders in the third declension use the same endings for the possessive, making, of course, the distinction of *-um* and *-ium* according to the ablative.

Now, we already saw that neuters in the third declension that have *-i* in the ablative singular, have *-ia* for nominative and objective plurals—now we note that the very same nouns have *-ium* for possessive plurals. The *-i's* have it!

As to *adjectives,* they use the same declensions as the nouns. That is, *bonus* type adjectives will use the endings

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
-i -orum	-ae -arum	-a -orum

As to *third declension adjectives,* since practically all have the ablative singular in *-i,* we may say that the possessive forms of those adjectives are: *-is* and *-ium.*

But some of these possessive endings are duplicates of endings of other cases! Thus *nautae* could be either possessive singular or nominative plural. And similarly *agni* could be either possessive singular or nominative plural. The way possessive patterns are used will soon tell us how to distinguish them. It is not nearly so hard as in English, where almost all endings duplicate.

PARTICIPLES USED AS NOUNS: Notice the last sentence in the story above: *necésse fuit fácere iussa.*
That word *iussa* is the neuter nominative-objective plural of the participle of *iubére.* Now—we found that *bona* could mean good *things*; similarly, *iussa* can mean *ordered things.* Therefore, *fácere iussa* means *to do the things ordered.*

EXERCEAMUS NOS

Watch for possessive patterns.

Magna fuit potéstas Romae. Mílites Cartháginis fortes fuérunt. Pecúnia accépta, Colúmbus navigávit in návibus Isabéllae. Cincinnátus hábuit potestátem Dictatóris. Sed étiam agri Cincinnáti fuérunt boni.

Mariáe agnus venit in scholam. Hic agnus dixit *baa.* Sed in schola fuit étiam álius agnus Maríae—hic agnus non dixit *baa.* Marcus enim fuit étiam agnus Maríae—María enim vocávit Marcum agnum parvum. María visa, Marcus laetus fuit. Marcus amávit Maríam. Marcus fuit amátor Maríae.

In díebus Horátii, Románi fuérunt fortes. Sed étiam fuérunt fortes in diébus Popíli—Popílio audíto, Antíochus discéssit ex Aegýpto. Rex Antíochus fecit iussa. Popílius enim hábuit potestátem senátus Románi. Senátus Románus magnam potestátem hábuit. Étiam potéstas exércitus Románi fuit magna. Et potéstas tribunórum plebis fuit magna. Tribúni plebis fuérunt viri fortes. Potéstas patriciórum fuit magna. Sed patrícii non semper fecérunt bona. Ergo plebs vóluit discédere ab urbe. Legáti patriciórum venérunt ad plebem. Rogavérunt plebem veníre rursus in urbem. Sed plebs non vóluit veníre ántequam potestátem accepérunt. Ergo patrícii dedérunt tribúnos plebis. Tribúnis accéptis, plebs venit in urbem.

Popílius dixit quod necésse fuit audíre respónsum Antíochi statim. Vóluit audíre respónsum Antíochi ántequam Antíochus veníret (*should come*) ex círculo in aréna. Popílius accépit respónsum Antíochi statim. Antíochus statim discéssit ex Aegýpto. Nonne potéstas Romanórum fuit magna? In Aegýpto fuit fruméntum multum. Antíochus vóluit habére fruméntum Aegýpti —sed Románi étiam voluérunt habére fruméntum Aegýpti.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. The sailor's father had come. 2. The senate's power was great. 3. Popilius ordered Antiochus to get out. 4. Although the ship's gold had been seized, the general did not depart. 5. Before Rome's sailors came, there was no fight. 6. The power of Rome was great. 7. Antiochus was king of Seleucia.

LECTIO DECIMA NONA

De tribus casibus pronominis: ille

SUMMARY: Marcus Porcius Cato ended every speech in the senate with the words, "Carthage must be destroyed." Rome feared Carthage, since Hannibal had almost ruined Rome. And they hated Carthage. The senate began to believe Cato. Carthage made war on Masinissa without Roman permission, a violation of the treaty. Rome sent legates to demand that Carthage lay down her arms. Carthage complied. (Continued tomorrow)

Marcus Pórcius Cato fuit vir fortis. Sed Cato odit Cartháginem. Roma iam vícerat Cartháginem in primo et in secúndo bellis Púnicis. Sed Hánnibal fere vícerat Romam. Ergo multi Románi timúerant Cartháginem. Hannibále victo, Románi timuérunt étiam victam Cartháginem. Quia timuérunt Cartháginem, et quia Hánnibal fere vícerat Romam, fácile fuit odísse Cartháginem. Cato ergo odit Cartháginem. Cato fuit censor Románus. Cato étiam hábuit oratiónes multas in senátu Románo. Cato dixit multa in senátu Románo contra Cartháginem, étiam contra Cartháginem victam. In fine omnis oratiónis, Cato semper dixit: necésse est delére Cartháginem. Ergo senátus Románus saepe audívit: necésse est delére Cartháginem. Catóne saepe audíto, étiam senátus dixit: necésse est delére Cartháginem.

Carthágo fecit bellum cum Masiníssa, rege Numídiae. Sed Carthágo non débuit fácere bellum in África sine licéntia Romanórum. Carthágo non vóluit fácere bellum. Sed Masiníssa fuit malus. Fere necésse fuit gérere bellum cum rege Numídiae. Ergo Carthaginiénses fecérunt bellum.

Románus senátus audívit quod Carthágo fécerat bellum sine licéntia Romanórum. Ergo senátus dixit: necésse est delére Cartháginem. Ítaque senátus misit cónsules cum exércitu ad Carthaginiénses. Cónsules dixérunt: senátus Románus iussit Carthaginiénses depónere arma. Consúlibus audítis, Carthaginiénses fecérunt iussa. Timuérunt enim potestátem Romae.

(*Continued tomorrow—continuábitur cras.*)

fácile-*easy*
odísse-*to hate*
habére oratiónem-*to give a speech*
omnis-*all, every*
finis, -*end*
delére-*to destroy*
saepe-*often*
débuit-*ought*
licéntia-*permission*
sine-*without*
depónere-*lay down*
arma-*arms*

VOCABULARIUM

debére, débuit, débitus-*owe, ought*
delére, delévit, delétus-*destroy*
depónere, -pósuit, -pósitus-*put down*
saepe-*often*
sine (*with ablative*)-*without*
fácilis, fácile, i-*easy*
bonus finis, e (*poss. pl.*-ium)-*end*
omnis, omne, i-*all, every*
magna orátio, -ióne-*speech*
oratiónem habére-*give a speech*

NUNC COGITEMUS

NOMINATIVE, OBJECTIVE, AND ABLATIVE OF *Ille*: The forms of *ille* are almost all like *bonus, bona, bonum*:

	Masculine		Feminine		Neuter	
Nom	ille	illi	illa	illae	illud	illa
Obj.	illum	illos	illam	illas	illud	illa
Abl.	illo	illis	illa	illis	illo	illis

Where does *ille* differ from *bonus*? Only in three forms (of those given)—*ille*, nominative singular masculine and *illud* (twice)—nominative and objective singular neuter. So—out of the whole table, we have really only two forms to learn. In fact, if we learn the top row of singulars: *ille, illa, illud*—we have it. For the first of the odd forms, *ille*, is in that list. And the second, *illud*, is also in that list. The third is only a repetition of the second, according to the rule that nominative and objective are the same in neuters. Not much to learn!

What does *ille* mean? It can serve as an adjective:

ille vir—*that man*

illud bellum—*that war*

It can serve as a noun (pronoun):

ille—*he, that one*

illa—*she, that one*

illud—*it, that thing*

In the plural:

illi—*those men.*

Exerceamus Nos

Look for samples of the ille *pattern.*

In illis díebus, Románi gessérunt bellum cum Antíocho, rege Seleúciae. Popílius, senátor Romános venit ad illum regem. Popílius iussit Antíochum discédere ex Aegýpto. Popílio audíto, Antíochus discéssit ex illa terra.

Ubi est ille agnus albus? Ille est in schola. Sed non débuit veníre in scholam. Marcus non amávit agnos in schola—Marcus amávit Maríam in schola. Ille dixit quod illa est agna parva. Dixítne Marcus veritátem? Omnes púeri in schola vidérunt Marcum et Maríam. Sed non vidérunt porcos in schola. Porci fuérunt in foro. Illi porci dixérunt: oink. Cur (*why*) dixérunt porci illud? Quia non potuérunt dicere *baa*. Marcus dedit fruméntum pro agno Maríae.

Illi reges fuérunt boni. Senatóres Románi sunt boni consíliis. Omnes senatóres habuérunt oratiónes in senátu. Agnus albus audívit illas oratiónes. Sed agnus non dixit *baa* in senátu. Agnus vóluit esse bonus. Ergo illi senatóres amavérunt agnum.

Cato in senátu dixit quod necésse fuit delére Carthá-ginem. Ergo Carthágo vénerat ad finem. Finis diérum Cartháginis vénerat. Carthágo deléta est. Hánnibal non pótuit serváre illam urbem. Rex Bithýniae non pótuit serváre Cartháginem. Rex Bithýniae non pótuit stare contra potestátem Romanórum. Débuit fácere iussa.

English to Latin

1. Where is that man? 2. Mary wanted to find that lamb. 3. The men of Rome were brave. 4. Cato wanted them (*illos*) to destroy the city. 5. That man did not like the speech. 6. When that speech had been given, Cato departed. 7. By a great speech, he destroyed the city.

LECTIO VIGESIMA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

SUMMARY: After the Carthaginians had laid down their arms, the Roman legates announced that the senate ordered the destruction of the city: they would be permitted to rebuild, but it must be ten miles inland. This meant ruin for a mercantile city. So Carthage, without arms, resisted. The siege lasted three years. Women gave their long hair to make ropes for catapults. But it was hopeless. At last the city fell—a blot on Rome's record. In the same year they also destroyed Corinth—the site was desolate for a century.

Heri audívimus de prima parte belli Púnici tértii. Marcus Pórcius Cato saepe in senátu Románo díxerat: necésse est delére Carthráginem. Cartthágo fécerat bellum cum Masiníssa, rege Numídiae. Bello facto, senátus Románus míserat cónsules ad Carthaginiénses. Cónsules iússerant illos depónere arma. Consúlibus audítis, Carthaginiénses deposúerant arma.

Sed quid dixit senátus Románus? Postquam viri Cartháginis deposuérunt arma, senátus dixit: necésse est delére Cartháginem. Licet aedificáre novam urbem—sed non ad mare. Carthaginiénses boni mercatúra fuérunt—necésse est habére urbem ad mare. Ergo Carthaginiénses, sine armis, bellum gessérunt cum Románis. Bellum factum est in anno centésimo quadragésimo nono (*149*) ante Christum. Per tres (III) annos Carthaginiénses fórtiter pugnavérunt. Féminae Carthaginiénses étiam dedérunt capíllos cápitis pro catapúltis. Étiam féminae Carthaginiénses fortes fuérunt. Sed non potuérunt víncere Romános. Románi enim multi fuérunt. Románi bona arma habuérunt. Carthaginiénses non habuérunt bona arma: omnia arma déderant Románis. Non fuit fácile pugnáre sine armis. Ergo Románi delevérunt Cartháginem. Nihil illíus (*of that*) urbis remánsit—omnia deléta sunt. Románi mali fuérunt. Non debuérunt delére Cartháginem. Masiníssa étiam malus fuit. Non débuit lacéssere Cartháginem.

Eódem anno, Románi étiam delevérunt Graecam urbem, Coríinthum. Nemo remánsit in illo loco per centum (*100*) annos.

heri-*yesterday*
audívimus-*we heard*
pars-*part*
quid-*what?*
licet-*it is permitted*
aedificáre-*build*
fémina-*woman*
fórtiter-*bravely*
capíllus-*hair*
caput-*head*
catapúlta-*catapult*
nihil-*nothing*
lacéssere-*harass*
eódem (abl.)-*same*

VOCABULARIUM

aedificáre, -ávit, -átus-*build*
lacéssere, -cessívit, -cessítus-*harass*
licet (*present tense*)-*it is permitted*
fórtiter-*bravely*
quid-*what?*
capíllus, o-*hair*
magnum caput, cápite-*head*
fémina, a-*woman*
locus, o (*but the plural shifts to neuter: loca*)-*place*
nemo, némine (*has no poss.*)-*no one*
bona pars, parte (*poss. pl.-ium. Most one syllable nouns of third declension have -e abl. sing. but -ium poss. pl.*)-*part*

VIDEAMUS FORMAS VETERES

1. Decline two words together (fine practice!): *bonus vir, ille vir,* (omit possessive and dative of *ille*), *illud caput, pars magna*. 2. Add up all the prepositions with the ablative we have seen so far. 3. How do you say: of the sea, of the seas, of the citizen, of the citizens, of the power, of the powers, of the speech, of the speeches, of the lamb, of the lambs.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

NEW WORD ORDER: The Romans did not always use the same word order as we do. Today we are going to begin to practice in earnest on one new variety of their word order. It will seem a bit strange to you at first, but you will get used to it quickly. Here is a sample:

María agnum hábuit.
Mary had the lamb.

Notice that we have the three pieces in this order:

1. subject 2. object 3. verb

N.B. *But do not rearrange them in your own mind—learn to feel them just like the Romans did. It is easy, and you will find it fun to try.* If you have to rearrange them the first few times, all right, but then go back and re-read the same sentence several times in Latin, without thinking of the English: you will find that you can follow the thought easily in Latin.

Magna pars legatórum Romanórum in urbem venérunt. Románi Cartháginem vidérunt. Románi arma vidére voluérunt. Carthaginiénses non debuérunt bellum sine licéntia Romanórum gérere. Sed Masiníssa, rex Numídiae, malus fuit—semper Cartháginem lacessívit.

Románi étiam Corínthum delevérunt. Graeci enim cum áliis Graecis semper pugnavérunt. Graeci étiam cum Roma pugnavérunt. Roma non amávit semper pugnáre. Ergo Corínthum Románi delevérunt. Corínthus fuit urbs magna in Graécia. Corínthus multos mercatóres et multos nautas hábuit. Carthágo étiam multas naves habúerat. Sed nunc omnes naves Cartháginis delétae sunt. Nunc Carthágo non iam est urbs. Nemo in illo loco remánsit. Ergo Carthágo nihil est. Et Corínthus non iam est urbs. Corínthus nihil est. Suntne agni in illa urbe? Non sunt: illa enim urbs non est.

Ubi est Horátius? Horátius in ponte fuit. Ergo Horátius in flúmine est. Sed Horátius pugnáverat fórtiter contra Etrúscos. Horátius Romam servávit.

Cincinnátus étiam pro Roma fórtiter pugnávit. Cincinnátus enim in agris remanére volúerat, sed senátus Románus ad illum legátos misit. Dictatórem illum creavérunt. Sed Cincinnátus non vóluit remanére Dictátor: in agris esse vóluit. Cincinnátus enim agnos amávit. Sed malos viros non amávit: viri mali Romam odérunt. Viri mali delére Romam voluérunt. Sed Cincinnátus illos delévit. Viri mali deléti sunt a Cincinnáto. Viris malis delétis, Roma pacem hábuit. Sed non per multos annos. Álii enim viri mali venérunt.

English to Latin

1. It is necessary to find the woman. 2. A large part of the soldiers came. 3. They fought without permission of the Romans. 4. That woman is brave. 5. A large part of the soldiers was seen. 6. The Romans came with great power. 7. The legates of Rome ordered them to put down (their) arms (*arma*).

LECTIO VIGESIMA PRIMA

De tribus casibus pronominis: hic
De tempore plusquamperfecto in voce passiva

Summary: Tiberius Gracchus, though a patrician by birth, was sympathetic to the poor—many of them had been farmers, but had lost their lands, being unable to compete with large estates and slave labor. In Rome they found little work at little pay—slave competition again. The senate opposed the proposed law to give part of the public lands to the poor. (Part of their lands were public, but in many cases no one remembered which lands were public.) Gracchus however put it through the popular assembly. He did a number of things contrary to precedent and the senate's interests. Some senators organized a mob and killed him.

Tibérius Gracchus fuit patrícius nativitáte. Sed motus est misericórdia pro paupéribus. Viri enim paúperes multi fuérunt in urbe Romána. Illi paúperes habúerant agros. Paúperes non potúerant remanére in agris. Habúerant enim parvos agros. Sed dívites habuérunt magnos et multos agros. Dívites habuérunt multos servos. Servi non accepérunt pecúniam pro labóribus. Ergo paúperes non potuérunt tenére agros suos. Paúperes venérunt in urbem. Sed étiam in urbe fuérunt multi servi. Paúperes non voluérunt esse servi. Sed fere nihil accepérunt pro labóribus in urbe. Et fere nemo vóluit condúcere illos.

Tibérius Gracchus ergo vóluit dare agros paupéribus (*to the poor*). Ítaque propósuit legem novam in senátu. Sed senatóres non amavérunt novam legem. Per legem novam enim senatóres debuérunt dare partem agrórum suórum paupéribus. Non omnes agri senatórum re vera erant agri senatórum. Senatóres enim tenuérunt étiam multos agros públicos. Illi agri re vera non erant agri senatórum—erant agri públici. Sed senatóres non voluérunt dare illos agros paupéribus. Quia senatóres non voluérunt novam legem, Gracchus venit in comítia tribúta. Plebs in comítiis tribútis voluérunt habére novam legem Gracchi. Gracchus étiam fecit multa ália quae (*which*) senátus non amávit. Ergo quidam senatóres fecérunt turbam. Illa turba interfécit Tibérium Gracchum.

natívitas-*birth*
motus-*moved*
misericórdia-*pity*
dívites-*the rich*
servus-*slave*
labor-*work*
tenére-*hold, keep*
suus-*one's own*
condúcere-*hire*
propósuit-*proposed*
re vera-*really*
erant-*were*
comítia tribúta-*popular assembly*
quidam-*certain*
turba-*mob*
interfécit-*killed*

Vocabularium

erant-*were*
interfícere, fécit, féctus-*kill*
movére, movit, motus-*move*
propónere, pósuit, pósitus-*propose*
tenére, ténuit, tentus-*hold, keep*
multus labor, labóre-*work, suffering*
misericórdia, a-*mercy, pity*
servus, o-*slave*
senátor, óre, magnus-*senator*
suus, a, um-*one's own, his, hers, its, theirs*
verus, a, um-*true;* re vera-*in truth, really*

Nunc Cogitemus

Nominative, Objective, and Ablative of Hic: *Hic* is the mate to *ille*. *Ille* means *that*; *hic* means *this*. The forms of *hic* are almost as easy:

	Masculine		Feminine		Neuter	
Nom.	hic	hi	haec	hae	hoc	haec
Obj.	hunc	hos	hanc	has	hoc	haec
Abl.	hoc	his	hac	his	hoc	his

The factor that confuses the picture somewhat is the addition of the letter *c* to some of the endings. Without that, we could easily see that *hunc* and *hanc* once had *-um* and

-am. And the ablative singulars *hoc* and *hac* are obvious, without the *c*.

But we must admit that the three nominative singular forms: *hic, haec, hoc,* are just plain odd, as is also the neuter plural *haec*. But we will not find it difficult—*hic* is such a common word, even for the most sober Roman, that we shall soon find ourselves used to it.

PLUPERFECT PASSIVE: We know how to say: *He was conquered* or *has been conquered*—we use the *last part* of the *verb* with the words *est* or *sunt*. If we want to say: *He* had *been conquered,* we use *erat* or *erant*. Thus:

1. Románus exércitus *victus erat.*
   The Roman army *had been* conquered.
2. Multi mílites *interfécti erant.*
   Many soldiers *had been* killed.

Recall that in making the pluperfect active, we also used *erat* and *erant*—but in the active they became endings, not separate words: e.g., *víccerat*, *vícerant*.

SUUS: Recall the sentence in the story:

Non potuérunt tenére agros suos.
They were not able to keep their fields.

Suus may mean: *his own, her own, their own* (in the plural), etc. The word *own* need not be used, but *suus* really means that.

But if the expression "their fields" meant

not—their own fields
but—someone else's fields (e.g., the senator's fields)

then we could *not* use *suus*. We would need a different word, which we shall see later. (In case you are curious, it is: *eius* for the singular, and *eórum* for the plural—but those words are not adjectives, they are possessive forms of a pronoun. So, they do not agree in gender, number and case as *suus* does. Of course, the gender of *eórum, eárum, eórum* can change.)
Therefore:

They could not keep their own fields—use *suus*

They could not keep their (someone else's) fields—use *eius*, etc.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Hic vir est pater Colúmbi. Ille vir est pater Maríae. Ubi est Marci pater? Marcus in schola est: Maríam vidére vóluit. Ergo cum agno albo in scholam venit.

Gracchus novam legem propósuit, sed senatóres hanc legem non amavérunt. Plebs novam legem amávit. Hoc est verum. Senatóres dixérunt quod non voluérunt dare agros suos paupéribus. Sed re vera non *omnes* agri fuérunt agri senatórum. Quando senatóres de agris "suis" dixérunt veritátem non semper dixérunt. Multi agri re vera fuérunt agri públici. Haec véritas est. Ergo senatóres agros públicos tenére non debuérunt. Hos paupéribus dare debuérunt. Nova lex iussit senatóres dare agros públicos paupéribus. Quidam (*certain*) senatóres fuérunt viri mali—Tibérium Gracchum interfecérunt. Hic enim novam legem propósuit. Ubi sunt María et Marcus? Hic in schola est. Sed illa in schola non est. Illa agnum invenire vóluit, sed non pótuit. Agnus enim in schola cum Marco fuit. Ergo María débuit veníre ad agnum suum parvum. Colúmbus naves suas amávit. Ad Américam illis navigávit. Fuítne nemo in América in díebus Colúmbi? Non. Primi Americáni fuérunt in América illis diébus. América invénta, Colúmbus illos "Indos" vocávit. Sed Indi in Índia, non in América fuérunt. In América est Indiána. Suntne Indi in Indiána? Quid vóluit Colúmbus invenire? Índiam invenire vóluit. Quid vóluit agnus in schola invenire? Maríam vidére vóluit. Étiam cibum accípere vóluit. Cibi non erant hábiti ab agno.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. That man has come. 2. What did he want? 3. He wanted food. 4. Since Gracchus had been killed, the senators were able to keep the lands. 5. The lands of the senators were really large. 6. They had great sufferings. 7. Many men were slaves of the patricians.

LECTIO VIGESIMA SECUNDA

De tempore praesenti activo

SUMMARY: Gracchus had been guilty of some misdeeds, or at least, things contrary to custom. But the murder of Gracchus showed that the senate was corrupt. The case of Jugurtha showed it still better. Jugurtha had a right to one third of Numidia—but he killed one partner and expelled the other. The other, Adherbal appealed to the senate. The senate, its palms probably greased, gave Adherbal the poorer part of Numidia. Soon, after the siege of Cirta, Jugurtha killed Adherbal. This was an outrage, but the senate still wanted to do nothing.

Diébus Tibéri Gracchi senátus Románus corrúptus erat. Tibérius ambitiósus fúerat: fecit quaedam mala. Fecit quaedam étiam contra consuetúdinem. Sed senátus non débuit interfícere illum. Hoc re vera monstrávit corruptiónem senátus Románi. Erat étiam álius Gracchus, Gaius nómine. Tibério interfécto, Gaius non tímuit. Hic étiam propósuit legem de agris. Sed hic étiam non pótuit contra senátum pugnáre. Sed corrúptio senátus praesértim monstráta est in bello cum Iugúrtha.

Audívimus de Masiníssa, rege Numídiae. Fílius Masiníssae erat Micípsa. Quando Micípsa mórtuus est (*died*) Hiémpsal et Adhérbal debuérunt accípere Numídiam. Hiémpsal et Adhérbal erant fílii Micípsae. Iugúrtha erat nepos Micípsae. Iugúrtha débuit accípere partem Numídiae, cum fíliis Micípsae. Sed Iugúrtha interfécit Hiémpsalem. Hiémpsale interfécto, Iugúrtha éxpulit Adhérbalem ex Numídia. Adhérbal rogávit senátum Románum míttere auxílium. Sed senátus dedit partem orientálem Numídiae illi (*to him*) et partem occidentálem Iugúrthae (*to Jugurtha*). Iugúrtha probabíliter déderat aurum: pars enim occidentális erat mélior.

Parte occidentáli accépta, Iugúrtha bellum fecit cum Adhérbale. In hoc bello, Iugúrtha interfécit Adhérbalem. Sed senátus Románus vóluit nihil fácere—probabíliter accéperant aurum ab Iugúrtha. (*Continued tomorrow*—continuábitur cras.)

corrúptus-*corrupt*
quaedam-*certain things*
consuetúdo-*custom*
monstrávit-*showed*
praesértim-*especially*
audívimus-*we heard*
fílius-*son*
nepos-*nephew*
orientális-*east*
occidentális-*west*
mélior-*better*

VOCABULARIUM

monstráre, monstrávit, monstrátus-*show*	fílius, o-*son*
praesértim-*especially*	mélior, mélius, melióre-*better*
bona consuetúdo, consuetúdine-*custom*	occidentális, e, i-*western*
	orientális, e, i-*eastern*

NUNC COGITEMUS

SINGULAR PRESENT PATTERN: We learned some time ago the forms of the present active infinitive—we noted that all such infinitives end in *-re*. But there is a difference in the vowel ahead of the *-re*. This difference indicates *four* different *classes of verbs*. We call these four classes, *four conjugations*. They are identified by the infinitive endings (we consider here that the ending is the *-re* plus the letter ahead of the *-re*). Therefore:—the conjugations are as follows:

1. *-are* 2. *-ére* 3. *-ere* 4. *-ire*

Notice that the distinction between two and three is in the *accent* (the *e* is short in three, long in two).

Now to form the present active, third singular: remove the ending *-are, -ére, -ere, -ire* and add:

1. *-at* 2. *-et* 3. *-it* 4. *-it*

Notice that the vowel in these endings is, except for third conjugation, the same as that in the infinitive ending. Therefore, let us make a set of samples:

1. parat 2. habet 3. ponit 4. venit

Meanings?—he prepares / he does prepare / he is preparing } The Latin will stand any of the three translations equally well.

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Look for present patterns.

Marcus scholam aedíficat. Marcus vult (*irregular present of* vóluit—*memorize please*) vidére Maríam in schola. Agnus albus étiam vult habére scholam. Agnus in scholam veníre vult. Roma multas consuetúdines bonas habet. Nemo potest expéllere agnum ex schola. Servus pecúniam non habet. Miles sine armis pugnáre non potest. Habétne Colúmbus bonas naves? Útique, Colúmbus habet illas. Colúmbus illis návigat.

Tibérius Gracchus novam legem propónit. Nova lex agros pro paupéribus dat. Senátus novam legem non amat. Senátus Gracchum interfícere vult.

Horátius in ponte stat. Ignis in pontem cadit. Horátius in aquam cadit. Sed Etrúsci veníre in urbem non potuérunt.

Quid vocat María Marcum? Haec vocat illum "Agnus parvus." Potéstne Marcus dícere *baa*? Hic parvus porcus carnes bovínas assas (*see Lesson 2*) habet. Hic parvus porcus nihil habet. Hic parvus porcus: oui, oui! dicit.

Exércitus Románus Cartháginem fortitúdine vincit. Sed Carthaginiénses fórtiter pugnavérunt. Non est fácile pugnáre contra Carthaginiénses. Hánnibal enim, imperátor Carthaginiénsis, est vir magnus.

Colúmbus uxórem (*wife*) habet. Quid dicit uxor? Vocátne illum "parvus agnus." Non. Uxor Colúmbi habet magnam vocem (*voice*). Uxor Colúmbum vocat porcum. Porcus enim rotúndus est. Erátne Colúmbus rotúndus?

Hamílcar manum Hannibális in altáre ponit. Hánnibal ódium aetérnum promíttit contra Romam et Romános: fabula Romána dicit haec. Suntne haec vera? Verum est quod Hánnibal bellum cum, Románis gessit. Hánnibal Romános fere vicit. Sed Scípio Romam servat.

English to Latin

1. Scipio prepares the soldiers. 2. Columbus is showing his ships. 3. Adherbal remains in the eastern part of Numidia. 4. He is preparing an army. 5. The king of Africa has many slaves. 6. The senate had received much gold from Jugurtha. 7. Since it has received gold, the senate does not wish to fight against this man.

LECTIO VIGESIMA TERTIA

De tempore praesenti in persona tertia plurali

SUMMARY: The senate, probably bribed, did not wish to punish Jugurtha. But the plebs forced war. The war was a sham, followed by a sham surrender. But soon Jugurtha angered even the senate, by committing murder in Rome. War resumed, but with little success. Finally the plebs elected Marius consul, and made him commander. Marius gave up the use of unwilling draftees—he got volunteers by promise of lands and money. The army was thus more directly loyal to him than to Rome.

Senátus iam monstráverat corruptiónem suam. Iugúrtha enim interfécerat Adhérbalem. Sed senátus, probabíliter quia accéperat aurum ab Iugúrtha, vult fácere nihil. Senátus debet puníre Iugúrtham. Sed plebs, in comítiis tribútis, exclámant: senátus iniústus est. Senátus debet bellum movére cum Iugúrtha. Necésse est puníre illum. Ergo senátus, coáctus a plebe, movit bellum. Sed exércitus Románus non pugnávit fórtiter contra Iugúrtham. Et Iugúrtha non pugnávit fórtiter contra Romános. Senátus enim non vult bellum cum Iugúrtha. Et hic non vult bellum cum Roma. Simulavérunt bellum. Finis belli venit anno centésimo undécimo (*111 BC*) ante Christum. Mox Iugúrtha interfécit virum quando in urbe Romána erat. Magna audácia erat. Ítaque Roma rursus movit bellum cum Iugúrtha. Étiam senátus nunc ira motus est contra Iugúrtham.

Sed Roma non habet victóriam statim. Ítaque plebs creávit novum imperatórem: facit Márium imperatórem. Márius eléctus est consul anni centésimi séptimi (*107*). Márius non vóluit habére mílites ex deléctibus. Mílites ex deléctibus non voluérunt pugnáre. Márius vóluit habére mílites melióres. Ítaque promísit agros et pecúniam—hoc modo accépit mílites melióres. Hi mílites voluérunt pugnáre fórtiter. Voluérunt accípere bonos agros et pecúniam multam a Mário. Ítaque hi mílites amavérunt Márium. Speravérunt accípere pecúniam et agros ab illo—non a Roma. Ergo mílites Márii vicérunt Iugúrtham.

puníre-*punish*
iniústus-*unjust*
coáctus-*forced*
simulávit-*pretended*
mox-*soon*
audácia-*boldness*
ira-*anger*
deléctus-*draft*
modus-*way*
speráre-*hope*
fácile-*easily*

VOCABULARIUM

cógere, coégit, coáctus-*compel*
simuláre, ávit, átus-*feign, pretend*
puníre, punívit, punítus-*punish*
speráre, ávit, átus-*hope*
mox-*soon*
deléctus, u-*draft, levy*
iniústus, a, um-*unjust*
ira, a-*anger*
modus, o-*manner, way, measure, limit*

NUNC COGITEMUS

PRESENT THIRD PLURAL: Yesterday we learned how to make the present third singular in each of the four conjugations. Now it is just as easy to make the third plural on most verbs—we merely remove the infinitive ending (*-are*, etc.), and add:

1. *-ant* 2. *-ent* 3. *-unt* 4. *-iunt*

For example: 1. parant 2. habent 3. ponunt 4. véniunt

But there are just a few verbs that cause us a little trouble. These verbs belong to the third conjugation, but use the ending *-iunt*, like the fourth conjugation. However, we have not met many of these verbs—to be exact, we have met only five of them so far. Here is the third plural of those verbs:

accípiunt	(*from* accípere)
cápiunt	(*from* cápere)
fáciunt	(*from* fácere)
iáciunt	(*from* iácere)
interfíciunt	(*from* interfícere)

But how can we tell when we meet any more of the *-iunt* third verbs? We can make it easy—ahead of the usual

three parts of a verb, we shall give the *-iunt* form in the vocabulary, if a verb is of that type. Thus, we would print *accípere:*

[accípiunt], accípere, accépit, accéptus—receive

But if a verb does not have such a peculiarity, we shall keep on giving the usual three parts, just as we have been doing.

NOTE ON VOLUIT: The verb *vóluit* has some irregular forms—we know its infinitive, *velle*. We have used its third singular present—*vult*. The third plural is easier—it is merely: *volunt*—they wish.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Look for present patterns.

Románi Iugúrtham puníre vólunt. Bellum movére cum illo vólunt. Márius est imperátor bonus. Márius sperat fácere exércitum meliórem. Márius non vóluit cógere mílites pugnáre deléctibus—Márius mílites voluntários habére vóluit. Ille agros et pecúniam multam promísit. Quia pecúniam accípiunt, mílites amant Márium. Multa bona fáciunt. Iáciunt Iugúrtham ex Numídia. Urbes Numídiae cápiunt. Exércitus voluntárius mélior est. Románi pro Roma pugnáre debent.

Sed Románi non iam pugnáre amant. Senátus bellum cum Iugúrtha símulat. Iugúrtha bellum étiam símulat. Senátus et Iugúrtha pugnáre non vólunt. Senátus corrúptus est. Senátus étiam corruptiónem suam monstrávit quando Gracchum interfécit. Gracchus vir bonus erat—amávit Romam. Paúperes amávit. Sed senatóres voluérunt pecúniam multam habére.

Sed Marcus et María ínvicem (*one another*) amavérunt. Et amavérunt étiam agnum album. Colúmbus non erat iniústus. Colúmbus inveníre Índiam vóluit. Colúmbus et nautae naves suas amant.

Cincinnátus non iniústus fúerat. Románi in antíquis diébus iniústi non fuérunt. Illi Románi Romam amavérunt—non amavérunt pecúniam et aurum. Hoc modo servavérunt Romam. Galli Romam víncere voluérunt. Sed Romam non possunt víncere—Roma fortis est. Mílites Románi ex deléctibus in illis diébus erant fortes. Illi Románi antíqui pro Roma pugnáre voluérunt. Pecúniam et agros dare non erat necésse. Sed diébus Mari Románi pugnáre non voluérunt. Antíqui Románi fuérunt melióres.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. They are capturing many cities. 2. What are they throwing into the river? 3. Marius and his men (*sui*) are coming. 4. Marius and Sulla are fighting bravely. 5. He spoke with great anger. 6. Jugurtha pretends to love the senate, but in reality he does not. 7. By the draft they are forcing these men to come into the army.

LECTIO VIGESIMA QUARTA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

SUMMARY: Mithradates, king of Pontus, a small country in Asia Minor, began to overrun the country. He invaded the Roman province of Asia, and killed the legate. Sulla, a former lieutenant of Marius, was given command against Mithradates. But while Sulla was enroute to Asia, his command was revoked. Sulla marched on Rome, and killed those who had engineered his recall. But he could not find Marius (continued).

In Ásia Minóre est terra parva, Pontus nómine. Rex Ponti erat Mithradátes. Sed ille vóluit multas terras víncere. Ítaque bellum movit cum áliis terris in Ásia Minóre. Mithradátes enim vóluit expéllere Romános ex Ásia Minóre. In hoc témpore, Románi provínciam habuérunt in parte occidentáli Ásiae Minóris. Vocavérunt hanc provínciam Ásiam. Sed re vera "Ásia" erat solum pars parva Ásiae Minóris. Mithradátes étiam interfécit legátum Románum in hac província. Mithradátes dixit "Románi amant aurum." Ítaque Mithradátes infúdit aurum cálidum in guttur Románi.

Sine dúbio necésse erat bellum habére cum Mithradáte. Románi ergo fáciunt Sullam imperatórem contra Mithradátem. Sulla fúerat legátus in exércitu Mari in bello Iugurthíno. Sulla erat patrícius nativitáte, et vir magni ingénii. Sulla non iam amat Márium: Márius est ex parte plebis. Sulla est ex parte senátus.

Sed Sulla factus est imperátor contra Mithradátem. Sulla ergo discéssit ex urbe, cum exércitu magno. Dum Sulla abest ex urbe, tribúnus plebis, Sulpícius nómine, propónit novas leges. Una (*one*) lex rēvocat Sullam et facit Márium imperatórem. Sulla audívit de nova lege. Ergo Sulla venit rursus ad urbem cum exércitu suo. Sulla interfécit Sulpícium et multos amícos Sulpíci. Sed non póterat inveníre Márium.

(Continuábitur cras)

tempus-*time*
província-*province*
solum-*only*
infúdit-*poured*
cálidus-*hot*
guttur-*throat*
dúbium-*doubt*
ingénium-*ability*
pars-*party*
dum-*while*
abest-*be absent*
revocáre-*recall*
amícus-*friend*

VOCABULARIUM

abésse, áfuit, afutúrus-*be absent*
infúndere, fúdit, fúsus-*pour in*
revocáre, ávit, átus-*recall*
dum-*while*
cálidus, a, um-*hot*
dúbium, o-*doubt*
magnum guttur, ure-*throat*
ingénium, o-*talent, natural ability*
longum tempus, témpore-*time*

FAMILIES OF WORDS: It is a great help to our memory to notice that many words come in families. For example, in today's vocabulary we have *revocáre*. It belongs to the family of *vocáre*: to call. *Re* means: *back* or *again*. So, *re-vocáre* means: *to call back*. What would these mean: repónere, recípere, (*from* cápere), refícere (*from* fácere) remíttere, rescríbere?

Ad- means *near* or *to*. What would these mean: advocáre, adésse, admovére, appónere (ad-pónere), adveníre, adstáre?

A or *ab* means *from* or *away*. What would these mean: abésse, avocáre, amovére, abs-tinére (*from* tenére)?

It will be very worthwhile to keep a watch for words (mostly verbs) that come in families. There are still other families, as we shall see later.

VIDEAMUS FORMAS VETERES

1. How do you say: he compels, they compel, he shows, they show, she asks, they ask, he is absent, they are absent, he wishes, they wish, she receives, they receive, it sends, they sent, he throws, they throw. 2. Decline

these combinations as units: *magnus rex orientális, bonus deléctus, mala consuetúdo, caput cálidum*. 3. How do you say: he had been found, they had been found, it had been given, they had been given, it had been waged, they had been waged.

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Románi aurum amant—hoc dicit Mithradátes. Ergo Mithradátes aurum in guttur dat. Auro accépto, hábuit ille Románus caput cálidum? Estne bonum amáre aurum? Viri boni aurum amáre non debent. Res melióres amáre debent. Estne Ásia Minor parva? Non—non est parva. In Ásia Minóre est Ásia—Románi enim vocant provínciam suam "Ásia." Et haec província Romána in Ásia Minóre erat. Ergo Ásia in Ásia Minóre erat.

Dum Sulla ex urbe abest, quid facit Márius? Márius potestátem habére vult. Sed Sulla étiam potestátem habére vult. Ergo Roma bellum civíle habet. Mílites Mari Romam amavérunt. Sed étiam Márium amavérunt—agros et pecúniam a Mário, non a Roma, speravérunt. Étiam mílites Sullae amavérunt Romam. Sed amavérunt Sullam, et agros et pecúniam a Sulla, non a Roma, speravérunt. Hoc modo Roma póterat bellum civíle habére. Si (*if*) cives amant Romam solam—non possunt movére civíle bellum. Roma enim bellum civíle non amat.

Erátne bellum civíle in Státibus Foederátis Américae? Útique. In América, Status Confoederáti pugnavérunt cum Státibus Foederátis. Malum est habére bellum. Sed non iam est bellum in América. América habet bellum cum áliis natiónibus. América nunc cum Communístis pugnat. Communístae Américam delére volunt.

Primi cónsules Románi Tarquínium expéllere voluérunt. Sed Tarquínius Romam puníre vóluit, quia Roma illum expúlerat. Sed Románi monstravérunt quod Romam amavérunt: fórtiter pugnavérunt. Etrúsci in urbe non iam rémanent. Remanére non licet. Régibus expúlsis, Románi non habuérunt pacem, quia necésse erat semper pugnáre cum áliis natiónibus. Pax in hoc mundo non est aetérna.

English to Latin

1. Tarquinius having been expelled, Rome had war. 2. He was a patrician by birth. 3. They say that Jugurtha wants peace. 4. While there is doubt, they are not willing to recall that legate. 5. He was created dictator not because of (abl. alone means "because of") natural ability, but because of much work. 6. They are now fighting with the Communists. 7. Even good men do not have eternal peace in this world.

LECTIO VIGESIMA QUINTA

De tribus casibus pronominum: is et idem

SUMMARY: Marius had escaped to Africa. After imposing his will through the army, Sulla went east. He fought the forces of Mithradates in Greece—but also robbed Greece of many treasures. He then went over to Asia and conquered Mithradates. But the victory was not decisive. Sulla, however, was in a hurry to get back to Rome. In his absence there had been more civil war and murder. On his return there was more of the same.

Sulla in urbem vénerat cum exércitu et interfécerat Sulpícium et multos amícos Sulpíci. Sed Márium non invénerat—Márius enim eváserat in Áfricam. Sulla ergo discéssit ad Oriéntem cum exércitu contra Mithradátem. Sed ántequam venit in Ásiam Minórem, Sulla per Graéciam venit. Mithradátes hábuit exércitum in Graécia. Sulla ítaque pugnávit cum illo in Graécia. Sulla cepit multas Graecas urbes. Sed Sulla étiam rápuit multas res pretiósas ex Graécia. Deínde Sulla navigávit in Ásiam Minórem. Ibi multa proélia secúnda fecit. Sulla vicit Mithradátem, sed non omníno fregit potestátem illíus. Sulla enim non tímuit Mithradátem, sed tímuit Márium et amícos Mari in urbe. Sulla débuit frángere potestátem Mithradátis, sed hoc non fecit. Mithradátes enim pótuit pugnáre postquam Sulla discéssit.

In urbe, dum Sulla erat in Oriénte, bellum civíle fúerat inter amícos Mari et senátum. Multi Románi interfécti erant, Márius enim vénerat in urbem cum exércitu. Per quinque (V) dies, trucidátio fúerat in urbe. Decem míllia (*10,000*) interfécti erant.

Ergo quando Sulla venit in urbem, rursus bellum civíle venit. Márius non iam erat in urbe. Márius non iam erat in hac vita. Sed Sulla quotídie pósuit in foro nómina proscriptórum: Sulla dixit "licet interfícere hos proscríptos." Ergo fere quinque (V) míllia interfécti sunt. (Continuábitur cras)

evásit-*escaped*
rápuit-*seized*
deínde-*then*
pretiósus-*precious*
ibi-*there*
proélium-*battle*
secúndus-*successful*
fregit-*broke*
inter-*between*
trucidátio-*butchery*
vita-*life*
quotídie-*daily*
proscríptus-*proscribed*

VOCABULARIUM

evádere, evásit, evásus-*escape*
frángere, fregit, fractus-*break*
[rápiunt], rápere, rápuit, raptus-*seize, snatch*
ibi-*there*
inter (*with obj.*)-*between, among*
omníno-*altogether, at all, in all*
Mithradátes, e, malus-*Mithradates*
proélium, o-*battle*
secúndus, a, um-*second, successful*
vita, a-*life*

FAMILIES OF WORDS: Notice e-vádere in today's vocabulary. It means: go *out*. For *e*- or *ex*-means *out*. What would these mean: emíttere, eveníre, evocáre, exclúdere, expónere, eícere (ex-iácere)?

NUNC COGITEMUS

Is, ea, id can serve either as a pronoun or as a demonstrative adjective. As a pronoun it means: *he, she, it*. The plural is *they*. As an adjective it means *this*, or *that*. Its forms are not hard to learn:

Singular

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id
Obj.	eum	eam	id
Abl.	eo	ea	eo

Plural

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ei(ii)	eae	ea
Obj.	eos	eas	ea
Abl.	eis (iis)	eis	eis

Which forms differ from *bonus* type adjectives? Only two: *is* and *id* (of course, the neuter nominative and objective are the same—but that is usual). Therefore, if we memorize just the top three forms: *is, ea, id*—the rest is obvious. Isn't Latin easy?

What is the difference between *is, ea, id,* meaning *this* or *that,* and *hic* or *ille*? It is much weaker—it can't even make up its mind whether to be *this* or *that.*

IDEM: means "the same." Its declension is easy—just add *-dem* to *is, ea, id*:

idem	éadem	idem
eúmdem	eámdem	idem
eódem	eádem	eódem
eídem	eaédem	éadem
eósdem	eásdem	éadem
eísdem	eísdem	eísdem

Of course, we notice that we do not keep two *d*'s. So we do not write *iddem*—but *idem.* Nor do we ever say: *isdem,* but *idem.* Sometimes *eúmdem* is spelled: *eúndem.* Similarly, *eámdem* may be spelled: *eándem.*

DANGER: It is dangerous to know a Latin word—take our old friend *secúndus.* We were never formally introduced, but we have taken for granted it means *second*—and it does. But sometimes an old familiar word may have talents we do not dream of. Thus *secúndus* can also mean *favorable* or *successful.* So in Latin we have to watch even our friends.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Recognize patterns when you meet them.

Úrbibus captis, Sulla res pretiósas rápuit. Roma capta, Sulla multos cives interfécit. Cur (*why*) eos interfécit? Quia amíci Mari erant. Amíci Sullae pecúniam dívitum habére voluérunt. Sed Sulla et Márius viri mali fuérunt—re vera non Romam amavérunt: se (*themselves*) amavérunt. Verus Románus Romános non intérficit. Bellum civíle in terra sua non movet. Verus Románus contra álias natiónes quando necésse est pugnat, sed non contra Romam. Sed Sulla Márium non interfécit. Sulla Márium interfícere volúerat, sed non póterat. Cur? Quia Márius non solum in Áfricam evásit —étiam ex hac vita evásit. Ergo Márius ex mánibus Sullae evásit.

Agnus albus non evásit ex mánibus Maríae, sed in scholam venit. Sed porci in scholam non venérunt: agnus et porcus non sunt idem. Agnus dicit *baa*—porcus dicit *oink.* Agnus étiam albus est, sed porci non albi sunt. Porci lutum (*mud*) amant. Agni lutum non amant. Vita porcórum non fácilis est—non semper habent carnes bovínas assas—debent esse in luto—debent fere semper dícere *oink*—et postquam discessérunt ex hac vita, debent esse cibi pro nobis (*us*). Ergo Marcus motus est misericórdia pro porcis. Ergo Marcus porcos amávit. Sed amávit étiam Maríam. Ergóne fuit María porcus? NON. María, dicit Marcus, est agna parva. Estne agnus proscríptus a Sulla? Non. Sulla enim non vult interfícere agnos; Sulla vult interfícere Romános.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. The same men are coming. 2. Marcus saw him. 3. There was war among the citizens. 4. Athough the power of Mithradates had not been broken, Sulla returned to the city. 5. For Sulla feared Marius and wanted to kill many of Marius' friends. 6. Sulla also snatched many precious things from Athens (*Athénis*). 7. He then returned (*venit rursus*) to Italy in his ships.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Sulla in urbem, quia Márium tímuit, rursus venit. In foro Románo, postquam Sulla urbem cepit, quotídie nómina proscriptórum a Sulla sunt pósita. Magna cum trucidatióne multi quia non erant amíci Sullae sunt interfécti a Sulla.

LECTIO VIGESIMA SEXTA

De tribus casibus relativi pronominis: qui

SUMMARY: Sulla's proscription killed about 5,000. He also became Dictator for life. He revised the constitution to strengthen the corrupt senate. He abdicated in 79 B.C., died in 78 B.C. Pompey had served well under Sulla. He got the title "the Great." In 70 B.C. he was consul with Crassus—together they undid Sulla's work on the constitution. After this consulate, Pompey won further fame in wars against the Cilician pirates, Mithradates, Tigranes, and the Jews.

Sulla ergo et amíci Sullae interfecérunt fere quinque míllia cívium Romanórum. Fecérunt haec in anno octogésimo secúndo (*82*) ante Christum. Eódem anno, Sulla factus est Dictátor. Cincinnátus fúerat Dictátor per paucos dies. Sulla amávit senátum, sed non amávit plebem. Ergo Sulla fecit multas leges. Hae leges fecérunt potestátem senátus maiórem. Sed Sulla non débuit fácere potestátem senátus maiórem. Senátus enim corrúptus erat. Sed Sulla erat caecus. Postquam leges multas (multae ex eis erant malae) fecit, Sulla Dictatúram depósuit in anno septuagésimo nono (*79*). In anno septuagésimo octávo (*78*) discéssit ex hac vita.

In exércitu Sullae fúerat Gnaeus Pompéius. Is fórtiter pugnáverat pro Sulla contra amícos Mari. Pro his labóribus accéperat títulum "Magnus." Pompéius enim humilitátem non amávit. Sed postquam Sulla discéssit ex hac vita, Pompéius fécerat nomen suum magnum multis bellis. Pompéius étiam factus est consul anni septuagésimi (*70*). Crassus fuit consul cum Pompéio. Crassus fúerat legátus Sullae. Sed Pompéius et Crassus, quamquam fúerant amíci Sullae, delevérunt fere omnes leges novas Sullae. Ítaque omnes labóres Sullae ad nihil venérunt! Post hunc annum septuagésimum ante Christum, Pompéius accépit ália impéria extraordinária: pugnávit contra pirátas Cilíciae, contra Mithradátem, contra Tigránem, et contra Judaéos.

pauci-*few*
maior-*greater*
caecus-*blind*
dictatúra-*dictatorship*
títulus-*title*
humílitas-*humility*
quamquam-*although*
impérium-*power, command*
piráta-*pirate*

VOCABULARIUM

quamquam-*although*
caecus, a, um-*blind*
impérium, o-*command, power*
maior, maius, maióre-*greater*
pauci, ae, a (*plural forms only*)-*few*

NUNC COGITEMUS

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN: *qui, quae, quod* means *who, which, that*:

Singular

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	qui	quae	quod
Obj.	quem	quam	quod
Abl.	quo	qua	quo

Plural

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	qui	quae	quae
Obj.	quos	quas	quae
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus

The only really strange forms are the top three: *qui, quae, quod*. The others are all familiar enough—only difficulty is that they jump about the first three declensions. The feminine behaves, as a lady should, mostly first declension only. But the men and animals change.

The ablative plural is third—*quibus*. The neuter nominative and objective *quod* at least obeys the usual neuter rule—as does the plural *quae*. Masculine plural *qui* and *quos* are normal, as is ablative singular *quo*. But *quem* is just plain odd, though not so bad as nomi-

native singular *qui*. But, with only five words vocabulary today, we can afford to memorize a bit.

HOW DO WE USE THE RELATIVES? Some use relatives to borrow money—but notice these examples.

Marcus vidit Maríam, quae amávit agnum.
Marcus saw Mary, who loved the lamb.

Notice the gender, number and case of *quae*. It is nominative because it is the *subject* of *amávit*. But it is *feminine* and *singular* because it refers back to Mary. We call Mary the *antecedent*. And here is the principle: THE RELATIVE AGREES WITH THE ANTECEDENT IN GENDER (masculine, feminine or neuter) AND NUMBER (singular or plural) BUT NOT IN CASE (nominative, objective, etc.). So, for practice, let's watch the use of the relatives and antecedents below.

EXERCEAMUS NOS

Look for agreement.

Márius Maríam amávit. Sulla Sullam amávit. Sed Cincinnátus Romam, quae urbs bona fuit, amávit. Pompéius, qui in exércitu Sullae fúerat, leges Sullae delévit. Agnus, qui in schola erat, dixit: María est puélla bona. Quid dixit porcus qui in foro erat? Dixítne *oui oui*? Útique. Et vidit álium porcum, qui carnes bovínas assas habúerat. Sed porcum qui hábuit carnes porcínas assas non vidit. Quia non est porcus qui hábuit carnes porcínas assas. Sulla multos Romános interfécit. Sed is qui multos álios interfécerat, non interféctus est. Márius e mánibus Sullae evásit. Márius in África erat. Ásia est terra quae est minor quam (*smaller than*) Ásia Minor. Quia Ásia est província Romána quae in parte occidentáli Ásiae Minóris est. Mithradátes Ásiam Románam cápere vóluit. Mithradátes erat rex qui magnam potestátem hábuit. Sulla potestátem Mithradátis frángere débuit, sed hoc non fecit. Sulla enim amícos Mari, qui in urbe erant, puníre vóluit. Sed non omnes amíci mali sunt. Marcus enim hábuit amícam quae hábuit agnum qui hábuit vellus (*fleece*) album. Marcus erat amícus huius (*of this*) amícae. Amíca erat María. Marcus et María non mali fuérunt. Agnus non malus fuit (quamquam venit in scholam—id quod non débuit fácere). Et agnus hábuit vellus quod non malum fuit (album fuit vellus). Ubi est legátus Románus qui aurum cálidum in guttur accépit? Ille non iam est in Ásia. Auro accépto hábuit caput cálidum et discéssit. Sed non in hac vita est. Vita enim non est bona quando vir aurum in gútture habet. Sed vir qui hoc fecit (qui aurum infúdit) est vir malus.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. He saw the general who fought with Mithradates. 2. Few lambs come to school. 3. The pirates who seized Caesar have been killed. 4. Those who hated Sulla were killed by Sulla's men. 5. Pompey was the man whom the pirates were not able to conquer. 6. Pompey received great power by a new law. 7. Those who were blind were not able to see.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Nomen "Magnus" quia fórtiter pugnávit accépit Gnaeus Pompéius. Étiam multa impéria extraordinária, quia dux bonus erat, a senátu Románo accépit. Hoc modo contra pirátas qui perículum in mari fécerant pugnávit. Étiam Iudaéos, qui in terra sancta fuérunt, in impérium Románum idem Pompéius duxit (*led*).

LECTIO VIGESIMA SEPTIMA

De tribus casibus pronominum: quidam *et* ipse *et* sui

SUMMARY: Caesar was born in 100 B.C. He learned from Marius' and Sulla's example how a strong man could seize power. He was on the side of Marius. He married the daughter of Cinna, a Marian chief. Sulla ordered divorce—Caesar refused and had to flee. When captured, friends managed to beg him off. Caesar went to the East. Later, on another trip to Rhodes to study oratory under Molo, he was captured by pirates. He paid the ransom and escaped. But before going to Rhodes, he took other ships, captured the pirates, and crucified them all, as he had promised them.

Sed primo saéculo ante Christum fuérunt multi viri magni. Inter hos erat Gaius Iúlius Caesar. Caesar venit in hunc mundum in anno centésimo (*100*) ante nativitátem Christi. Bellum civíle inter Márium et Sullam áccidit in iuventúte Caésaris. Caesar erat ex parte Mari. Ex exémplo Mari et Sullae, Caesar dídicit quod vir audax cum exércitu póterat cápere Romam et fácere ómnia quae vóluit. Anno octogésimo tértio (*83*), Caesar duxit Cornéliam, fíliam Cinnae in matrimónium. Cinna erat amícus Mari. Sulla ergo motus est ira. Sulla iussit Caésarem relínquere hanc uxórem. Sed Caesar negávit. Necésse erat fúgere ex urbe. Caesar ergo fugit in montes. Sed invéntus est ab amícis Sullae, et ductus est ad Sullam. Sulla vóluit puníre Caésarem. Amíci Caésaris rogavérunt Sullam, et non punívit Caésarem. Sed Sulla dixit: "Multi Márii sunt in illo viro."

Sed Caesar non remánsit in urbe. Postquam autem Sulla discéssit ex hac vita, Caesar venit rursus in urbem. Sed vóluit esse orátor magnus. Ergo navigávit ad ínsulam Rhodum, in qua erat magíster magnus rhetóricae artis: Molo. Sed navis in qua Caesar erat capta est a pirátis. Necésse erat dare multam pecúniam pirátis (*to the pirates*). Hoc modo Caesar evásit ex mánibus piratárum. Sed antequam navigávit ad ínsulam in qua Molo erat, Caesar vóluit pirátas puníre. Ítaque invénit naves álias et invénit pirátas. Crucífixit omnes.

Hoc enim promíserat, quando erat in captivitáte piratárum.

áccidit-*happened*
iuvéntus-*youth*
exémplum-*example*
dídicit-*learned*
audax-*bold*
duxit-*led*
fília-*daughter*
matrimónium-*marriage*
relínquere-*leave*
uxor-*wife*
negáre-*say no, refuse*
fúgere-*flee*
autem-*however*
magíster-*teacher*
ars-*art*
piráta-*pirate*

VOCABULARIUM

accídere, áccidit, —— *happen*
díscere, dídicit, —— *learn*
dúcere, duxit, ductus- *lead*
dúcere in matrimónium- *marry*
[fúgiunt], fúgere, fugit, fugitúrus-*flee*
autem-*however, moreover* (*never first word in its clause*)
bona ars, arte (*poss. pl. is* -ium) *-art, skill*
audax, audáci-*bold*
Caesar, Caésare-*Caesar*
bona iuvéntus, iuventúte-*youth* (*time of life*)
magíster, magístro-*teacher*

NUNC COGITEMUS

QUIDAM: The English word "certain" is a bad word. For sometimes it really does mean "certain," something definite: e.g., I am certain that it is true. But at other times it is anything but certain—it is indefinite: e.g., a certain man is coming.

Now Latin has two words: it uses *certus* when it really is certain. But when it is *indefinite,* as in the second example, Latin uses *quidam*.

Quidam is easy to decline—just add *-dam* to the relative *qui, quae, quod*. Sometimes an *m* of the ending before the *-dam* is changed to *n*, but not always. However, the neuter nominative-objective singular may be either *quoddam* or *quiddam*. *Quoddam* is the adjective form

(when it modifies something). *Quiddam* is the pronoun form (when it stands alone). For *quidam* may be either adjective or pronoun.

IPSE is declined exactly like *ille* except for the neuter nominative-objective singular which is *ipsum*. Isn't Latin almost too easy!

USE OF IPSE: *Ipse* means *himself, herself, themselves, myself, yourself,* etc. In other words, it is a strengthener —it adds the suffix-*self* to any pronoun in English. Notice:

He himself came. — She herself came.
Ipse venit. — *Ipsa venit.*

Caesar himself killed them.
Caesar ipse interfécit eos.

But what about this: *Caesar killed himself?* May we use *ipse* for *himself* here? NO. This is different. In this sentence we have a pronoun, *himself,* that REFERS BACK TO THE SUBJECT. We call it, therefore, a REFLEXIVE. Himself IS NOT PART OF THE SUBJECT (for if it were part of the subject, it could not refer BACK to it). So we need a different word here: the different word is SE. *Caesar interfécit se.* Compare the other examples above. In them the word *himself* (or *herself*) does not refer BACK to the subject. It cannot refer *back* to it, because it is part of the subject. But consider this sentence.

Caesar himself killed himself.
Caesar *ipse* interfécit *se.*

Now we have one of each. It would pay to memorize that sentence (or one like it).

FORMS OF SE: Since *se* has only four forms it would pay to learn them now (no nominative):

No nom.—
Poss. *sui*
Dative *sibi* (we have not yet met dative, but will soon)
Obj. *se* (or *sese*)
Abl. *se* (or *sese*)

The singular and plural are the same on SE. Sometimes *ipse* reinforces *se*: Caesar interfecit *seípsum*. And now that we have had our say,

EXERCEAMUS NOS

Learn how ipse *and* se *appear in sentences.*

Quidam viri ad Sullam ipsum venérunt. Dixérunt quod Caesar ipse in montes fúgerat. Sulla enim Caésarem puníre vóluit, sed Caesar fugit. Non vóluit se dare Sullae (*to Sulla*). Caesar erat vir audax qui fíliam Cinnae in matrimónium dúxerat. Hoc fécerat quamquam Cinna ipse erat vir magnus ex parte Mari. Márius ipse non est interféctus a Sulla. Et Márius se non interfécit. Márius modo naturáli discéssit ex hac vita. Postquam Márius discéssit, Cinna ipse erat vir máximus inter Mariános. Sulla ergo iussit quosdam viros inveníre Caésarem ipsum. Sed inveníre eum non erat fácile. Caésare invénto, hi viri ad Sullam venérunt. Caesar ipse étiam venit. Sulla ira motus est contra Caésarem. Sulla eum puníre vóluit, sed Caesar étiam quosdam amícos hábuit. Hi amíci Sullam ipsum pro Cáesare rogavérunt. Sulla Caésarem non interfécit.

Caesar ipse étiam multa bona fecit: non interfécit omnes inimícos (*enemies*) suos. Sed pirátas interfécit. Pirátae enim navem in qua Caesar erat céperant. Caesar ipse multam pecúniam dare coáctus est. Sed póstea (*later*) Caesar venit rursus ad pirátas qui accéperant pecúniam a se. Venit ad eos áliis návibus, et eos interfécit.

Caesar artem rhetóricam díscere vóluit—esse orátor máximus vóluit. Molo erat magíster bonus artis rhetóricae. Caesar ipse factus est orátor bonus. Sed étiam imperátor máximus erat. Imperátor bonus bonas oratiónes ad mílites suos habére debet. Caesar hoc fecit.

Sed Marcus étiam orátor bonus erat: Marcus enim multas oratiónes ad Maríam ipsam hábuit. Marcus dixit: María est agna parva. Et María ipsa dixit: O! Marcus est orátor bonus. Agnus étiam quasdam oratiónes quas Marcus ad Maríam hábuit audívit. Quid dixit agnus ipse? Fácile est dícere. Sed agnus ipse amávit Maríam. María agnum non interfécit. Et agnus sese non interfécit. Agnus qui in schola erat vóluit accípere suum B.A.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. Caesar married Cornelia. 2. Sulla was angry (moved with anger). 3. It was necessary to flee into the mountains. 4. There are certain men in Italy who want to destroy Rome. 5. They themselves want to do it. 6. Many men were led into danger by bad men. 7. Caesar did not want to kill himself—Cassius did that for him.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Caesar duxit fíliam Cinnae, quem Sulla non amávit in matrimónium. Caésarem, quia hoc fecit, Sulla interfícere vóluit. Sed non débuit Sulla Caésarem velle interfícere. In domo sua hic bellum hábuit. Uxórem enim hábuit. His audítis, quid dixit Sulla? Quod multi Márii in illo viro sunt dixit.

LECTIO VIGESIMA OCTAVA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

SUMMARY: Caesar was consul with Bibulus in 59 B.C. He formed the first triumvirate with Pompey and Crassus. Caesar's daughter married Pompey. But Caesar wanted a greater military reputation—so he obtained Gaul, with four legions, as his province. He went there after his consulship.

Caesar factus est consul anni quinquagésimi noni (59). Colléga Caésaris erat Bíbulus. Sed Bíbulus non erat vir magnus. Caesar ergo hábuit fere omnem potestátem. Caesar, Pompéius, et Crassus facti sunt amíci. Vocavérunt se "Triúmviri." Id est, fecérunt Primum Triumvirátum. Hi tres fecérunt ómnia quae voluérunt fácere in urbe. Pompeíus enim et Caesar erant viri militáres magni. Crassus erat vir divitíssimus in urbe. Non ergo erat diffícile rápere omnem potestátem. Pompéius duxit Iúliam in matrimónium. Iúlia erat fília Caésaris. Hoc modo novum vínculum creátum est inter Caésarem et Pompéium.

In hoc témpore, Caesar erat bonus imperátor, sed vóluit fácere nomen maius. Pompéius enim, multis natiónibus victis, erat máximus imperátor. Et Caesar non hábuit magnum amórem humilitátis. Caesar ergo vóluit accípere magnam provínciam et magnum exércitum post consulátum suum.

Província Caésaris erat Illýricum et Gállia. In exércitu quem accépit, Caesar hábuit quáttuor legiónes. Cum his legiónibus, Caesar venit in Gálliam. Pompéius et Crassus autem non venérunt in Gálliam: remansérunt in urbe. Exércitu in Gálliam ducto, Caesar invénit quod Gállia erat divísa in tres partes. Galli pugnavérunt saepe inter se. Caesar étiam scivit quod Galli olim céperant Romam—id est, fere totam urbem—sed ánseres serváverant Capitólium.

colléga-*colleague*
triúmviri-*triumvirs*
tres-*three*
divitíssimus-*richest*
diffícilis-*difficult*
vínculum-*bond*
maius-*neuter of* maior
amor-*love*
consulátus-*consulship*
quáttuor-*four*
olim-*once, long ago*
divísus-*divided*
anser-*goose*

VOCABULARIUM

divídere, divísit, divísus-*divide*
olim-*once (upon a time)*
nondum-*not yet*
magnus amor, amóre-*love*
consulátus, u-*consulship*
diffícilis, e, i-*difficult*
quáttuor (*indeclinable*)-*four*
tres, tria, tribus (*no singular, of course*)-*three*
vínculum, o-*bond, chain*

VIDEAMUS FORMAS VETERES

1. Decline together: *quidam vir, María ipsa, quoddam vínculum, idem exércitus*. 2. How do you say: it happens, they are learning, they receive, they do capture, they are fighting, they come, they do have? 3. How do you say: it had been broken, he had been seized, she had been recalled?

EXERCEAMUS NOS

Gállia divísa in partes tres, Románi pacem nondum habuérunt. Caesar ergo Gallos víncere vóluit. Post consulátum suum, Caesar exércitum accépit. In exércitu erant quáttuor legiónes. Nomen collégae Caésaris erat Bíbulus. Bíbulus novas leges quas Caesar propósuit non amávit. Bíbulus ergo domi remánsit. Caesar autem in senátu erat.

Caesar fíliam hábuit: nomen fíliae erat Iúlia. Pompéius Iúliam amávit, et eam in matrimónium duxit. Iúlia ergo erat uxor Pompéi. Pompéius et Caesar inter se pugnáre volúerant. Sed Iúlia prohíbuit (*prevented*) eos—Iúlia enim ipsa cum Pompéio pugnáre vóluit. Sed

postquam Iúlia ex hac vita discéssit, Pompéius cum Caésare pugnávit. Magnum habuérunt bellum. Caesar enim magnam potestátem hábuit sed maiórem potestátem habére vóluit. Pompéius étiam magnam potestátem hábuit, sed maiórem vóluit. Voluítne Caesar divídere Romam in duas partes? Non. Non erat necésse—quia Gállia iam divísa erat in tres partes. Caesar ipse non vóluit habére quinque partes. Duo enim et tres sunt quinque. Agnus in tres partes non est divísus. María enim agnum esse cibum pro se non vóluit. Agnus enim multa scivit, quia semper in schola erat. Agnus étiam suum B.A. accépit.

Colúmbus étiam uxórem in matrimónium duxit. Uxor Colúmbi amávit eum, sed uxor in Américam cum Colúmbo non venit. Uxor enim non vóluit vidére Status Foederátos Américae. Nec Colúmbus ipse hos Status vidére vóluit. Geórgius enim Wáshington nondum hos Status fundáverat. Geórgius enim Wáshington nondum in América fuit—nondum in hac vita fuit. Sed Colúmbus dídicit quod América non fuit parva.

English to Latin

1. Is Caesar the man who divided Gaul into three parts? 2. Caesar fled into the mountains. 3. Bold men learn from danger. 4. Once upon a time there was a little girl who was called Mary. 5. Marcus is the man who wants to marry Mary. 6. Marcus was caught in the chains of love. 7. Many dangers happened when Caesar was consul.

Scramble Exercise

Bíbulus, dum in senátu Románo multas leges novas propósuit Caesar, domi remánsit. Magnas et bonas oratiónes, quas senatóres amavérunt, in senátu hábuit Caesar. Oratiónibus hábitis, exércitum accépit et in Gálliam eum duxit. Sed in urbe remánsit Pompéius. Amóre Iúliae captus, Pompéius nihil hoc témpore contra Caésarem fecit.

LECTIO VIGESIMA NONA

De tempore praesenti in persona tertia vocis passivae

SUMMARY: Caesar wanted to conquer Gaul to remove the constant threat to Rome. But he also, knowing what Marius and Sulla had done, wanted a great army loyal to himself. Perhaps he could foresee a conflict with Pompey. He spent nine years in Gaul, and even invaded Germany and Britain—but no complete conquests there. At Rome, Pompey began to get jealous—Julia had died—and began to plot to ruin Caesar.

Quia Caesar scivit quod Galli olim céperant Romam, vóluit víncere ipsos. Románi enim semper timúerant Gallos. Caesar étiam vóluit habére exércitum magnum—scivit ea quae Márius et Sulla fécerant cum exercítibus. Márius enim et Sulla habuérunt exércitus qui exspectavérunt praémia ab illis, non a Roma. Ítaque hi exércitus semper fecérunt ómnia quae Márius et Sulla iussérunt—étiam cepérunt Romam ipsam. Caesar probabíliter pótuit praevidére bellum cum Pompéio; ítaque vóluit habére exércitum virórum qui exspectavérunt praémia ab ipso, non a Roma. Talis exércitus pugnáret (*would fight*) étiam in bello civíli.

Caesar erat in Gállia per novem (*9*) annos. In his annis vicit omnem Gálliam. Ante hoc tempus, Románi tenúerant solum parvam partem Gálliae—partem quae vocáta est "Província." Illa província erat in Gállia meridionáli.

Caesar étiam venit trans flumen Rhenum in Germániam. Ínsuper navigávit in Británniam. Sed non vicit omnem Británniam. Nec vicit omnem Germániam. Germáni enim et Británni fuérunt viri fortes. Verum est quod quidam Británni victi sunt, sed non omnes. Difficile erat tenére Británniam.

Sed Pompéius remánserat in urbe. Ille audívit de victóriis magnis Caésaris. Victóriis Caésaris audítis, Pompéius motus est invídia contra Caésarem. Uxor enim Pompéi (quae fúerat fília Caésaris) discésserat ex hac vita. Pompéius ergo fecit consília contra Caésarem; vóluit delére Caésarem. (Continuábitur cras)

exspectáre-*expect*
praémium-*reward*
praevidére-*foresee*
talis-*such*
ténuit-*hold*
meridionális-*south*
ínsuper-*besides*
nec-*and not*
invídia-*envy*

VOCABULARIUM

exspectáre, ávit, átus-*expect*
praevidére, vídit, vísus-*foresee*
ínsuper-*in addition*
nec (neque)-*and not*
nec . . . nec-*neither . . . nor*
invídia, a-*envy, unpopularity*
meridionális, e, i-*south*
praémium, o-*reward*
talis, e, i-*such*

NUNC COGITEMUS

PRESENT PASSIVE, THIRD SINGULAR AND PLURAL: We have learned how to form the present active, third singular and plural. Thus, in the singular:

Caesar vincit Galliam
Caesar *conquers* Gaul
does conquer Gaul
is conquering Gaul.

We must now learn how to say: Caesar is *conquered*—or Caesar *is being conquered*.

But it is easy to do so. Simply add two letters *-ur*, to the active endings. Therefore, the third singular endings become: *-atur, -etur, -itur, -itur*.

The plural endings become: *-antur, -entur, -untur* (some have *-iuntur* as in active) and *-iuntur*.

Latin is really too easy!

PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE: We now know how to say: *to find—invenire*. How do we make it say: *to BE*

found? Simple—in all but the third conjugation, just change the final *e* of the infinitive to *i*. Thus

1. parári   2. habéri   3. inveníri

In the third conjugation, we substitute the letter *i* for the whole *-ere*, thus:

4. cáp*ere*-cap*i*

The meanings: 1. to be prepared 2. to be had 3. to be found 4. to be seized. And now

Exerceamus Nos

Check present tense patterns and infinitives.

Hánnibal a Románis capi non vult. Sed elephánti Hannibális a Románis non iam timéntur. Románi elephántos quos Pyrrhus hábuit timuérunt—sed Románi diébus Pyrrhi nondum elephántos víderant. Nunc elephánti saepe a milítibus Románis vidéntur. Multi Románi his proéliis interficiúntur, sed Roma non potest deléri. Románi dicunt quod Roma aetérna est.

Viri qui in máribus multis návigant a pirátis intérfici possunt. Sed étiam pirátae capi possunt. Multi pirátae a Pompéio capiúntur et interficiúntur. Sed Pompéius ipse cápitur a Iúlia. Cornélia, fília Cinnae, in matrimónium a Caésare dúcitur. Quia hoc fecit, Caesar a Sulla non amátur.

Praémia a milítibus Caésaris exspectántur. Caesar dicit quod pecúnia illis (*to them*) debétur. Ítaque mílites Caésarem amant. Caesar a milítibus amátur. Pro eo fórtiter pugnant. Sed étiam pro Roma pugnant. Sed pecúnia a Caésare datur. Quidam dicunt quod Roma dat pecúniam. Verum dicunt, sed Caesar rogat senátum dare pecúniam. Ignis iácitur in pontem in quo Horátius stat. Horátius ergo seípsum in aquam iacit. Cincinnátus Dictátor creátur. Cincinnátus vidétur (*seems*) esse vir bonus. Et non solum vidétur; re vera est vir bonus, verus Románus. Vir qui bonus est non vult vidéri bonus: vult esse bonus. Omnes tales esse debent.

Multum aurum a Carthaginiénsibus habétur: Carthaginiénses enim boni mercatóres sunt. Multa pecúnia a bonis mercatóribus accípitur. Sed pecúniam amáre non est bonum. Pecúnia amári non debet. Amor pecúniae est vínculum quod viros in terra tenet.

English to Latin

1. Hannibal ought to be killed. 2. The soldiers are being led into the city. 3. Good arts are learned in school. 4. Because of (abl. alone) great envy, many good men are being killed. 5. He seems to be a good man. 6. Such men are not found in every country. 7. Neither in Africa nor in Italy are they seen.

Scramble Exercise

Antíquis in tempóribus, Roma, quae étiam in illis diébus urbs non parva fuit, fere tota a Gallis est capta. Caesar ítaque, qui magnam vóluit habére potestátem, exércitum accépit et in illam terram quam Galli tenuérunt venit. Non solum in Gálliam, sed étiam in áliam terram in qua viri feróces erant venit Caesar. Terra haec Germánia fuit. Caesar, quamquam omnem, in qua tres partes erant, Gálliam vicit, non totam vicit Germániam.

LECTIO TRIGESIMA

De casu dativo

SUMMARY: Pompey's plan was to get Caesar back to Rome without any office—then he could be accused in court. But Caesar had the privilege of running for the consulate in absentia. Pompey himself could not come into the senate—he did not want to dismiss his army. But he worked through friends. Pompey's friends got the senate to order Caesar to dismiss his army by a certain date. Two tribunes in the senate vetoed this measure. But the senate, contrary to the constitution, ignored the veto.

Hic est modus quo Pompéius vóluit delére Caésarem: vóluit cógere eum redíre in urbem sine exércitu et sine magistrátu. Vir enim qui tenet magistrátum, non potest in iudícium vocári. Pompéius vóluit accusáre Caésarem. Sed Caesar scivit consília Pompéi—Caesar ergo rogáverat et accéperat privilégium a plebe: Caesar póterat pétere consulátum quamquam in urbe non erat. Pompéius vóluit delére hoc privilégium. Pompéius ipse non erat in senátu Románo in hoc témpore. Pompéius enim hábuit exércitum. Necésse erat aut dimíttere exércitum aut non veníre in senátum. Pompéius non vóluit dimíttere exércitum, quia praevídit bellum cum Caésare. Ergo Pompéius ipse non venit in senátum, sed amíci Pompéi venérunt in senátum pro eo.

Caesar míserat epístulam ad senátum, in qua explicávit id quod vóluit. Étiam explicávit privilégium quod hábuit a plebe. Quamquam haec vera erant, inimíci Caésaris in senátu habuérunt oratiónes multas contra Caésarem. His oratiónibus audítis (et quia multi inimíci Caésaris erant in senátu) senátus iussit Caésarem dimíttere exércitum ante certum diem.

Sed in senátu fuérunt étiam duo tribúni plebis. Hi erant amíci Caésaris. Hi duo tribúni intercessérunt pro Caésare. Senátus ergo débuit revocáre decrétum contra Caésarem. Quia tribúni habúerant hanc potestátem ex témpore in quo plebs discéssit ex urbe in Montem Sacrum. Sed senátus non vóluit revocáre decrétum. Senátus corrúptus erat: non facit id quod debet fácere. Quid ergo debent tribúni fácere? Quid debet Caesar ipse fácere? (Continuábitur)

redíre-*return*
magistrátus-*office*
iudícium-*trial, court*
accusáre-*accuse*
pétere-*seek*
aut . . . aut-*either . . . or*
dimíttere-*dismiss*
explicávit-*explained*
inimícus-*enemy*
intercédere-*veto*
decrétum-*decree*

VOCABULARIUM

accusáre, ávit, átus, *accuse, blame*
dimíttere, mísit, míssus-*dismiss*
explicáre, ávit, átus-*explain*
pétere, petívit, petítus-*ask, seek*
redíre, rédiit,* reditúrus (*the third plural present is* rédeunt)-*return, go back*
aut-*or*
aut . . . aut-*either . . . or*
inimícus, o-*enemy* (*personal enemy*)
iudícium, o-*judgment, court, trial*

NUNC COGITEMUS

USE OF DATIVE CASE: The last of the generally used cases that we need to learn is the dative—it is the *indirect object* case. It expresses many ideas which English expresses by "to" or "for." But notice a difference in these two sentences:

1. *Venit ad urbem.*	2. *Dedit praémium milítibus.*
He came to the city.	He gave a reward to the soldiers.

Both sentences have the same word *to*. But in one we use *ad*, in the other we use the dative. Why? Because in the first sentence, someone is *going somewhere*—there is *motion* from *place to place*. But in the second sentence there is *no* motion from place to place. Therefore, the idea of *to* is expressed by

ad with objective—when it involves motion from place to place

dative—when it does *not* involve motion from place to place.

Forms of Dative Case: Here are the endings for the five declensions (gender makes no difference):

1.		2.	
nautae	nautis	agno	agnis
3.		4.	
míliti	milítibus	senátui	senátibus
5.			
diéi	diébus		

Notice that in the *plurals*, the *datives* are the *same* as the *ablatives*—so out of the ten new endings, five are not really new. In the singular, there is some overlapping. For exercise, figure out which other forms match singulars.

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Word Order Sandwiches: In Lesson 20 we first learned a new trick in word order. We learned the type: *María agnum habet*. Most of us are probably fairly well used to it by now—in a bit more time it will seem positively easy. But sometimes (not nearly so often) we find sandwiches in the word order, such as:

Caesar magnum hábuit exércitum.
Caesar had a LARGE army.

Notice what happens: we take the phrase, *magnum exércitum*, and cut it open, and insert another word, *hábuit*. Some writers use this sort of thing only for emphasis—it gives an effect much like the use of the capitals in the word LARGE. Others use it often merely because they like it. Watch for a few examples of these sandwiches in the exercise below:

Márius multa praémia milítibus déderat. Sulla ergo étiam aurum et agros amícis suis dedit. Caésari non erat diffícile haec fácere. Pompéius est inimícus Caésari. Caésaris enim potestátem delére vult. Pompéius étiam exércitum habet. Ítaque non licet Pompéio veníre in senátum. Sed licet Caésari pétere consulátum quamquam in urbe non est. Plebs Caésari tale privilégium déderat. Tribúni senátui explicáre voluérunt quod Caesar hoc privilégium habére débuit.

Caesar ipse hoc témpore non in Gállia erat. Caesar erat in Itália: erat in parte meridionáli provínciae suae. Erat in urbe quae Ravénna vocátur. Caesar sine magistrátu in urbem Románam redíre non vóluit: scivit quod Pompéius vocáre eum in iudícium vóluit. Sed Caesar, dum hábuit magistrátum, non póterat in iudícium vocári. Pompéius invídia contra Caésarem motus est. Caesar enim nomen magnum sibi in Gállia fécerat. Pompéius étiam nomen magnum hábuit, sed non vóluit Caésarem esse maiórem.

Bonus civis non debet dícere tália: bonus civis amórem pro urbe sua habére debet. Roma in magno erat perículo quia Caesar et Pompéius inter se pugnavérunt. Roma Pompéio magnam déderat potestátem—étiam Caésari magnam dedit potestátem. Hi duo inter se pugnáre non debent. Nec Caesar nec Pompéius debet hoc fácere.

Cincinnátus cum senátu non pugnávit. Agnus cum María non pugnávit. Sed Marcus pugnávit cum María. Marcus Maríam amavit, sed María dixit quod agnus in schola remanére débuit: et Marcus dixit quod non débuit. Sed Marcus hoc dícere non débuit. Quia Marcus ipse erat agnus (María hoc dixit).

English to Latin

1. Caesar returned to the city. 2. He learned to fight. 3. The tribunes explained the letter to the senate. 4. Many rewards are being given to the soldiers. 5. They are now returning to Italy. 6. That is the city from which they sailed. 7. It is easy to explain the matter (*res*) to Caesar.

Scramble Exercise

Caésari, quia vir bonus fúerat, et multa pro Roma fécerat, plebs Romána magnum déderat privilégium. Hoc privilégio pótuit Caesar consulátum pétere quamquam in Gallia, non in urbe erat. Sed invídia motus est vir qui débuit amícus Caésari esse—Pompéius. Hic ítaque pópulum Románum rogávit privilégium delére Caésaris. His audítis, Caesar ad senátum epístulam, in qua omnem explicávit rem, misit.

LECTIO TRIGESIMA PRIMA

De verbis deponentibus

Summary: The tribunes fled to Caesar. He declared the constitution violated, and so crossed the Rubicon. Most towns opened their gates willingly to him. The senate and Pompey fled from Rome. Pompey went to Brundisium, and sailed to Greece. Caesar could not pursue for want of ships. So he went to Spain, where legates of Pompey had an army. Meanwhile ships were made for Caesar.

Senátus fécerat rem malam—égerat contra intercessiónem tribunórum. His factis, tribúni fugérunt ad Caésarem. Caesar ergo dixit: "Senátus egit contra leges. Necésse est deféndere leges." Flumen Rúbico erat finis meridionális provínciae Caésaris. Lex dixit quod Caesar non débuit iter fácere trans Rubicónem cum exércitu—sed senátus iam égerat contra leges. Caesar ergo dixit quod débuit deféndere leges. Caesar duxit exércitum suum trans Rubicónem. Sed non necésse erat pugnáre statim. Óppida enim Itáliae aperuérunt portas Caésari sine pugna.

Pompéius et senátus audivérunt quod óppida aperúerant portas Caésari sine pugna. His audítis timuérunt remanére in urbe. Fere omnes senatóres et amíci fugérunt ex urbe, et venérunt in partem meridionálem Itáliae. Sed Pompéius et exércitus venérunt in quoddam óppidum quod vocátum est Brundísium. Brundísium enim erat portus ex quo naves navigavérunt in Graéciam.

Sed Caesar et exércitus étiam venérunt Brundísium (*to Brundisium*). Voluérunt pugnáre cum Pompeiáno exércitu. Sed non póterant pugnáre cum eis, quia Pompéius pósuit mílites suos in naves, et navigávit ad Graéciam. Caesar non póterat sequi (*to follow*) eos, quia nullae naves remansérunt in illo óppido. Caesar ergo discéssit Brundísio (*from Brundisium*), et iter fecit in Hispániam. In Hispánia enim legáti Pompéi habuérunt exércitum álium. Intérea naves factae sunt pro Caésare. (Continuábitur)

egit-*acted*
intercéssio-*veto*
deféndere-*defend*
finis-*end, border*
óppidum-*town*
porta-*gate*
apéruit-*opened*
portus-*port*
nullus-*no, none*
intérea-*meanwhile*

Vocabularium

ágere, egit, actus-*do, drive, act, discuss, spend (time)*	loqui, locútus est-*speak*
aperíre, apéruit, apértus-*open*	sequi, secútus est-*follow*
conári, conátus est-*attempt*	intérea-*meanwhile*
	nullus, a, um-*no, none*
	óppidum, o-*town*
	porta, a-*gate, door*

Deponent Verbs: We are going to like these verbs—they have only two parts, not three. The reason is that they have nothing but passive forms. But the usual second part is exclusively active—*ergo*, no second part. So we have: 1. the passive infinitive—recognize the conjugation as usual, e.g., *-ari* is first, but *-i* is third; and 2. the perfect passive third singular. But—ALTHOUGH THE FORMS ARE PASSIVE: THE MEANINGS ARE ALL ACTIVE! Therefore, for example, *sequi* has a passive form—but its meaning is: *to follow* (not: *to be followed*). And *secútus est* means: *he followed* (not: *he was followed*).

Going to or from Towns and Cities: There is an odd thing about the construction to be used with names of towns and cities.

We would expect: venit *ad* Romam or *in* Romam or *ex* Roma or *a* Roma.

But we get:

venit—*Romam* or *Romam* or *Roma* or *Roma.*

In other words, we use the same case: objective-to go to;

ablative-to go from—but, as a rule, no preposition. Sometimes the preposition is used, especially when we mean the vicinity of a town, not the town itself. And sometimes it is used when we really do mean the town itself—but usually we get no preposition.

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Caesar Pompéium secútus est. Pompéius enim vénerat Brundísium. Caesar étiam venit Brundísium. Sed Pompéius naves hábuit. Ítaque, Pompéius Brundísio discéssit. Sed Caesar Brundísio per mare discédere non póterat; nullas hábuit naves. Caesar ergo eum sequi non conátus est. Quid ergo egit Caesar? Locútus est milítibus. Dixit quod debent in Hispániam veníre. Pompéi enim legáti in Hispánia sunt: necésse est víncere legátos Pompéi. Alióquin (*otherwise*) illi legáti possunt veníre ad terga (*backs*) exércitus. Sed non erat necésse loqui multa milítibus. Mílites Caésarem statim sequúntur. Sperant multa praémia a Caésare accípere, et Caesar multa praémia milítibus suis dare vult.

Plebs discéssit Roma et in Montem Sacrum venit. Sed póstea (*later*), tribúnis plebis accéptis, plebs Romam rédiit. Etrúsci Romam cápere conáti sunt, Tarquínio expúlso. Sed non potuérunt. Sed Galli non solum conáti sunt—re vera cepérunt Romam, id est, omnem cepérunt urbem, Capitólio excépto (*excepted*). Conáti sunt étiam Capitólium cápere, sed ánseres magna exclamavérunt voce. Estne porta urbis apérta? Non. Quia Gallos timent.

Multa óppida portas Caésari aperuérunt—Caésarem enim non timuérunt. Caesar erat amícus illórum oppidórum. Sed fere omnes senatóres fugérunt Roma. Hi qui fugérunt Roma venérunt Cápuam. Cápua est óppidum in parte meridionáli Itáliae. Nonne erat perículum senatóribus in illo óppido? Non. Caesar enim non vénerat Cápuam.

English to Latin

1. Caesar is coming to Rome. 2. He is sailing from Brundisium. 3. Caesar came across the southern border of his province. 4. He attempted to speak to Caesar. 5. Since the gates have been opened, Caesar can come into the town. 6. He spoke to his soldiers who had followed him. 7. No ships remained for Caesar.

Scramble Exercise

Tribúnis Roma expúlsis, senátus ad bellum parávit. Meridionáli in parte províneiae quam hábuit Caesar, flumen parvum fuit, quod Rúbico vocátur. Trans hoc flumen suo cum exércitu venit Caesar. Non sunt conáta eum tenére óppida multa sed parva quae in via Caésaris erant. Portis apértis, virum quem magnum esse dixérunt, accepérunt. Ex his óppidis quae portis apértis Caésarem accepérunt, non pauci viri Caésarem sunt secúti.

LECTIO TRIGESIMA SECUNDA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

SUMMARY: Caesar defeated the Pompeian armies in Spain, under Petreius, Afranius, and Varro. He then returned to Rome, was made Dictator, and then Consul. He next sailed to Greece. At first things went rather badly, and he had to retreat into Thessaly. But there he defeated Pompey. The latter fled to Egypt, but was murdered by Egyptian soldiers. Caesar got into the war between Cleopatra and Ptolemy, and then marched through Syria and Asia Minor to Rome. On the way he defeated Pharnaces, son of Mithradates. He then sent his famous telegram to the senate.

Quia non hábuit naves in quibus posset (*he could*) sequi Pompéium, Caesar discéssit Brundísio, et iter fecit cum exércitu suo in Hispániam. Pompéius ipse cum exércitu navigávit in Graéciam. Sed in Hispánia fuit exércitus Pompéi magnus. Tres legáti Pompéi duces erant exércitus in Hispánia: Afránius, Petréius, et Varro. Caesar mox vicit Petréium et Afránium. Varro étiam se in deditiónem dedit. His exercítibus victis, Caesar discéssit ex Hispánia et rédiit Romam. Ibi Lépidus, qui praetor erat, creávit Caésarem Dictatórem. Sed post úndecim (XI) dies, Caesar depósuit dictatúram, et consul factus est. In Ianuário, in anno quadragésimo octávo (*48*), Caesar navigávit in Graéciam. Ibi Pompéius magnum collégerat exércitum. Caesar fere victus est a Pompéio, et coáctus est recípere se ad Thessáliam. Thessália est pars septentrionális Graéciae. Ibi Caesar pugnávit pugnam magnam cum exércitu Pompéi. Pompéius hábuit exércitum maiórem, sed mílites Caésaris fortióres (*braver*) erant. Pompeiáni enim nímiam confidéntiam habuérunt. Pompéius ipse, cum multis ex exércitu suo, fugit in montes. Caesar secútus est eos. Pompéius fugit in Aegýptum; putávit enim quod hábuit amícos in illa terra. Sed mílites Aegýptii interfecérunt eum. Hoc modo Pompéius, olim magnus imperátor, mórtuus est.

Pompéio mórtuo, Caesar pugnávit in Aegýpto. Rex enim Aegýpti, Ptolomaéus, bellum movit cum soróre sua, Cleopátra.

Post finem belli in Aegýpto, Caesar iter fecit per Sýriam et Ásiam Minórem. In hoc itínere vicit Phárnacem, fílium Mithradátis. Phárnaces enim auxílium déderat Pompéio. Sed Caesar vicit eum celériter. Ergo núntium misit ad senátum. Núntius dixit, "Veni, Vidi, Vici."
(*All three words are first person singular perfect*) (Continuábitur)

dux-*leader*
mox-*soon*
dedítio-*surrender*
praetor-*praetor*
recípere se-*retreat*
septentrionális-*northern*
collígere-*gather*
nímius-*excessive*
confidéntia-*confidence*
putávit-*thought*
mórtuus est-*died*
mors-*death*
soror-*sister*
celériter-*swiftly*
núntius-*messenger*

VOCABULARIUM

[moriúntur], mori, mórtuus est-*die* (*note preliminary part like* cápiunt)
putáre, ávit, átus-*think*
[recípiunt], recípere, cépit, céptus-*take back*
recípere se-*retreat*
celériter-*swiftly*
magnus dux, duce-*leader*
bona mors, morte-*death*
nímius, a, um-*excessive*
núntius, o-*messenger, message*
septentrionális, e, i-*northern*
bona soror, soróre-*sister*

VIDEAMUS FORMAS VETERES

1. How do you say: to a brave messenger, for a good death, to the greater leader? 2. How do you say: it is foreseen, he is expected, it is asked, he is being let go, it is being done? Now make same expressions plural. 3. How do you say: they die, they follow, they attempt, they speak (use: *loqui*).

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Caesar Pompéium celériter secútus est. Pompéius enim a Caésare victus erat in Thessália (quae est in septentrionáli parte Graéciae). His factis, Pompéius in Aegýp-

tum fugit. Ibi Pompéius interféctus est. Quia interféctus est, necésse erat ex hac vita discédere. Ítaque mórtuus est.

Phárnaces erat rex in Ásia Minóre. Pater Phárnacis fúerat Mithradátes. Mithradátes fórtiter contra multos duces Romános pugnáverat. Sulla cum Mithradáte pugnávit, et eum vicit, sed non omnem potestátem Mithradátis delévit. Sulla enim celériter redíre Romam vóluit, quia ibi multos hábuit inimícos.

Multos in urbe Sulla interfécit. Sulla Caésarem interfícere volúerat, sed non póterat quia Caesar in montes fúgerat. Sulla non débuit fácere potestátem senátus Románi maiórem. Senátus enim nímiam hábuit potestátem. Sed Sulla caecus erat, id est, non póterat veritátem vidére. Senátus diébus Sullae corrúptus fuit. Senátus non semper corrúptus fuit—diébus antíquis senátus bonus fúerat. Fécerat Cincinnátum Dictatórem, et multa ália bona consília fécerat.

Caesar egit suam vitam in primo saéculo ante nativitátem Christi, sed mórtuus est ante Christum. Caesar ab inimícis suis interféctus est. Sulla autem non interféctus est—ille mórtuus est modo naturáli. Márius étiam mórtuus est modo naturáli. Portae mortis apértae sunt Mário. Márius ergo discéssit ex hac vita per has portas. Sed agnus non discéssit ex hac vita—nemo interfécit agnum. Agnum enim nemo odit.

English to Latin

1. It is necessary either to come or to remain. 2. Caesar retreated into Thessaly. 3. The men are returning from Brundisium. 4. Many men die in battle. 5. They attempted to retreat into the town. 6. He thinks that Caesar wants to talk to Marcus. 7. Caesar said that he came, he saw, and he conquered.

Scramble Exercise

Qui ex hac vita per portas discédunt mortis moriúntur. Ex ómnibus bonis quae accípere vir potest, máxime (*especially*) bonam pétere mortem a Deo debet. Ex vita enim futúra, nemo hanc in vitam se recípere potest. Nec conári potest. Ómnia enim quae fácere vult, Deus sine difficultáte fácere potest. Ea enim quae Deus lóquitur semper áccidunt. Bonum est ergo saepe de hac vita futúra putáre quae finem non habet. Quid boni est Pompéio quod imperátor magnus fuit, si (*if*) non bonam mortem hábuit?

LECTIO TRIGESIMA TERTIA

De tempore imperfecto in persona tertia singulari et plurali

SUMMARY: After defeating Pharnaces, Caesar went back to Rome, but not for long. For Scipio and Cato had collected an army in Africa. But he soon defeated them. Cato committed suicide at Utica. Caesar then went back to Rome. He forgave his enemies. He reformed the calendar. But Pompey's sons raised an army in Spain. He defeated them at Munda. He then entered Rome in triumph. He was offered a royal crown by Anthony.

Phárnace victo, Caesar rédiit Romam. Sed non remánsit diu in urbe. Scivit enim quod amíci Pompéi, Scipio et Cato, collégerant exércitum magnum in África. Caesar celériter vicit eos. Cato, quia non póterat defėndere Úticam, interfécit se. Caesar ergo revérsus est Romam, in fine mensis Iúlii, anno quadragésimo sexto (*46*). Quamquam Caesar hábuit potestátem máximam, cleméntiam osténdit inimícis suis. Non odit eos qui pugnáverant pro Pompéio, sed dixit quod non débuit esse differéntia inter Pompeiános et Caesariános. Étiam corréxit calendárium, nam diébus illis erat error nonagínta (*90*) diérum in calendário. Fere habuérunt Iúnium in Ianuário!

Sed quamquam osténdit magnam cleméntiam inimícis, et fécerat nullam differéntiam inter Caesariános et Pompeiános, necésse erat pugnáre in novo bello. Pompéius enim hábuit duos fílios, Sextum et Gnaeum. Hi duo collégerant exércitum novum in Hispánia, contra Caésarem. Caesar ergo proféctus est in Hispániam in fine anni quadragésimi sexti. Sed Caesar celériter vicit eos. Victi sunt in pugna ad Mundam, in mense Mártio, anno quadragésimo quinto (*45*). Pompeiánis victis, Caesar revérsus est Romam, et venit in urbem mense Septémbri. Celebrávit triúmphum magnum. Re vera, Caesar hábuit potestátem regis, sed non hábuit nomen regis, nec corónam regálem. Voluítne Caesar accípere corónam regálem? Quidam amícus Caésaris, Marcus Antónius, nomine, vóluit dare corónam Caésari in quodam festo público. Sed Caesar non accépit corónam. Quare non accépit? Quia non vóluit an quia tímuit accípere eam? Diffícile est dícere. (Continuábitur)

diu-*a long time*
collégit-*collect*
revérsus est-*returned*
mensis-*month*
cleméntia-*mercy*
nam-*for*
osténdit-*showed*
corréxit-*corrected*
proféctus est-*set out*
celebrávit-*celebrated*
coróna-*crown*
festum-*feast*
quare-*why*
an-*or*

VOCABULARIUM

collígere, collégit, colléctus-*collect*	revérti, revérsus est-*return*
osténdere, osténdit, osténsus-*show*	an-*or* (*in questions only*)
	diu-*a long time*
proficísci, proféctus est-*set out*	quare-*why*
	unus mensis, i-*month*

NUNC COGITEMUS

HOW TO FORM THE IMPERFECT TENSE: Suppose we begin with the infinitive, the first part of the verb, as we did with the present tense. We remove the last three letters (*-áre, -ére, -ere, -íre*)—of course, in the case of a deponent verb, we remove the passive ending, which is shorter (*-i*) in the third conjugation (but we shall see the deponents in Lesson 34).

To the remaining base, we add—

-ábat in first conjugation

-ébat or *-iébat* in the others (verbs that have third plural in *-iunt* take the *-iébat* form).

For the third plural forms—merely insert *-n* before the final letter *-t*. Samples:

1. parábat; parábant
2. habébat; habébant
3. ponébat; ponébant
   capiébat; capiébant
4. audiébat; audiébant

USE OF THE IMPERFECT TENSE: The imperfect and the perfect are both *past* tenses. Therefore, in general, they cover the following English translations:

1. he heard
2. he did hear
3. he was hearing
4. he has heard

Of the four translations, the fourth is especially typical of the perfect, and the third is especially typical of the imperfect. The others might serve rather well for either of the Latin tenses. But what is the precise difference? Merely this. Let us imagine a fight going on. Two men both see it. Each has a camera. The one has a movie camera. The other an ordinary snapshot camera. Now if a man reports an event with a movie camera, he could also report it similarly in words by the imperfect. While the snapshot camera gives much the same impression as the perfect tense. Therefore

imperfect—views the *continuity* or *repeated* character of an *action*—movie; *perfect*—merely reports that something happened—snapshot.

In case of doubt, when writing English to Latin, use the *perfect*. Notice the way the two will be used in the stories from now on (up to now, often the perfect has been used where the imperfect would have been more suitable).

IMPERFECT ACTIVE OF ESSE, POSSE, VELLE: *erat, erant, póterat, póterant, volébat, volébant.*

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Look for imperfect patterns.

Mílites ad pugnam parábant. Caesar cum Pompéio pugnábat. Quare vóluit Caesar cum Pompéio pugnáre? Caesar pugnáre non volébat, sed (Caesar dixit hoc) Pompéius et senátus legem Románam non serváverant. Senátus débuit revocáre decrétum suum post intercessiónem tribunórum plebis. Hoc senátus non fecit. His factis, tribúni ad Caésarem fugérunt. Lex non est serváta: ergo Caesar dixit quod necésse erat deféndere leges Románas. Sed quodam die Caesar in urbe erat. Iam omnes inimícos suos vícerat. Iam re vera potestátem regis habébat. Marcus Antónius volébat dare corónam regis Caésari. Caesar non accépit. Marcus rogat Maríam quare Caesar corónam non accépit. Sed María non potest dícere.

Quodam die Marcus erat in schola. Agnus non venit in scholam, sed quid áccidit? Tres ex illis quinque porcis venérunt. Marcus expectábat Maríam et agnum. Marcus re vera volébat Maríam vidére. Non volébat agnum vidére, sed necésse erat: agnus enim semper cum María veniébat. Sed Marcus nec Maríam nec agnum vidit! Tres vidit porcos. Quare álii duo porci non venérunt? Respónsum non fácile est, sed unus ex his porcis caput cálidum hábuit: víderat enim Caésarem quando hic (Caesar) in foro erat. Hic porcus Caésari *oink* díxerat, sed Caesar nullum déderat respónsum. Ergo hic porcus caput cálidum hábuit. Sed quaéstio est—quare álius porcus (id est, porcus secúndus) in scholam cum áliis tribus porcis non venit? Causa erat haec: hic secúndus porcus Marcum Pórcium Catónem in foro víderat. Hic porcus Pórcium amávit, ergo in agros Porci Catónis vénerat, et remánsit ibi.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. He said that Caesar was coming. 2. Cato was collecting an army. 3. The Roman army was retreating into Thessaly. 4. Caesar, having returned to Rome, soon set out for Africa. 5. Why was he preparing for war? 6. Mark Anthony was showing the crown to Caesar. 7. But he was not taking it.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Multis exercítibus in África victis, Caesar in Itália remanére non póterat. Cato enim, qui illis diébus imperátor exércitus erat, Caésarem non amábat. Quamquam non malus imperátor Cato fuit, semper maior fuit Caesar. Hic ergo celériter illum vicit. Mox in Itáliam proféctus est Caesar. Ibi conabátur Marcus Antónius regálem dare Caésari corónam. Haec faciébat quodam die festo quo multi viri in urbe erant. Sed nihil locútus est Caesar de coróna hac.

LECTIO TRIGESIMA QUARTA

De tempore imperfecto in voce passiva
De casu possessivo pronominum

SUMMARY: Many senators began to hate Caesar, though they seemed to be his friends. They conspired to kill him. He received many warnings, but ignored them. Finally in the senate, on the Ides of March, they surrounded him, and murdered him with daggers and swords. Caesar fell at the foot of the statue of Pompey.

Caesar non accépit corónam ex mánibus Marci Antóni. Sed nihilóminus (*nevertheless*) quidam senatóres coepérunt odísse Caésarem. Ítaque hi senatóres coniuratiónem fecérunt contra Caésarem. Volébant enim interfícere eum. In hac coniuratióne erant multi qui videbántur (*seemed*) esse amíci Caésaris. Praesértim Marcus Brutus erat amícus Caésaris. Sed odérunt eum, quia putábant quod volébat fácere se regem. Hi coniuratóres paravérunt multas sicas. Quidam scriptóres dixérunt quod hi coniuratóres interfecérunt Caésarem quia amábant Romam. Probabíliter verum est quod amábant Romam; sed étiam sperábant accípere potestátem magnam. Ergo parábant mortem Caésari.

Ante diem mortis, multi monuérunt Caésarem de morte. Sed Caesar nihil fecit de his monitiónibus. Coniuratóres voluérunt interfícere eum in senátu, Ídibus Mártiis (id est, die décimo quinto mensis Mártii). Quidam poéta Británnicus, qui vocátur Shákespeare, scripsit de morte Caésaris. Ille poéta dixit quod in ipso die mortis, quidam vates vidit Caésarem. Vates mónuit Caésarem quod débuit cavére Idus Mártias. Caesar respónsum dedit: "Idus Mártiae iam venérunt"—et vates respóndit: "Idus Mártiae venérunt—sed non discessérunt, Caesar!" Caesar ergo venit in senátum. Coniuratóres circumstetérunt eum. Interfecérunt eum sicis. Hoc modo Caesar mórtuus est. Mórtuus Caesar cécidit ad pedes státuae Pompéi. Pompéius cecíderat in bello cum Caésare. Caesar cécidit ad pedes Pompéi!

coepit-*began*
odísse-*to hate*
coniurátio-*conspiracy*
sica-*dagger*
scriptor-*writer*
mónuit-*warned*
monítio-*warning*
Idus-*Ides* (*15th*)
vates-*soothsayer*
cavére-*beware*
respóndit-*answered*
pes-*foot*
státua-*statue*

VOCABULARIUM

cavére, cavit, cautus-*beware*
——, coepit, coeptus (*the last part has active meaning*)-*begin*
monére, mónuit, mónitus-*warn, advise*
respondére, respóndit, respónsus-*answer*
mala coniurátio, ióne-*conspiracy*
gládius, o-*sword*
magnus pes, pede-*foot*
bonus scriptor, óre-*writer*

NUNC COGITEMUS

IMPERFECT PASSIVE: This is really too easy! We know how to make the imperfect active—just add the letters *-ur* to the active endings, singular and plural. Of course, deponent verbs use these *passive endings*, with *active meaning*.

POSSESSIVE CASE OF PRONOUNS: This is also too easy. We are thinking of the pronouns (which are also used as adjectives, as we know): *hic, ille, ipse, is, idem,* and *qui.*

The possessive plural pronouns have the same endings as *bonus* (*-orum, -arum, -orum*).

The singular is still easier—they *all* have just *one ending* for all three genders—it is *-ius*. Thus: *huius, illíus, ipsíus, eius, eiúsdem,* and *cuius* (*cuius* is from *qui*).

Notice especially the one little word *eius*. It (and the plurals *eórum, eárum, eórum*) serve in place of possessive adjectives when we do not want a reflexive. Of course, they are not adjectives—they are possessive case

of a pronoun, so they cannot be made to agree in gender, number, and case like adjectives. But they are very common.

The *reflexive adjective* is *suus*—we saw it in Lesson 21 (compare also the reflexive pronoun in Lesson 27). For example, take this English sentence:

Marcus killed *his* father.

Whose father? The English is vague—might be Marcus' father—might be someone else's father. Now if it is Marcus' father, the Latin will have *suus*:

Marcus interfécit patrem suum (reflexive)—his *own* father. But if it is someone else's father the Latin will have *Marcus interfécit patrem eius* (not reflexive).

When do we use *eórum*? When we mean *their*, in a non-reflexive way (not their *own*).

Mílites interfecérunt patrem eórum (their father—non-reflexive)—but—*Mílites interfecérunt patrem suum* (their *own* father—reflexive).

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Caesar, cuius amíci coniuratiónem fecérunt, interféctus est. Interfecérunt eum multis sicis. Ad státuam eiúsdem Pompéi quem vícerat in bello civíli cécidit. Quare interfecérunt Caésarem? Quia odérunt eum. Potestátem eius odérunt. Putavérunt quod Caesar esse rex volébat. Erátne hoc verum? Re vera vóluit Caesar rex esse? Probábile est, quamquam corónam e mánibus Marci Antóni non accépit. Sed quaéstio est haec: quare non accépit? Probabíliter quia iram plebis et senatórum timébat. Viri enim Románi nomen regis odérunt. Olim Románi reges habúerant, sed reges facti sunt mali et audáces. Románi ítaque eos expúlerant. Ex illis tempóribus nomen régium odérunt. Semper cavébant virum qui volébat esse rex.

Quare ergo amíci Caésaris eum non monuérunt? Re vera, Caesar multas accépit monitiónes—brevi (*short*) témpore ante mortem, vates eum vidit. Vates eum mónuit quod debébat Idus Mártias cavére. Sed Caesar cavére non volébat. Caesar in senátum venit—et ibi interféctus est.

Senatóres laeti facti sunt morte eius. Sed malum pro Roma erat—quia bellum civíle venit. In hoc bello multi cives Románi, multi senatóres, interfécti sunt. Et post bellum civíle quid accepérunt? Augústus, qui fílius adoptívus Caésaris erat, factus est imperátor.

Diébus antíquis Romae, vir qui vocabátur imperátor erat solum dux exércitus, sed Augústus non solum exércitum Románum ducébat; erat rex sine nómine regis. Gaius Caesar cleméntiam inimícis suis osténderat. Augústus Caesar étiam hoc fecit.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. He was setting out into Gaul. 2. He fell at the feet of the same statue. 3. He was killed with swords and daggers. 4. Many men were being killed by the sword. 5. Others were fleeing on foot. 6. Caesar was being warned by the soothsayer. 7. But he fell at the feet of Pompey, whose enemy he had been.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Caésarem, quamquam ex mánibus Marci Antóni corónam non accéperat, senatóres non pauci odísse coepérunt. Virum hunc magnum, qui multa et magna in Gállia pro Roma fécerat, nonne amáre et non odísse debuérunt? Eum amáre debuérunt. Nihilóminus, coniuratióne non parva facta, mortem Caésari paráre sunt conáti. Ídibus ítaque Mártiis, quo die in América olim tribúta colligebántur, interféctus est Caesar sicis coniuratórum ad pedes státuae Pompéi. Iam erat ad pedes Pompéi ille ad cuius pedes Pompéius mórtuus fúerat!

LECTIO TRIGESIMA QUINTA

De participiis praesentibus

SUMMARY: Cicero was born of an equestrian family. Since he and his brother Quintus showed ability, their father sent them to Rome—they studied under Scaevola and Archias. Cicero also went to Rhodes to study under Molo, as Caesar did. He then returned to Rome, and began to give speeches. He defended Roscius. But he offended Sulla, and, for reasons of health, went to Greece. There he met Atticus.

In diébus in quibus vivébant Caesar et Pompéius, vivébat étiam álius vir Románus cuius nomen notum est ómnibus. Ille vir erat Márcus Túllius Cícero. Cícero natus est in quodam óppido quod vocabátur Arpínum. Natus est anno centésimo sexto (*106*) ante Christum.

Pater eius non erat ex senátu. Cícero ergo erat vir equéstris. Viri equéstres (id est, équites) non erant ex senatória nobilitáte, sed nec erant ex plebe. Erant ex órdine inter senatóres et plebem. Primis diébus Romae, équites re vera habébant equos, et pugnábant ex equis in exercítibus. Sed diébus Cicerónis, équites non debébant habére equos. Équites habébant pecúniam multam. Cícero ergo erat ex órdine equéstri.

Cícero hábuit fratrem qui vocabátur Quintus. Pater eórum vidit quod volébant díscere. Ítaque misit eos Romam in scholas bonas. Cícero et frater eius didicérunt multa in scholis. Habuérunt multos magístros claros. Inter hos erant Múcius Scaévola et Árchias. Legérunt multos libros bonos. Cícero étiam navigávit in ínsulam Rhodum. Dídicit multa de arte rhetórica a Molóne (Caesar étiam dídicit artem rhetóricam in schola Molónis).

Post haec Cícero revérsus est Romam, et coepit habére oratiónes claras. Deféndit Sextum Róscium. Sed étiam offéndit Sullam (ille clarus Dictátor erat in hac vita illis diébus); ergo mélius erat Ciceróni discédere Roma. Navigávit in Graéciam. Ibi invénit quendam Románum qui vocabátur Átticus. Cícero factus est amícus eius. (Continuábitur)

vívere-*live*
notus-*known*
natus-*born*
equéstris-*equestrian*
équites-*knights*
ordo-*class, order*
equus-*horse*
frater-*brother*
clarus-*famous*
legit-*read*
liber-*book*
offéndit-*offended*
mélius-*better*

VOCABULARIUM

légere, legit, lectus-*read*
nasci, natus est-*be born*
nóscere, novit, notus-*learn* (But the perfect means *has learned,* and therefore *knows.* So *notus* means *known.*)
vívere, vixit, *victúrus-*live*
clarus, a, um-*famous brilliant*
equus, equo-*horse*
liber, libro-*book*
bonus ordo, órdine-*row, order, rank*

NUNC COGITEMUS

PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES: We have already seen perfect passive participles. We found that they are half verb, and half adjective. Now present participles are also half verb and half adjective—but they are *present* and *active,* instead of *perfect* and *passive.*

The most basic meaning of present participles is:

Mílites pugnántes—fight*ing* soldiers

Note the ending in *-ing*.

But first, let us see the endings of the present participle, and then consider the details of its use. As to the endings, it is too easy again.

To form a present participle, take the imperfect tense of that verb, remove the *-bat*, and add: *-ns*. For example:

parábat—*parans,* habébat—*habens,* ponébat—*ponens,* capiébat—*cápiens,* audíebat—*aúdiens.*

How to decline the participle?—It is merely (as far as declension goes) a *third declension adjective.* Its ablative singular may be either *e* or *i* (a bit more broad-minded than other adjectives)—other forms are just

like *third declension adjectives* (possessive plural will be *-ium* and neuter plural will be *-ia* both to match the *-i* ablative, not the *-e*).

For example:

M F	N	M F	N
parans		parántes	parántia
parántis		parántium	
paránti		parántibus	
parántem	parans	parántes	parántia
paránti(e)		parántibus	

Really nothing new—except that the ablative can have *e* as well as *i*.

USE OF THE PARTICIPLE: Use it just like the perfect passive, except that this is present active. Therefore, we may *use it like an adjective*—

mílites pugnántes—the fighting soldiers

Or we may use it in an *ablative absolute* (basic meaning now, instead of HAVING BEEN ——, is merely the English form ending in *-ing*). For example

Caésare exclamánte, mílites vicérunt.

BASIC—(With) Caesar shouting, the soldiers conquered.

EXPANDED FORMS:

1. *When* (*while*) Caesar was shouting, the soldiers conquered.
2. *Because* Caesar was shouting, the soldiers conquered.
3. *Although* Caesar was shouting, the soldiers conquered.
4. *If* Caesar was shouting, the soldiers conquered.
5. Caesar was shouting *and* the soldiers conquered.

Compare these to the example given in Lesson 17—they are perfectly parallel. Again, it would pay well to memorize one Latin example with a full set of translations. Take the one above, or make your own.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTES WITHOUT PARTICIPLES: The Latin verb *to be* (*est*) has no present participle (*nor perfect passive*). So, when we want to use the verb *to be* in an ablative absolute, we just leave the participle out. For example:

Caésare duce, mílites pugnavérunt fórtiter.

(With) Caesar (being) leader, the soldiers fought bravely.

Or, more freely—use any of the five expansions given above.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Now look for these ablative absolute patterns; then watch for other active participle patterns.

Caésare imperatóre, mílites laeti erant. Coniuratóribus veniéntibus, Caesar non timébat. Audívit vatem monéntem se, sed in senátum venit. Ibi senatóres exclamántes audívit. Exclamántes interfecérunt eum.

Cícero et Quintus fratres (*brothers*) erant. Audivérunt oratóres magnos habéntes oratiónes magnas in foro. Volébant esse oratóres. Cícero re vera orátor magnus factus est. Cícero étiam erat vir equéstris. Sed equum non hábuit. Non erat necésse habére equum. Nunc autem, púeri et puéllae Americáni oratiónes Cicerónis in scholis legunt. Et quamquam Cícero equum non hábuit, púeri et puéllae, legéntes oratiónes eius, equos habent. Sed Cícero ipse non hábuit equum—ipse enim has oratiónes scrípserat. Senatóres, audíentes has orátiones, non fecérunt coniuratiónem contra Ciceró-nem. Cícero enim non vóluit esse rex. Senatóribus faciéntibus coniuratiónem contra Caésarem, Cícero nihil fecit. Non amávit Caésarem, sed interfícere eum non vóluit.

Sed porcis exclamántibus *oink*, Marcus non fecit nihil. Marcus étiam exclamávit. Marco exclamánte, quid fecit María? María magna voce agnum vocávit. Agno veniénte, María laeta erat, María in schola non remánsit. María duce, agnus laetus erat.

Semprónius erat impátiens. Semprónio cónsule, Hánnibal Romános vicit. Carthaginiénsibus pugnántibus, Románi victi sunt. Sed Scipióne cónsule, Hánnibal ipse victus est. Hánnibal vidit exércitum Románum veniéntem. Veniéntes Románi vidérunt exércitum Púnicum. Románis vincéntibus, Hánnibal non laetus erat.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. Marcus saw the lamb coming. 2. Did he hear the lamb saying *baa*? 3. Marcus being the teacher, Mary is glad. 4. While Caesar was alive, Brutus was not happy. 5. They saw him coming into the senate. 6. He heard the commander reading the commands. 7. It was better for Caesar to depart from Rome.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Quia multam pecúniam habuérunt, diébus Cicerónis équites non debuérunt habére equos. Románi audiéntes oratiónes huius Cicerónis non habuérunt equos. Potuérunt intellígere (*understand*) has étiam sine equis. Itaque Románis exclamántibus Cícero habébat oratiónes multas et veheméntes. Cicerónem, quamquam multi ex his qui audivérunt oratiónes eius amavérunt eum, Sulla amávit nec ipsum nec oratiónes eius. Ciceróni ergo mélius erat Roma proficísci in Graéciam.

LECTIO TRIGESIMA SEXTA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

SUMMARY: Cicero returned to Rome in two years. He wanted to become consul, a difficult thing for a *novus homo* (one not born in the senatorial class). He was filled with great pride, disgusting even to the Romans, who were no lovers of humility. He was elected consul for 63 B.C. with Antonius. In that year came the conspiracy of Catiline, an evil character, sunk in debt, and greedy for power.

Post annos duos, Cícero revérsus est Romam, anno septuagésimo séptimo (*77*). Sulla enim mórtuus erat anno septuagésimo octávo. Multas oratiónes claras hábuit. Sed vóluit esse consul Románus. Via ad consulátum erat difícilis hómini qui non erat natus in órdine senatório. Tales hómines, qui facti sunt cónsules, sed non nati sunt in órdine senatório, vocántur "hómines novi." Id est, novi sunt in consulátu et in órdine senatório. Cícero erat vir equéstris. Propter hoc, diffícile erat Ciceróni consul fíeri.

Christiáni habent magnum amórem virtútis humilitátis. Sed Románi non habuérunt magnum amórem huius virtútis. Románi erant supérbi. Románi fere amavérunt supérbiam. Sed, quamquam Románi erant supérbi, vidéntur esse húmiles, si comparántur cum Ciceróne. Quamquam Románi non amavérunt humilitátem, tamen non amavérunt supérbiam Cicerónis. Et re vera, Sacra Scriptúra dicit quod supérbia est inítium omnis peccáti.

Cícero eléctus est consul anni sexagésimi tértii (*63*). Erat coniurátio in hoc anno. Catilína erat princeps coniuratiónis huius. Catilína erat vir malus. Catilína debébat multam pecúniam multis homínibus. Vóluit habére máximam potestátem. Catilína conátus erat consul fíeri, sed non pótuit. Cícero et Antónius facti sunt cónsules. Catilína ergo vóluit interfícere Cicerónem et rápere omnem potestátem. Quid áccidit? (Continuábitur cras)

via-*way, road*
homo-*man*
talis-*such*
propter-*on account of*
virtus-*virtue*
supérbus-*proud*
supérbia-*pride*
comparáre-*compare*
tamen-*nevertheless*
inítium-*beginning*
peccátum-*sin*
princeps-*chief*
fíeri-*to become*

VOCABULARIUM

[fiunt], fíeri, factus est-*become, happen* (*the infinitive is irregular*—factus est *is really the last part of* fácere—"*to be made*" *means the same as "to become"*)
nescíre, ívit, ítus-*not know*
propter (*with obj.*)-*on account of*
bonus homo, hómine-*man* (vir *is "man" in the strictly masculine sense, almost meaning hero;* homo *is more general, and means merely "human being"—may include women and children*
inítium, o-*beginning*
peccátum, o-*sin*
magnus princeps, príncipe-*chief*
supérbus, a, um-*proud*
via, a-*way, road, means*
magna virtus, virtúte-*virtue, courage, manliness* (*of* vir)

VIDEAMUS FORMAS VETERES

1. Decline together: *vir pugnans, peccátum maius, fortis equus.* 2. Give possessive singular and plural of: *hic liber, éadem via, illa virtus, magnus pes.* 3. Give five translations of: *Caésare legénte librum, mílites non pugnavérunt.* 4. How do you say: he was warning, she was attempting, he was setting out, they were warning, they were attempting, they were setting out.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Humílitas est virtus magna. Estne humílitas virtus máxima? Non. Amor Dei est virtus máxima. Quare Románi humilitátem non amavérunt? Quia nesciébant quod humílitas erat bona. Nesciébant quod virtus erat. Ergo multi Románi supérbi erant magna supérbia (*ablative*). Quare erat Cícero supérbus? Quia coniuratiónem Catilínae fregit. Erátne hoc magnum? Magnum erat, sed non máximum. Multi álii Románi res magnas fécerant, étiam res maióres fécerant.

Multi Románi (quamquam humilitátem non amavérunt) non amavérunt supérbiam Cicerónis.

Cícero étiam in exílium (*exile*) missus est, sed non propter supérbiam. Cícero enim multos hábuit inimícos. Sed inimíci Cicerónis eum non interfecérunt. Catilína interfícere Cicerónem conátus est—sed non pótuit. Cícero enim scire ómnia quae Catilína fecit pótuit. Inimíci Caésaris eum sicis in senátu interfecérunt. Catilína étiam sicam hábuit. Sed Catilína ipse ad Cicerónem cum illa sica non venit: Catilína duos équites Romános ad Cicerónem misit. Hi équites cum Ciceróne loquebántur, sed eum interfícere non póterant. Cícero enim consília eórum sciébat. Catilína ergo ira motus est.

Catilína étiam hábuit exércitum in móntibus. Putábat quod hoc modo Romam cápere póterat, sed Roma serváta est. Cícero enim multas oratiónes claras contra Catilínam in senátu hábuit. Postquam Catilína primam harum oratiónum audívit, ex urbe discéssit. Sed Cícero multos viros qui erant in coniuratióne cum Catilína cepit. Cícero senátum rogávit quid débuit fácere his viris captis. Senatus dixit quod eos interfícere débuit. Cícero ergo hos viros captos interfécit. (Re vera, Cícero ipse eos non interfécit, sed álios viros interfícere eos iussit).

English to Latin

1. Catiline attempted to kill Cicero with a dagger. 2. He said that he hated Cicero. 3. He wanted war because he owed money to many men. 4. Why did not Caesar become king? 5. He is a man whose courage is great. 6. On account of his sins he was being punished. 7. He saw Isabella giving money to Columbus.

Scramble Exercise

Homínibus qui non in órdine senatório nati erant, ad consulátum via difficilis erat. Quidam nihilóminus re vera, inter quos erat ipse Cícero, ad hanc venérunt dignitátem. Qui hoc fecérunt novi hómines vocabántur. Anno quo Cícero consul erat, áccidit étiam clara illa Catilínae coniurátio, quam vicit Cícero. Quam propter causam, quamquam ante hoc tempus non húmilis fúerat, iam in supérbiam nímiam venit Cícero. Quod inítium omnis peccáti supérbia est, dícitur in Sacra Scriptúra. Christiánis amántibus hanc virtútem, eam non amávit Cícero, qui non Christiánus erat.

LECTIO TRIGESIMA SEPTIMA

De tempore futuro in tertia persona

SUMMARY: One of Catiline's fellow conspirators, Curius, had a lady friend, Fulvia. Fulvia reported what she heard to Cicero. But Cicero did not want to arrest Catiline for want of legal evidence. However, by a forceful speech, he scared Catiline into leaving the city. He then, on evidence of Gallic spies, arrested other conspirators.

Vir quidam bonus ex Gállia dixit: *Cherchez la femme*—id est, necésse est cavére féminas. Et dixit veritátem. Catilína ipse potest dicére Ciceróni: necésse est cavére féminas. Unus enim ex viris qui fuérunt in coniuratióne Catilínae hábuit amícam. Nomen huius féminae fuit Fúlvia. Q. Cúrius, vir in coniuratióne Catilínae, amábat Fúlviam. Cúrius scivit ómnia consília Catilínae. Sed Fúlvia semper rogábat eum: "Quid facit meus vir magnus nunc?" Et Cúrius narrábat ómnia Fúlviae. Fúlvia celériter narrábat ómnia quae audíverat Ciceróni. Hoc modo Cícero sciébat ómnia consília Catilínae. Sed Cícero non póterat probáre haec in foro. Itaque Cícero non vóluit comprehéndere Catilínam. Cícero ipse in magno perículo erat. Catilína enim conátus est interfícere Cicerónem. Sed Cícero, mónitus a Fúlvia, semper póterat serváre seípsum.

Quodam die Catilína venit in senátum. Cícero hábuit magnam et veheméntem oratiónem contra Catilínam. Cícero osténdit Catilínae quod ipse semper póterat scire, sine ulla difficultáte, consília quae Catilína faciébat. Cícero dixit quod Catilína débuit discédere Roma, cum ómnibus sóciis suis. Catilína, putans quod erat in magno perículo, discéssit ex urbe. Sed non solum Fúlvia narrábat consília Catilínae Ciceróni. Etiam quidam viri ex Gállia (non dixérunt *cherchez la femme*) narravérunt multa de coniuratióne. Hoc modo Cícero sciébat viros qui erant in coniuratióne. Cícero ergo comprehéndit multos ex eis. (Continuábitur)

Gállia-*Gaul, France*
amíca-*friend* (*fem.*)
meus-*my*
narráre-*tell*
probáre-*prove*
comprehéndere-*arrest*
mónitus-*warned*
véhemens-*forceful*
ullus-*any*
difficúltas-*difficulty*
sócius-*ally*

VOCABULARIUM

comprehéndere, prehéndit, prehénsus-*grasp, arrest*
narráre, ávit, átus-*tell*
probáre, ávit, átus-*prove, test*
meus, a, um-*my, mine*
sócius, o-*ally, companion*
ullus, a, um-*any*
véhemens, veheménti-*forceful*

NUNC COGITEMUS

FUTURE ACTIVE AND PASSIVE: We have learned how to form the imperfect tense from the infinitive, by dropping the *-are*, etc., and adding *-abat* (first conjugation) or *-ebat* (all others, except that *-iunt* verbs have *-iebat*). Now, using the same vowels as we use ahead of the *-bat*, we can form the future tense, with the future endings: *-bit, -bunt* (first and second conjugations) and *-t, -nt* (third and fourth conjugations).

	1	2	3	3 (-iunt)	4
Thus:	parábit	habébit	ponet	cápiet	aúdiet
	parábunt	habébunt	ponent	cápient	aúdient

These endings are, of course, active—they mean e.g.,

he will prepare
or: he will be preparing.

But it is just as easy to make the forms passive—just add *-ur* to any of the above!

e.g., habébitur, habebúntur or capiétur, capiéntur

The meanings of the passive are easy too:

he will be captured
they will be captured

Future Active of Esse, Posse, Velle: erit, erunt, póterit, póterunt, volet, volent

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Look for future tense patterns.

Catilína Cicerónem cápere vult, sed Catilína ipse capiétur. Étiam omnes álii qui in coniuratióne sunt capiéntur. In cárcerem (*jail*) mitténtur. Erunt in cárcere sine ulla spe (*hope*). Sed in magno erunt perículo. Cícero enim álios viros ad eos mittet in cárcerem. Hi álii viri illos coniuratóres interfícient. Hi coniuratóres enim magnum fecérunt peccátum: Romam delére voluérunt. Catilína est princeps huius coniuratiónis. Sed Cícero non comprehéndit eum. Quare? Quia vóluit eum discédere ex urbe cum ómnibus sóciis. Catilína re vera discédet, sed non omnes sócii eius evádent quia comprehendéntur a Ciceróne. Hi sócii Catilínae in cárcere interficiéntur. Et Cícero ipse fiet (*from* fiunt) supérbus. Cícero ipse non amat humilitátem. Cícero non póterat scire quod humílitas virtus magna est. Cícero supérbiam máximam hábuit. Románi álii humilitátem non amavérunt, sed supérbiam máximam Cicerónis non amavérunt. Cícero enim saepe de sese loquebátur.

Sacra Scriptúra dixit quod supérbia est inítium omnis peccáti. Cícero étiam multa poémata (*poems*) de se ipse scripsit. Románi haec poémata non amavérunt. Cicero non erat poéta bonus. Et poémata eius non erant bona. Ínsuper, Cícero semper de se in his poemátibus loquebátur. Haec poémata non habéntur nunc. Bonum est quod non habéntur nunc: non est necésse légere ea. Agnus albus, qui erat in schola, Cicerónis poémata non legit. Agnus ea non amávit. Quid dixit agnus de his poemátibus? Dixit *baa*. Sunt enim *baad*. Agnus autem de Marco Pórcio Catóne légere vóluit. Quinque porci étiam voluérunt de Pórcio audíre. Unus ex his quinque porcis in agris Porci fuit.

English to Latin

1. These men will be found. 2. Cicero will send them to prison. 3. Many of those who are in the conspiracy will be arrested. 4. He will talk about himself. 5. They will not be seen in the city after this day. 6. They will be killed by servants of Cicero. 7. How will Cicero prove that they are in the conspiracy?

Scramble Exercise

Narránte Fúlvia ómnia quae a Cúrio de coniuratióne audíverat, Cícero coniuratóres comprehéndere et in cárcerem (*jail*) míttere non vóluit. Ciceróne sciénte haec ómnia, necésse erat posse probáre haec in foro: id quod Cícero vóluit sed non pótuit fácere. Áliis ergo modis ágere necésse erat Ciceróni. Contra Catilínam ergo in senátu, multis senatóribus exclamántibus, hábuit Cícero oratiónem veheméntem. Hac oratióne hábita, timére coepit ille Catilína, et Roma non sine multis sóciis discéssit.

LECTIO TRIGESIMA OCTAVA

De pronomine: quis
De tempore perfecto infinitivi

SUMMARY: Cicero now has written proof of the conspiracy. He consulted the senate about the case. Caesar favored life imprisonment. Cato called for death—and won. But Catiline himself was free with an army. He met the army led by Petreius, legate of the consul Antonius. He died fighting.

Cícero nunc, quia Galli dedérunt epístolas quas accepérunt a coniuratóribus, potest probáre ea quae scíverat de coniuratióne. Ítaque mittit multos coniuratóres in cárcerem; non omnes mittit in cárcerem, quia multi erant cum exércitu Catilínae. Cícero nunc cónsulit senátum. Multi senatóres habuérunt oratiónes in senátu de hac re. Caesar vóluit tenére coniuratóres in cárcere per réliquam vitam. Sed multi timuérunt fácere hoc. Dixérunt: "Forsan evádent ex cárcere. Amíci enim eórum vénient et liberábunt eos." Oratióne Caésaris hábita, Cato hábuit oratiónem suam. Cato vóluit interfícere coniuratóres in cárcere. Senátus ergo consílium dedit Ciceróni. Consílium enim Catónis plácuit senátui. Cícero ergo iussit hos coniuratóres intérfici in cárcere. Et factum est.

Sed Catilína ipse non erat in cárcere. Erat cum exércitu suo. Catilína sperábat cápere Romam. Sed Cícero et senátus étiam habuérunt exércitum magnum. Consul Gaius Antónius erat dux huius exércitus. Sed Antónius aeger pédibus erat. Ergo Marcus Petréius (qui erat legátus Antóni) ducébat exércitum. Catilína hábuit oratiónem magnam. Dixit milítibus suis quod necésse erat pugnáre fórtiter, "Mors enim exspectábit eos qui capiéntur." Exércitus ergo Catilínae et Catilína ipse fórtiter pugnavérunt in magno proélio, sed non póterant víncere. Multi interfécti sunt in proélio, inter quos erat Catilína ipse.

epístola-*letter*
carcer-*prison*
réliquus-*rest of*
forsan-*perhaps*
liberáre-*free*
plácuit-*was pleasing*

VOCABULARIUM

consúlere, consúluit, consúltus-*consult*
liberáre, ávit, átus-*free*
placére, plácuit, *placitúrus-*be pleasing to (dative)*
forsan-*perhaps*
aeger, aegra, aegrum-*sick*
magnus carcer, cárcere-*prison*
epístola, a-*letter*
réliquus, a, um-*rest of (used like médius: middle of—see Lesson 2)*

NUNC COGITEMUS

THE INTERROGATIVE QUIS, QUID: The words mean: *Who? What?* They are pronouns, that is, they stand alone, and do not modify anything. (If we want an interrogative adjective, e.g., "which thing?"—we merely use the same forms as the relative pronoun, *qui, quae, quod*). But how do we decline *quis, quid*? Again, Latin is easy. All forms are the same as the relative, except these:

quis instead of *qui*
quid instead of *quod*

And, in addition, the masculine and feminine are the same in the *singular* (as in *omnis*). Therefore we use *quem* and *quo* for both masculine and feminine (not *quam* and *qua*). In the plural, everything is exactly the same as *qui, quae, quod.*
Therefore the singular is:

Nom.	quis	quid
Poss.	cuius	cuius
Obj.	quem	quid
Abl.	quo	quo

Plural same as *qui, quae, quod*

Perfect Infinitives: The *perfect active infinitive* is made by substituting *-isse* for the third singular ending *-it*. Thus:

paravísse—to *have* prepared
habuísse—to *have* had
cepísse—to *have* taken

The *perfect infinitive passive* is made by using the infinitive "to be"—*esse*—with the proper form of the perfect passive participle, e.g.:

interféctus esse—to *have been* killed.

Catilína dícitur interféctus esse—Catiline is said to have been killed.
Multi dicúntur interfécti esse—Many are said to have been killed.

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Quis est ille vir? Ille est Cícero, quem Catilína interfícere vóluit. Sed Cícero dícitur interfecísse multos sócios Catilínae in cárcere. Et re vera intérfici debuérunt. Viri enim mali erant: Romam delére voluérunt. Quid fecérunt? Coniuratiónem fecérunt. Quo témpore coniuratiónem fecérunt? Diébus Ciceróni, id est, in anno sexagésimo tértio (*63*) ante Christi nativitátem. Cícero ergo senátum consúluit. Quid dixit senátus? Senátus dixit quod coniuratóres interfícere débuit. Qui erant hi coniuratóres? Erant viri mali qui Romam delére voluérunt. Multam pecúniam debébant multis. Bellum civíle voluérunt.

Cuius porci sunt in foro? Suntne porci Maríae? Non. María agnum, non porcos habet. Sunt Marci Porci porci. A quo accípiunt cibum? A Marco Pórcio cibum accípiunt. Ille enim amat eos.

Quem vidit Cícero in foro? Catilínam vidit. Catilína sicam parvam hábuit. Catilína Cicerónem interfícere volébat. Sed hoc non plácuit Ciceróni. Cícero enim intérfici non volébat. Et réliqui viri, qui cum Ciceróne erant, eum interfícere non voluérunt. Cícero in médio foro erat. Fulvia Cicerónem mónuit quod Catilína coniuratiónem faciébat. Sed Cícero non póterat probáre haec in foro. Epístolas habére erat necésse. A quibus accépit Cícero epístolas? A Gallis. Hi Romam amavérunt. Ínsuper, sperábant accípere praémium máius a Románis quam (*than*) a coniuratóribus. Et verum erat; re vera, praémia maióra a Ciceróne accípient.

English to Latin

1. From whom will the soldiers receive money? From Marius, not from Rome. 2. Who warned Cicero about what? 3. Catiline is said to have killed many men. 4. He seems to have consulted many men. 5. Who has done what? 6. Does he know what they have done?

Scramble Exercise

Verbis motus Fúlviae, Cícero contra Catilínam oratiónem habúerat veheméntem qua illum ex urbe discédere coégit. Nunc autem, quibúsdam Gallis étiam scripta de coniuratióne dántibus, in senátum venit Cícero et senatóres rogávit quid fácere de coniuratóribus captis debébat. Illos coniuratóres in cárcere intérfici plácuit senátui. Nec Catilína ipse nec álii forsan coniuratóres pauci qui in urbe erant, illis qui in cárcere damnáti erant auxílium dare potuérunt. Magno proélio contra Marcum Petréium, ipse Catilína fórtiter pugnans interféctus est.

LECTIO TRIGESIMA NONA

De oratione obliqua in modo infinitivo

SUMMARY: Cicero was praised for his work, but had many enemies. He had offended Clodius, a patrician by birth, who was adopted by plebians, so that he could become tribune. He charged Cicero with illegal action for not allowing the conspirators a trial before the people. Cicero defended himself by saying the conspirators were public enemies.

Catilína interfécto, Cícero multos honóres accépit. Sed non omnes Románi amavérunt Cicerónem. Multi enim, quamquam in coniuratióne ipsa non fúerant, non odérunt consília Catilínae. Praesértim quidam tribúnus plebis, Clódius Pulcher nómine, odit Cicerónem.

Clódius fuit patrícius nativitáte. Sed Clódius vir malus erat—anno sexagésimo secúndo (*62*) profanáverat mystéria cuiúsdam deae quae vocabátur "Bona Dea." Quia Clódius hoc fécerat, Cícero accusávit eum. Sed Clódius dixit quod non fúerat in urbe illo témpore—dixit quod álibi fúerat, in ália urbe. Cícero autem póterat probáre quod Clódius re vera fúerat in urbe illo témpore. Propter hanc causam Clódius odit Cicerónem, et vóluit habére vindíctam.

Ítaque, quamquam iam vir adúltus erat, Clódius rogávit famíliam plebéiam adoptáre se, quia vóluit esse tribúnus plebis. Sed patrícii (et Clódius erat patrícius nativitáte) non póterant fíeri tribúni plebis. Propter hanc causam Clódius adoptári vóluit. Hoc modo Clódius factus est plebéius. (Nomen Clodi fúerat Claúdius—sed plebéii semper dicébant lítteram *o*, pro *au*. Ergo se vocávit Clódium, non Claúdium. Ítaque Clódius, iam plebéius factus, non iam patrícius, póterat esse tribúnus plebis—et re vera factus est tribúnus in anno quinquagésimo octávo (*58*).

honor-*honor*
profanávit-*defiled*
mystéria-*mysteries*
dea-*goddess*
álibi-*elsewhere*
causa-*cause*
vindícta-*revenge*
adúltus-*adult*
família-*family*
adoptáre-*adopt*
plebéius-*plebeian*
pro-*in place of*
iudícium-*trial*
coram-*before*
hostis-*enemy (national)*

VOCABULARIUM

profanáre, ávit, átus-*defile*
coram (*with abl.*)-*in the presence of, before*
álibi-*elsewhere*
causa, a-*cause, case, reason*
Deus, o-*God* (dea, a-*goddess*)
magnus hostis, hosti-*enemy*
mystérium, o-*mystery, rite*

NUNC COGITEMUS

INDIRECT STATEMENTS: Take the sentence: He says that Caesar is coming.

Dicit quod Caesar venit.

There is another way to say the same thing: *Dicit Caésarem veníre*. Notice what we have done, we have made Caesar, the subject, to be in the objective case. We have made the verb *venit* (is coming) into an infinitive: *veníre*. What are the rules for this structure?

1. DO NOT TRANSLATE THE ENGLISH WORD *that* (ENGLISH OFTEN OMITS IT ANYWAY).
2. MAKE THE SUBJECT OF THE *that* CLAUSE IN THE OBJECTIVE CASE.
3. MAKE AN INFINITIVE THE VERB OF THE *that* CLAUSE.

Since we use the objective with the infinitive here, we sometimes speak of this structure as the "objective with the infinitive."

Is the infinitive always in the present? No—sometimes we use the perfect:

He says that Caesar has come.
Dicit Cáesarem venísse.

Now—suppose the English, instead of starting out "He *says*" had read "He said." Well that is a bit tougher in English, but no trouble in Latin. Here is what happens to the English:

He *says* that Caesar *is* coming—(Latin: *Dicit* Caésarem veníre) becomes:—He *said* that Caesar *was* coming—(Latin: *Dixit* Caésarem veníre). But as for the Latin: *Dixit* Caésarem veníre—we merely changed the *dicit* to *dixit*. (There are a few other combinations possible—but we shall see them later). Did the Romans often use this queer structure? Yes they did—most old writers use it almost always, rather than the *quod venit* type. Later Latin writers use both kinds rather freely. So we need to know both types. It would be well worthwhile to memorize the following samples:—

1. *Dicit Maríam agnum amáre.*—He says that Mary loves (does love, is loving) the lamb.
2. *Dixit Maríam agnum amáre.*—He said that Mary loved (did love, was loving) the lamb.
3. *Dicit Maríam agnum amavísse.*—He says that Mary has loved (did love, loved) the lamb.
4. *Dixit Maríam agnum amavísse.*—He said that Mary had loved (or: that she loved) the lamb.

To translate, compare the sentence (Latin or English) with these patterns. Notice first the *dicit* (*dixit*) or English equivalent. Then check the rest of the sentence, and model it on the pattern given. Then it will be easy.
NOTE: THIS INDIRECT STATEMENT STRUCTURE COMES NOT ONLY AFTER *dixit*, BUT ALSO AFTER OTHER VERBS THAT MEAN: SAY, THINK, BELIEVE, ETC.

EXERCEAMUS NOS

Watch carefully to see how objective-infinitives are used.

Cícero dicit Catilínam esse virum malum (Cícero dicit quod Catilína est vir malus). Dixit Catilínam veníre cum exércitu magno (Dixit quod Catilína veniébat cum exércitu magno). Clódius dixit se álibi fuísse (Clódius dixit quod álibi fúerat). Cícero probávit Clódium in urbe fuísse. Clódius non dixit veritátem. Cícero dixit Clódium non dixísse veritátem. Cícero dicit Clódium profanavísse mystéria "Bonae Deae." Et re vera Clódius fécerat hoc. Clódius odit Cicerónem.

Clódius dixit Cicerónem fecísse malum quia coniuratóres interfécerat sine iudício coram pópulo. Dixítne Clódius verum? Diffícile est dícere. Sed senátus consílium dedit Ciceróni. Senátus dixit Cicerónem debére interfícere coniuratóres. Et Cícero fecit id quod senátus vóluit. Cícero dixit se non velle comprehéndere Catilínam statim. Dixit se velle Catilínam discédere ex urbe cum ómnibus sóciis. Catilína ergo discéssit, sed non omnes sócii eius discessérunt cum eo; quidam ex eis comprehénsi sunt a Ciceróne. Cícero, epistólis a Gallis accéptis, póterat probáre illos esse coniuratóres contra Romam. Ítaque iecit illos in cárcerem. Cónsulit senátum de eis, et plácuit senátui interfícere eos in cárcere. Multi coniuratóres interfécti sunt in cárcere, sed réliqui coniuratóres erant in exércitu Catilínae. Catilína dixit eis necésse esse pugnáre fórtiter pro vita ipsa, et re vera hoc fecérunt.

Antónius erat consul in illo anno cum Ciceróne, sed Antónius dixit se non posse pugnáre. Dixit se esse aegrum pédibus. Et veritátem dixit.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. Was Antonius really sick? 2. The rest of the men tried to free them. 3. Cicero says that he is warning Catiline. 4. They said that Clodius had profaned the mysteries of the Bona Dea. 5. Catiline says that he has seen Curius. 6. Cicero says that a public trial is not necessary. 7. Catiline says that they are fighting for their lives.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Románi dicébant hanc deam esse "Bonam Deam." Clódium profanavísse mystéria huius deae dixit Cícero. Sed história dicit étiam hanc "Bonam Deam" non fuísse bonam. Nihilóminus, Románi non sine veritáte Clódium virum malum esse dixérunt. Fuit enim talis. Iam vir adúltus factus, Clódius dixit se velle adoptári a família plebéia. Haec quia tribúnus plebis físeri vóluit dixit. Idem Clódius dixit Cicerónem debuísse dare coniuratóribus iudícium coram pópulo—id quod Cícero re vera non déderat.

LECTIO QUADRAGESIMA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

SUMMARY: Cicero was forced into exile by the charges of Clodius. He groaned much over this. He was recalled in the next year. But he did not take much part in public life on his return, though he had to take a term as governor of Cilicia. He returned to Rome just in time for the start of the civil war between Caesar and Pompey.

Clódius, olim patrícius, iam plebéius et tribúnus plebis, accusábat Cicerónem quia Cícero iússerat coniuratóres intérfici sine iudício coram pópulo. Cícero re vera hoc fécerat, sed quaéstio erat: fecerátne hoc iure an non? Multae leges Románae iam scriptae erant, sed lex fundamentális, quae vocátur hódie lex constitutionális—haec lex nullo modo scripta erat in diébus Cicerónis. Diffícile erat ergo scire de hac re. Sed certum erat quod Clódius odit Cicerónem, et propter hanc causam aggréssus est eum. Tribúni plebis habébant magnam potestátem in illis tempóribus, et Clódius non solum conátus est míttere Cicerónem in exsílium, verum étiam póterat míttere eum. Cícero ergo per legem novam coáctus est ire in exsílium. Hoc áccidit anno quinquagésimo sexto (*56*). Cícero ergo afféctus est máximo dolóre. Amávit enim Romam magno amóre. Sed lex iussit eum exíre et Cícero exívit. Multas epístolas scripsit ex exsílio ad amícum suum Átticum. Hae epístolae étiam nunc habéntur et legi possunt. Sed Cícero hábuit multos bonos amícos in urbe. Hi amíci multa fecérunt pro eo. Per labóres eórum, Cícero revocátus est ab exsílio in anno quinquagésimo quinto (*55*).

Cícero, revérsus ab exsílio, non iam dedit se vitae públicae. Nihilóminus, iussus est ire in Cilíciam anno quinquagésimo secúndo (*52*). Ibi erat gubernátor Románus. Revérsus est in Itáliam in fine anni quinquagésimi et venit Romam in inítio belli civílis inter Caésarem et Pompéium. Bellum enim civíle coépit in Ianuário anni quadragésimi noni (*49*).

ius, iure-*right, law*
hódie-*today*
certus-*certain*
aggréssus est-*attacked*
verum étiam-*but also*
exsílium-*exile*
ire-*to go*
afféctus-*moved*
dolor-*grief, pain*
exíre-*go out*
gubernátor-*governor*

VOCABULARIUM

ire, iit, *itúrus-*go* (*present tense is irregular*: it *and* eunt: *3d sing. and pl. pres.*: ibat *and* ibant: *imperf.*: ibit *and* ibunt: *future, present active participle*: iens, eunti).
hódie-*today*
[affíciunt], affícere, affécit, afféctus-*affect move*
[aggrediúntur], ággredi, aggréssus est-*attack*
non solum . . . verum étiam: *not only . . . but also*
certus, a um-*certain*
magnus dolor, dolóre-*grief, pain*
exsílium, o-*exile*
verum ius, iure-*right, law*

VIDEAMUS FORMAS VETERES

1. How do you say: Whose (of whom)? of the same man, of the pain, of the mystery, of Caesar himself, of this man. 2. Decline together: *malus hostis, homo aeger, réliqui mílites*. 3. How do you say: He will be affected, he will be freed, he will warn, he will arrest. Now make all these plural.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

WORD ORDER: We have already studied two tricks in word order: the type, *María agnum habet* (we saw it in Lesson 20), and the sandwich style, *magnum hábuit exércitum*. The possibilities are numerous—but now that we are fairly well used to the above two types, we

can become a bit more free—actually, we could take the three words: *María agnum habet*, and put them in absolutely any order, and they would mean the same. We now begin to experiment just a bit. It may seem strange at first, but we will not do too much of it, and we will soon be used to it.

Amíci Catilínae in cárcerem ibant. In cárcere moriéntur. Ergo magno affécti sunt dolóre: non enim mori volunt. Sed non possunt dícere se fuísse álibi. Cícero enim epístolas habet ab eis scriptas. Debuítne Cícero dare illis iudícium coram pópulo Románo? Clódius Cicerónem debuísse dixit. Sed hoc non fecit Cícero. Quid est verum in hac re? Non est fácile veritátem inveníre. Quamquam enim multae leges Románae iam scriptae erant, lex constitutionális scripta non erat. Quia in exsílium ire debébat, Cícero máximo afféctus est dolóre. Dixit néminem umquam (*ever*) talem dolórem habuísse, sed veritátem non dixit. Cícero enim non erat vir fortis; supérbus vir erat. Sed ab exsílio revocátus est in anno quinquagésimo quinto (*55*). Non ergo in exsílio per annum totum fúerat. Malum est in exsílio esse, sed máximum malum non est. Ítaque Cícero exclamáre non débuit quod nemo umquam tale hábuit malum.

Quare vóluit Clódius adoptári? Quia esse tribúnus plebis vóluit. Tribúni plebis creáti sunt in saéculo quinto ante Christum. Plebs enim Romána Roma exíverat et in Montem Sacrum vénerat. Non voluérunt revérti Romam. Sed núntii ex patríciis rogavérunt eos in urbem rursus veníre. Plebs non venit. Ergo tribúnos patrícii dedérunt. Tribúnis accéptis, plebs revérsa est. Hi tribúni deféndere plebem contra patrícios póterant. Tribúni enim magnam habébant potestátem. Nunc autem Clódius vult magnam habére potestátem. Vult vindíctam habére quia Cícero eum accusáverat. Sed esse tribúnus non póterat, quia patrícius erat nativitáte. Ergo adoptári a família plebéia vóluit.

Agnus albus étiam adoptári vóluit. A María adoptátus est. Erátne ergo María agnus? Non. Erátne ergo agnus María? Non. Sed María agnum amávit: agnus enim non solum in scholam venit, verum étiam suum BA accépit. Magnus honor erat agno. Talem honórem quinque porci non accepérunt. Sed quinque porci in lingua Gállica (*French*) loqui póterant: dixérunt enim, *oui, oui*.

English to Latin

1. They will go into prison. 2. They will be very sad (affected with great grief). 3. It is hard to go into exile. 4. Why do they attack Rome? 5. Cicero says that he is in great pain. 6. Did Catiline have a right to (use *ad*) a public trial? 7. Because he did these things, great grief will come to him.

Scramble Exercise

Legem Románam fundamentálem, quae vocátur lex constitutionális, non fuísse scriptam in diébus Cicerónis dicit história. Et verum est. Sed étiam in his tempóribus modérnis non omnes terrae legem constitutionálem scriptam habent. Multi dicunt hanc legem in Británnia, quae est ínsula magna, non scriptam esse. Quam propter causam, Clódius póterat dícere Cicerónem, qui consul erat, contra legem egísse. Dixítne veritátem Clódius? Diffícile dícere est.

LECTIO QUADRAGESIMA PRIMA

De modo subiunctivo in tempore imperfecto activo
De clausulis finalibus

SUMMARY: Cicero hesitated for a long time, but finally joined Pompey's side (and did almost nothing). After Pompey's defeat, Caesar generously pardoned him. But Cicero retired and turned to writing. After the death of Caesar he delivered several violent speeches against Anthony. Octavius, the adopted son of Caesar, defeated Anthony, and became consul.

Cícero vénerat Romam in inítio belli civílis inter Caésarem et Pompéium. Caesar et Pompéius nullum auxílium déderant Ciceróni quando Clódius aggréssus est eum. Cícero non vóluit pugnáre in hoc bello. Sed Pompéius díxerat: "Si vir non pugnábit pro me, putábitur esse inimícus meus." Cícero ergo venit in castra Pompéi, sed fere nihil fecit. Pompéius, sicut iam dictum est, victus est in hoc bello et coáctus est fúgere in Aegýptum. Ibi interféctus est a quibúsdam milítibus. Sed Caesar misericórdiam magnam hábuit; celériter ignóvit Ciceróni et étiam dedit licéntiam revérti Romam. Sed Cícero non vóluit se dare vitae públicae post hoc bellum. Itaque, per tres vel quattuor (*3-4*) annos, scripsit multos libros de rebus philosóphicis et rhetóricis.

Annus quadragésimus quartus (*44*) venit, et, in mense Mártio, Idus étiam venérunt. Caesar mónitus est a multis. Étiam vates mónuit eum: "Necésse est cavére Idus Mártias!" Sed Caesar respóndit: "Idus Mártiae venérunt!"—"Sed non discessérunt," dixit vates. Caesar nihil fecit de his monitiónibus sed—venit in senátum. Ibi interféctus est a coniuratóribus. Caésare mórtuo, Cícero venit rursus in vitam públicam. Multas oratiónes veheméntes hábuit contra Marcum Antónium, amícum Caésaris.

Bella civília venérunt post mortem Caésaris. Caesar fílium non hábuit. Sed adoptáverat Gaium Octávium (qui póstea vocátus est Augústus). (Iúlius Caesar étiam erat avúnculus magnus huius Gai Octávi.) Post mortem Caésaris Octávius venit in Itáliam, et pugnávit contra Antónium. Antónius victus est, et fugit trans Alpes. Octávius revérsus est Romam, et factus est consul. (Continuábitur cras)

si-*if*
castra-*camp*
sicut-*as*
ignóvit-*forgave*
licéntia-*permission*
vates-*soothsayer*
monítio-*warning*
póstea-*afterwards*
avúnculus-*uncle*

VOCABULARIUM

ignóscere, ignóvit, ignótus-*forgive* (*with dat. and obj.* Caésari multa ignóvit-*He forgave Caesar many things.*)
ne-*lest, so that . . . not*
póstea-*afterwards*
si-*if*
sicut, *-as, just as, as if*
ut-*that* (*with subj.*), *so that, in order to, in order that*

avúnculus, o-*uncle* (*on mother's side: on father's side is* pátruus)
licéntia, a-*permission*
bona monítio, monitióne-*advice, warning*
bonus vates, i-*soothsayer, prophet*

NUNC COGITEMUS

IMPERFECT TENSE OF SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: So far we have been using infinitives and indicative forms of the verb (we have not called them indicative mood). We must now learn some subjunctive forms. The imperfect tense is wonderfully easy to form; merely add *-t* or *-nt* to the present infinitive active. Thus:

1. paráret parárent
2. habéret habérent
3. póneret pónerent
4. audíret audírent.

But how to translate the subjunctive? The translation varies according to use. Hence we must observe each use separately (sometimes we translate just like an indicative, but other times we use English forms with

may or *might*). Therefore we must learn just a few uses of the subjunctive.

PURPOSE (FINAL) CLAUSES: They have chiefly two forms in English:

He went out to see Caesar.
He went out that he might see Caesar.

In Latin purpose clauses are easy; here are two examples:

1. Exívit ut vidéret Caésarem. *He went out that he might see Caesar.*
2. Imperávit ut mílites pugnárent. *He ordered that the soldiers fight.*

The negative form (*lest* or *that . . . not*) uses *ne* instead of *ut*:

Discéssit ne vidéret mortem coniuratórum.
He left, lest he see the death of the conspirators.
(or: that he might not see . . .)
(or: so that he would not see . . .)

AS TO THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE: we ordinarily use the *imperfect* (in a purpose clause) *after a past tense of the main verb* (in the sentence above—*he came*). Again it would be worthwhile to memorize one Latin example of a purpose clause.
NOTE: We never use *ut* in place of *quod* for an indirect statement.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Notice the ut *and subjunctive patterns.*

Cícero discéssit Roma ut iret in exsílium. Cícero non vóluit ire in exsílium. Sed Pompéius non dedit auxílium ne debéret ire in exsílium. Consulúerat senátum ut sciret de légibus. Et plácuit senátui ut Cícero interfíceret coniuratóres. Cícero ergo iússerat eos intérfici. Ducti sunt in cárcerem ut álii viri possent interfícere eos. Magno dolóre affécti sunt.

Sed Cícero non vóluit ágere contra leges, contra id quod ius erat. Cícero dixit se habére ius ut fáceret haec. Non remánsit in exsílio per totam vitam suam; revocátus est anno quinquagésimo quinto. Cícero étiam erat in bello civíli. Sed remánsit in castris Pompéi. Non enim vóluit pugnáre.

Pompéius victus est et étiam interféctus. Pompéio victo, Caesar ignóvit Ciceróni. Rogávit Cicerónem ut veníret ad se. Cícero in vita pública non remánsit. Discéssit ut multa scríberet. Scripsit de philosophía et de arte rhetórica.

Post mortem Caésaris Cícero hábuit multas oratiónes veheméntes. Has hábuit ut deléret potestátem Antóni—sed non pótuit. Re vera, Antónius delévit non solum potestátem Cicerónis, verum étiam vitam eius—Sed bonum est audíre étiam de antíquis amícis—Colúmbus vóluit habére naves ut navigáret in Américam. Isabélla pecúniam dedit ut posset habére naves. Isabélla rogávit ut inveníret Índiam. Colúmbus étiam vóluit inveníre Índiam—nihil scivit de América. Et María non rogávit agnum album ut veníret in scholam—et agnus non rogávit Maríam ut licéntiam habéret ire in scholam. Agnus venit in scholam sine licéntia! Sed María non accusávit agnum—amávit enim eum. Marcus non vóluit habére agnum in schola. Sed nihil dixit Maríae de hoc, ne María exclamáret.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. He came to see Caesar. 2. They were led into prison, so that men might kill them. 3. Cicero was sent into Cilicia, to be governor (*gubernátor*) there. 4. Caesar's uncle sent him to find Cicero. 5. Caesar forgave Cicero many things. 6. Cicero gave many speeches to destroy the power of Anthony. 7. He said nothing to Cicero, lest Cicero arrest him.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Ut cógeret omnes veníre in castra sua, Pompéius dixit: "Si vir non pugnábit pro me, puniétur." História Romána dicit Cicerónem venísse in castra Pompéi—sed ibi fere nihil fecísse. Quia Caésarem non amávit et ne punirétur a Pompéio, in castra venit Pompéi. Nihilóminus, história dicit Caésarem ignovísse Ciceróni post bellum. His factis, ex vita pública discéssit Cícero et laborábat ut multos de rebus philosóphicis libros scríberet. Ex quibus libris multos viri in nostris (*our*) tempóribus legunt. Hi libri étiam imprimúntur (*print*).

LECTIO QUADRAGESIMA SECUNDA

De modo subiunctivo in tempore imperfecto passivo
De dativo casu pronominum

SUMMARY: Octavius became reconciled to Anthony, and, with him and Lepidus, formed the second triumvirate. Proscriptions followed, in which Cicero died. Augustus and Anthony next defeated Brutus and Cassius at Philippi, in 42 BC. Some years later, in 36, Augustus defeated Sextus Pompey in Sicily.

Octávius (qui póstea vocátus est Augústus) iam vícerat Antónium. Sed brevi témpore factus est amícus Antóni. Caesar, Pompéius, et Crassus fécerant "Primum Triumvirátum," et vocáti erant "Triúmviri." Iam Antónius, Octávius, et Lépidus fecérunt "Secúndum Triumvirátum." Sulla quotídie posúerat in foro nómina proscriptórum. Hoc modo Sulla interfécerat multos hómines. Símili modo hi triúmviri, id est, Antónius, et Octávius, et Lépidus, interfecérunt multos, in quibus erant fere duo míllia équitum (*2000*) et trecénti senatóres (*300*). Cícero, sicut iam dictum est, habúerat multas et veheméntes oratiónes contra Antónium. Propter hanc causam Antónius vóluit nomen Cicerónis esse inter proscríptos. Cícero auxílium déderat Octávio, sed nihilóminus, Octávius permísit António ut scríberet nomen Cicerónis inter proscríptos. Mílites Antóni ergo venérunt ut invenírent Cicerónem. Cícero conátus est fúgere; sed mílites secúti sunt eum, et cepérunt eum. Servi Cicerónis voluérunt deféndere eum—Cícero enim bonus fúerat servis suis—sed Cícero nóluit. Cícero enim dixit necésse esse mori. Mílites decollavérunt eum. Ítaque Cícero mórtuus est, die séptimo Decémbris, in anno quadragésimo tértio (*43*) ante nativitátem Christi. Habúerat fere annos sexagínta et quáttuor (*64*).

Augústus et Antónius navigavérunt in Graéciam, et vicérunt Brutum et Cássium in proélio magno ad Philíppos. (Brutus et Cássius fúerant in coniuratióne quae interfécit Caésarem.) Hoc proélium factum est in anno quadragésimo secúndo (*42*). In anno trigésimo sexto (*36*) Augústus vicit Sextum Pompéium (ille erat fílius Gnaei Pompéi Magni, victi a Caésare in bello civíli). Sextus Pompéius post mortem Caésaris, cepit Sicíliam classi magna. Sextus Pompéius, victus ab Octávio, fugit in Ásiam, sed ibi interféctus est in anno trigésimo quinto (*35*). (Continuábitur cras)

brevis-*short*
quotídie-*daily*
proscríptus-*proscribed*
símilis-*similar*
permísit-*permitted*
nóluit-*was not willing*
decollávit-*beheaded*
classis-*fleet*

VOCABULARIUM

decolláre, ávit, átus-*behead*
nolle, nóluit, ——*be unwilling* (*forms are like those of* vóluit, *except that third sing. is* non vult, *instead of* nult)
permíttere, mísit, míssus-*permit* (permísit hoc Marco)
proscríbere, scrípsit, scríptus-*proscribe, list*
quotídie-*daily*
brevis, breve, i-*short*
magna classis, i-*fleet*
símilis, símile, i-*like, similar*

NUNC COGITEMUS

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE: To form the passive, just add the letters *-ur* to the active forms of the third singular and plural. Thus:

pararétur pararéntur

With *deponent verbs*, we use what *looks like* an *active infinitive form*, and then add endings: e.g., conarétur (1), loquerétur (3).

DATIVE CASE OF PRONOUNS: We remember how easy it was to form the possessive case of the pronouns; the singulars all ended in *-ius*, and the plurals were like

bonus. Now, in the dative, the singulars all end in *-i*. Thus (all genders same):

huic, illi, ipsi, ei, eídem, cui, cúidam.

The plurals are not all the same as *bonus* now—but they are the same as the *ablative plurals of the same words*. Thus (all genders same):

his, illis, ipsis, eis, eísdem, quibus, quibúsdam

As for the interrogative *quis*—it also has *cui* and *quibus*, for all genders.

POSSESSIVE AND DATIVE CASE OF SOME ADJECTIVES: There are nine adjectives that behave like the pronouns in the possessive and the dative singulars (otherwise they are normal):

Nominative	Possessive	Dative
álius	alíus (rare— usually use: altérius)	álii-*some, other, another*
solus	solíus	soli-*alone, only*
ullus	ullíus	ulli-*any*
unus	uníus	uni-*one*
totus	totíus	toti-*whole*
nullus	nullíus	nulli-*none, no*
alter	altérius	álteri-*one, the other*
uter	utríus	utri-*which (of two)*
neuter	neutríus	neutri-*neither*

Notice that we have two words whose meaning is almost the same: *álius* and *alter*. They both mean: *one . . . another*—but—*alter . . . alter* is used when we have only *two* to talk about—*álius* is used when we have *more than two*. Notice the way the list of nominatives forms a sort of jingle—best to memorize them in that order (we have already seen all but the last three).

As for the accent of the possessive singulars—all are accented on the letter *i* except *altérius*, which is accented on the letter *e*.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Look for the dative case patterns.

Omnis potéstas data est soli Augústo. Estne bonum uni hómini omnem potestátem dare? Diffícile est dícere. Lépidus et Antónius étiam fuérunt in secúndo triumvirátu, sed neutri horum data est potéstas supréma. Sine ulla difficultáte Augústus factus est imperátor Románus. Antíquis tempóribus imperátor erat vir qui exércitum Románum ducébat. Sed diébus Augústi, imperátor omnes Romános ducébat.

Cícero Augústo auxílium déderat, sed Antónius mílites misit ut Cícero decollarétur. Decollátio fit (*happens*) quando caput viri movétur *de collo* (*neck*) eius. Hoc factum est Ciceróni—ergo necésse erat ut ex hac vita discéderet. Cícero enim sine cápite non póterat loqui; oratiónes veheméntes habére vóluit. Sed diffícile erat oratiónes sine cápite habére. Cícero ergo, nolens hoc fácere, ex hac vita discéssit. Sed hoc áccidit non solum Ciceróni, verum étiam multis áliis homínibus. Álii enim Antónium odérunt, álii Augústum odérunt, álii Lépidum odérunt. Hi omnes proscrípti sunt. Erat res nullíus difficultátis interfícere eos. Triúmviri enim máximam habuérunt potestátem. Magnum habuérunt exércitum. Sed étiam classem magnam habuérunt.

In classi erant multae naves. Nos sumus (*we are*) étiam in classi nunc. Sumus ergo naves? Non. Sed naves sunt in mari—et quidam dicunt quod nos sumus étiam in mari. Ergo dícunt quod nos sumus in classi. Fuit quidam magnus (sed malus) vir in Rússia. Ille vir non amávit Status Foederátos Américae. Multas hábuit naves, et magnum exércitum. Américam delére vóluit. Libertátem delére vóluit.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. He sent soldiers to speak (use a form of *loqui*) to Cicero. 2. After the soldiers departed, Cicero could not speak. 3. Not only the soldiers, but Cicero also had departed. 4. This man is not similar to that man. 5. The man to whom he gave the names is not his friend. 6. Because of Anthony's hatred, Augustus sent soldiers to kill Cicero. 7. The names were written in the forum that they might be killed.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Triúmviris inter se pugnántibus, Cícero contra Antónium, qui unus ex triúmviris erat, oratiónes multas et veheméntes hábuit ut pópulum Románum contra Antónium movéret. Ítaque, ne posset álias tales oratiónes habére, Antónius Octávium rogávit ut licéntiam habéret interfícere Cicerónem. Quem decollári permísit Octávius, quamquam Cícero pro ipso multa bona fécerat. Milítibus veniéntibus ut Cicerónem decollárent, servi Cicerónis eum deféndere conáti sunt. Dixérunt enim eum virum non malum fuísse; bonum servis fuísse.

LECTIO QUADRAGESIMA TERTIA

De subiunctivo activo in tempore plusquam perfecto
De cum causali, concessivo, et temporali

SUMMARY: Augustus not only defeated Sextus Pompey, but deprived Lepidus of his power. Thus there were only two triumvirs left. Anthony fell in "love" with Cleopatra, queen of Egypt. He therefore divorced Octavia, sister of Augustus. Augustus defeated Anthony near Actium in a sea battle. He then pursued Anthony and Cleopatra to Egypt. There, in the next year, they committed suicide. Augustus surrendered power to the senate, but soon received it all back.

Lépidus erat unus ex triúmviris. Navigávit in Sicíliam cum Augústus pugnáret cum Sexto Pompéio ut auxílium daret Augústo. Augústus vicit Sextum Pompéium (sicut iam dictum est), sed étiam privávit Lépidum potestáte. Lépidus enim, cum Sextus fugísset, conátus est maiórem potestátem cápere. Sed mílites Lépidi deseruérunt eum. Augústus non interfécit Lépidum; misit eum Romam. Ibi Lépidus remánsit per réliquam vitam suam. Erat póntifex máximus. Iam erant duo soli qui habébant potestátem in mundo Románo: Augústus et Antónius.

Antónius dúxerat Octáviam in matrimónium. Octávia erat soror Augústi (qui erat Octávius). Sed Antónius navigávit in Aegýptum. In Aegýpto vidit Cleopátram, quae erat regína Aegýpti. Videns Cleopátram, Antónius putávit se amáre eam. Antónius putávit Cleopátram esse pulchram; sed re vera erat pinguis. Antónius ergo dimísit uxórem suam, Octáviam. Octávia ira affécta est contra Antónium, et locúta est cum fratre suo, Augústo. Ille, motus dolóre et ira, movit bellum cum António. In anno trigésimo primo (*31*), ad Áctium, classis Augústi pépulit classem Antóni. Sed Antónius ipse (et Cleopátra cum eo) evásit ex mánibus Augústi, et iit in Aegýptum. Augústus ítaque, in próximo anno (id est, in anno trigésimo) navigávit in Aegýptum. Antónius et Cleopátra, audiéntes Augústum veníre, interfecérunt se.

Ómnibus inimícis victis, Augústus revérsus est Romam. Hábuit multas potestátes extraordinárias, a senátu accéptas. In anno vigésimo séptimo (*27*), venit in senátum Románum, et réddidit omnem potestátem senátui. Sed, non post multos annos, senátus et pópulus Románus réddidit omnem potestátem Augústo.

cum-*when, although, because*
privávit-*deprived*
deséruit-*deserted*
esset- *subj. of* esse
póntifex-*priest*
pulcher-*beautiful*
pinguis-*fat*
pépulit-*rout*

VOCABULARIUM

péllere, pépulit, pulsus-*drive, rout*
priváre, privávit, privátus-*deprive* (*with abl.* priváre Maríam agno-*deprive Mary of the lamb*)
réddere, réddidit, rédditus-*give back, return*
cum-*when, after, although, because*
pinguis, pingue-*fat*
magnus póntifex, pontífice-*priest*
próximus, a, um-*next, nearest*
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum-*beautiful*

NUNC COGITEMUS

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE: We have already learned how to make the *perfect active infinitive*—just substitute *-isse* for the third singular ending *-it*. Thus we have, for example, *paravísse*. Now, to make pluperfect subjunctive:

Just add *-t* or *-nt*—third singular and plural, active—thus—

paravísset   paravíssent

CUM CLAUSES: We have been using the PREPOSITION *cum* with the ablative to mean *with*. But the word *cum*

can also be a CONJUNCTION meaning: *when* (*while*), *after, although,* or *because.*

A conjunction starts a whole CLAUSE
A preposition starts a PHRASE

For example: Venit cum militíbus. *He came with the soldiers.*

This *cum* milítibus is a prepositional phrase.

Cum Augústus pugnáret, Lépidus venit. *When Augustus was fighting, Lepidus came.*

Cum Augústus *pugnáret* is a clause.

Notice that *cum* can have three quite different meanings: when (or while or after) although, and because (or since). For example:

1. *Cum Lépidus venísset,* Augústus misit eum in Itáliam.
   When Lepidus had come, Augustus sent him into Italy.
2. *Cum Lépidus auxílium dedísset,* Augústus privávit eum potestáte.
   Although Lepidus had helped, Augustus deprived him of power.
3. *Cum Antónius vidísset Cleopátram,* putávit se amáre eam.
   Because Anthony had seen Cleopatra, he thought that he loved her.

How do we know which English meaning to use for *cum*? We know merely by the general sense of the story, but when in doubt, try WHEN or WHILE first (they are the most vague, and so most likely to work). Sometimes more than one meaning would work. Try out other meanings on the examples given above.

RULES FOR USING CUM: When *cum* means *because* or *although,* always use the subjunctive.

When *cum* means *when* (*while* or *after*) sometimes use the subjunctive sometimes the indicative. There will be more on this later. Meanwhile, notice the usages in the stories.

TENSE OF SUBJUNCTIVE: If the verb of the *main clause* is a *past tense,* we will always find an *imperfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive (if any subjunctive at all). (We shall see later what happens if the main verb is other than past tense.) What is the difference between imperfect and pluperfect? Obvious—merely notice the examples:

Cum A. *pugnáret,* L. venit—When A. *was fighting,* L. came.

Cum L. *venísset,* A. misit eum—When L. *had come,* A. sent him.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Antónius Cicerónem proscrípsit, cum Cícero fuísset amícus Augústi. Cum mílites Antóni Cicerónem invenísssent, decollavérunt eum. Sed Antónius ipse non est decollátus, Antónius se interfécit. Antónius enim regínam Aegýpti víderat, quae Cleopátra vocabátur. Antónius putávit se amáre eam, sed verum amórem non hábuit. Antónius uxórem suam Octáviam dimísit. Octávius ira motus est, et bellum movit.

Erátne Cleopátra pulchra? Antónius putávit eam esse pulchram. Sed hómines in his tempóribus (id est, saéculo vigésimo) non putárent (*would not think*) eam esse pulchram. Erat enim pinguis. Puéllae quae nunc pulchrae putántur non debent esse pingues. Sed quid est verum? Vera pulchritúdo non est in córpore solo. Sed hómines in témpore Augústi putábant quod puéllae pingues erant pulchrae.

Quinque porci étiam pingues sunt. Suntne illi étiam pulchri? Quinque porci sese esse pulchros putant. Si quaéstio rogátur: "Suntne hi porci pulchri?" quid respóndent porci? Respóndent: *Oui, oui.* (Sunt enim ex Gállia).

Lépidus, cum Augústus privavísset eum omni potestáte, erat póntifex máximus. Augústus vóluit esse étiam póntifex máximus; post mortem Lépidi, pontificátum accépit. Sed non decollávit Lépidum. Nóluit hoc fácere, ne multi hómines odíssent eum. In antíquis diébus, cum Románi reges ex urbe pepulíssent, Etrúsci bellum movérunt, ut reges Romae rédderent. Sed Románi accípere reges noluérunt. Propter hanc causam fórtiter pugnavérunt. Voluérunt libertátem habére. Sed patrícii soli plenam (*full*) libertátem habuérunt. Plebeíi pugnáre debuérunt ut iura a patríciis accíperent.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

(Use *cum* wherever possible)

1. Although Cicero had given help to Augustus, Augustus did not help Cicero. 2. Anthony hated Cicero, because Cicero had made speeches against him. 3. Although Cicero was not an enemy of Rome, he was killed by the sword. 4. Although Cicero had been his friend, Augustus allowed him to be killed. 5. Anthony said that Cicero had been an enemy of Rome. 6. Since he saw that

he was defeated, Anthony killed himself. 7. Caesar gave back all rights to Cicero.

Scramble Exercise

Cum Cicerónem interfecísset, Antónius ipse interféctus est. Cum quidam vir ex Gállia dixísset necésse cavére féminas, Antónius non audívit. Antónius enim putávit se amáre Cleopátram, regínam Aegýpti. Quae fémina non re vera pulchra fuit—pinguis enim sicut quinque porci, amici nostri (*our*), fuit. Sed quidam vir dixit amórem esse caecum, et veritátem dixit. Antónius enim, classi magna facta, pugnávit cum Octávio. Classi magna victa, Antónius et Cleopátra, ne caperéntur, sese interfecérunt.

LECTIO QUADRAGESIMA QUARTA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

Augústo imperatóre, Christus natus est in Béthelehem in Iudaéa. Sed nunc tempus est ut relinquátur história Romána. Bonum erit légere históriam sacram véteris testaménti. Liber primus véteris testaménti vocátur Génesis. In hoc libro narrátur história creatiónis mundi totíus.

In princípio enim, solus Deus erat; nulla creatúra adhuc facta erat. Scriptor huius libri Genéseos scripsit de septem diébus creatiónis, vel pótius de sex diébus creatiónis—in séptimo enim die Deus requiévit ab opéribus suis. Sed sacer scriptor huius libri non vóluit dícere quod Deus re vera fecit ómnia in septem diébus. Forsan illi dies erant re vera multi anni. Sed bonum erat docére hoc modo quod fecit ómnia. Itaque, dixit quod in primo die Deus creávit coelum et terram. Sed adhuc nihil erat in terra; nulla ália creatúra erat facta. Sed Spíritus Dei erat super aquas. Deus iussit lucem fíeri. Et lux facta est. Et Deus vidit lucem esse bonam. Deus étiam separávit lucem a ténebris. Vocávit lucem diem. Et vocávit ténebras noctem. Haec Deus fecit in primo die creatiónis. Sed Deus non fecit haec cum magno labóre. Hómines, quando fáciunt ópera sua, fáciunt ea saepe cum magna difficultáte vel cum labóre magno. Deus loquitur—et res fit. Si Deus solúmmodo dicit: "Fiat"—statim factum est. Hoc modo ergo Deus fecit mundum et ómnia quae in eo sunt. Iussit: "Fiant hae res," et factae sunt. Deus étiam vidit quod ea quae fecit erant bona. Hoc necésse est, Deus enim non potest fácere malum.

relínquere-*leave*
vetus-*old*
sacer-*sacred*
adhuc-*yet*
Genéseos-*poss. sing.* of Génesis (*Greek*)
vel-*or*
pótius-*rather*
requiévit-*rested*
opus-*work*
docére-*teach*
coelum-*heaven*
spíritus-*spirit*
super-*above*
lux-*light*
separávit-*separated*
ténebrae-*darkness*
nox-*night*
solúmmodo-*only*
fiat-*let it be*

Vocabularium

docére, dócuit, doctus-*teach*
requiéscere, requiévit, requiétus-*rest*
relínquere, relíquit, relíctus-*leave*
adhuc-*yet, still*
solúmmodo-*only*
super (*with obj.*)-*above, over*
coelum, o (*but plural is masc.*; coeli)—*heaven, sky*
magna lux, luce-*light*
longa nox, nocte-*night*
magnum opus, ópere-*work*
vetus, vétere-*old*

Videamus Formas Veteres

1. Give imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of: *docére, decolláre, nolle, esse, péllere*. 2. Give pluperfect subjunctive active of: *permíttere, proscríbere, priváre, réddere, ignóscere*. 3. Give dative singular and plural of: *hic, ille, ipse, idem, quis, qui, is*. 4. Give possessive singular and plural of: *hic, ille, ipse, idem, quis, qui, is*.

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Diébus antíquis Romae, Románi multa gessérunt bella. Sed non solum antíquis diébus, sed fere omni anno Románi bellum gessérunt. Inter ália bella, bella cum Albánis habuérunt. Sed in hoc bello Albáno, duces Románi venérunt ad duces Albanórum. Románi locúti sunt: "Non est necésse ut multi viri ex exércitu Románo interficiántur, et étiam multi ex exércitu Albáno. Románi míttere volunt solúmmodo tres viros bonos et fortes in pugnam, si Albáni idem fácient." Hoc consílium Albánis bonum visum est. Itaque Románi tres viros fortes misérunt. Hi tres Románi Horátii vocabántur. Albáni étiam tres viros fortes misérunt, ut cum tribus Románis pugnárent. Hi tres Albáni Curiátii vocabántur.

In prima parte pugnae, duo ex tribus Horátiis interfécti sunt. Románi mílites qui pugnam vidébant, magno affécti sunt dolóre. Sed étiam ille unus Horátius qui

remánsit máximo affégtus est dolóre. Dixit enim, "O! O! Necésse est timére. Sed adhuc spes (*hope*) rémanet. . . . Quamquam diffícile est interfícere tres—unus solus intérfici potest!" Ítaque celériter cúrrere (*run*) coepit. Tres Curiátii venérunt ut eum cáperent. Post breve tempus, Románus vidit quod tres Curiátii adhuc sequebántur—sed sequebántur intervállis magnis (*at large intervals*). Románus ítaque stetit. Primus ex Curiátiis venit; Románus celériter eum interfécit. Sed duo álii adhuc veniébant. Románus ítaque cúrrere celériter coepit. Post breve tempus, vidit duos Curiátios sequi intervállo magno. Stetit ergo. Unus ex réliquis Curiátiis ad eum venit. Románus celériter eum interfécit. Post breve tempus álius Curiátius solus venit ad unum Románum. Románus fortis erat; étiam tértium interfécit Curiátium. Hoc modo Románi Albános vicérunt. Románi servi non sunt facti Albánis. Románi adhuc libertátem habent.

English to Latin

1. It was not necessary that many Romans and Albans be killed. 2. The Roman departed lest the Curiatii capture him and kill him. 3. Although he was alone, the Roman did not fear. 4. The Old Testament teaches that the world was created by God. 5. After He made all things, God rested on the seventh day. 6. The work of God is still being done. 7. When Christ was born, a great light came in the sky.

Scramble Exercise

Horátius unus, cum álios Horátios duos interfecíssent Curiátii, nihilóminus pugnáre vóluit. Quamquam enim in perículo sunt magno, boni Románi fortes erunt semper. Ut Roma servarétur, multi ex his fórtibus et bonis viris sunt mórtui. Hac ergo in pugna, propter unius Románi virtútem, non sunt facti Albánis servi Románi. Libértas enim Romae adhuc rémanet.

LECTIO QUADRAGESIMA QUINTA

De subiunctivo passivo in tempore plusquamperfecto
De clausulis consecutivis

Sacer scríptor docet nos quod Deus ómnia fecit. Narratiónem suam divísit in sex dies. Non est necésse crédere quod sacer scríptor vóluit dícere ómnia facta esse hoc órdine. Forsan in álio órdine ómnia facta sunt. Sed bonum est audíre narratiónem libri sacri. Dicit quod Deus fecit lucem in die primo. Quid fecit in secúndo die? Secúndo die fecit firmaméntum, id est, coelum. Deus fecit firmaméntum ut divíderet aquas quae super firmaméntum erant ab aquis quae sub firmaménto erant. Deínde Deus iussit aquas, quae sub firmaménto erant, cólligi in locum unum. Et factum est sicut Deus iússerat. Hoc modo terra facta est, et mária facta sunt. Deus étiam iussit terram proférre herbas. Et terra profert herbas sicut Deus iússerat. Haec facta sunt die tértio. Et Deus vidit ómnia esse bona quae fécerat.

Próximo die, id est, die quarto, Deus fecit solem et lunam, ut essent signa diérum et témporum et annórum. Sed adhuc erant nulla animália in toto mundo. Quinto die ergo Deus fecit animália in aquis, id est, pisces, et fecit étiam aves. Hi omnes étiam boni erant, quia Deus fecit eos. Sexto die Deus fecit animália quae vivunt in terra. Sed adhuc homo non erat factus. Deus dixit se velle fácere hóminem ad imáginem suam. Ergo fecit hóminem de limo terrae et inspirávit in fáciem eius spiráculum vitae. Et Deus vocávit hunc primum hóminem Adam.

In lingua enim Hebráica, terra vocátur "adamah." Sed primus homo Adam factus est de "adamah." Ergo nomen eius erat Adam. Sed adhuc nullus álius homo erat in terra; Adam solus erat. Deus dixit: "Non est bonum quod homo solus est." Deus ergo fecit sóciam pro Adam. Fecit primam féminam, cuius nomen erat Eva. Deus pósuit Adam et Evam in paradíso. In paradíso habuérunt ómnia bona quae voluérunt habére. Sed Deus imperávit eis ne comédérent de ligno sciéntiae boni et mali.

sub-*under*
deínde-*then, next*
proférre-*bring forth*
herba-*vegetation*
sol-*sun*
luna-*moon*
signum-*sign*
avis-*bird*
imágo-*image*
limus-*slime*
piscis-*fish*
inspirávit-*breathed in*
fácies-*face*
spiráculum-*breath*
lingua-*language*
sócia-*companion*
imperávit-*ordered*
comédere-*eat*
lignum-*wood, tree*
sciéntia-*knowledge*

VOCABULARIUM

comédere, comédit, comésus-*eat*
imperáre, ávit, átus-*command*
proférre, prótulit, prolátus-*bring forth* (*present*: prófert, próferunt—*note irregularities. All compounds of the simple verb* ferre, *to bear, are thus*)
deínde-*then, next*
sub-*under (cases are like* in—*obj. for motion; abl. for rest*)
tam-*so*
bona imágo, imágine-*image*
lignum, o-*wood*
lingua, a-*tongue, language*
luna, a-*moon*
signum, o-*sign, signal, standard*
bonus sol, sole-*sun*

INDECLINABLE NAMES: Notice the name Adam in today's story. The name Adam cannot be declined—it has the same endings in every case. But the name Eva can be declined. Soon we shall meet other indeclinable names, such as Cain and Abel. But if we watch the way they are used in the stories we can catch on easily; there is no need to memorize any. Some names will be declinable, but have unusual combinations; thus, we will see the name Abraham, which has the following forms: *Ábraham, Ábrahae, Ábrahae, Ábraham, Ábraham*. But again, just watch how such names are used, and they will cause no trouble.

NUNC COGITEMUS

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE: To form it is simple: we merely use *esset* or *essent* (imperfect sub-

junctive of *esse*) with the perfect passive participle. Thus:

factus esset   facti essent

RESULT (CONSECUTIVE) CLAUSES: The usual form in English is:

He was so good that all loved him.
Tam bonus erat ut omnes amárent eum.

Notice that the English form does not use *may* or *might* combinations, as purpose clauses do (but the negative for result clauses is *ut . . . non*, not *ne*). Notice the word *so* (*tam*) in the example—it does not always come in result clauses, but is frequent. Or some similar expression is often used. Another form often seen is this:

Áccidit ut Caesar veníret in castra.
It happened that Caesar came to the camp.

Note here we have no word *so*, or anything like it—yet it is clearly *result*. In case of doubt insert the words "so that as a result"—if they fit, it is a *result clause* (but if they do not fit, it still might be one, like the *áccidit ut* type).

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Cum ómnia animália facta éssent, Deus hóminem creávit. Deus tam bonus erat ut ad imáginem suam hóminem fáceret. Sacra Scriptúra dixit Deum fecísse hóminem ex limo terrae. Estne ergo verum quod Deus manus duas habet, et limum ex terra accépit, et imáginem ex limo fecit et spíritum in eum inspirávit?

Sanctus Augustínus dixit quod Deus manus duas non habet; Deus enim spíritus est. Et spíritus manus non habet. Spíritus corpus non habet. Ergo, dicit Sanctus Augustínus, necésse est dícere Deum re vera hóminem fecísse, sed non est necésse dícere Deum phýsice (*physically*) fecísse imáginem ex limo et inspiravísse in imáginem ut homo fíeret.

Sacer enim scríptor huius libri scriptúrae docére vóluit hómines quod Deus hóminem fecit. Simíliter, Deus féminam fecit, et eam ex primo hómine fecit. Sed non est necésse dícere Deum phýsice, mánibus phýsicis, fecísse haec ómnia; Deus sicut iam dictum est, manus phýsicas non habet. Deus enim spíritus est.

Quidam hómines in his tempóribus dicunt hóminem descendísse ex símio (*ape*). Estne hoc verum? Adhuc non clarum est. Deus enim hoc modo hóminem fácere póterat, si vóluit. Deus permíttere pótuit ut corpus hóminis fíeret ex córpore símii. Deínde spirítum inspiráre in hoc corpus símium pótuit, ut homo fíeret homo, habens corpus animále, et ánimam (*soul*) spiritálem. Quidam viri hódie putant quod iam probátum est hóminem venísse ex símio; sed veritátem non dicunt: possíbile est, sed nondum probátum est.

Verum est quod quidam hómines agunt sicut símii agunt. Hoc non probat hóminem descendísse ex símio, sed fere probat quosdam *nondum* descendísse.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. Catiline was so bad that Cicero did not love him. 2. Caesar forgave Cicero, although he had fought against him. 3. When all things had been made, God saw that they were good. 4. God ordered the earth to bring forth vegetation. 5. When the sun and moon had been made, there were still no animals on the earth.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Herbis die tértio creátis, die quarto solem et lunam fecit Deus. Hos fecit ut in caelo essent, ut lucem toti darent mundo. Multis ítaque bonis creátis, nulla adhuc in mundum vénerat creatúra quae Deum bona voluntáte amáre posset. De terra ergo primum creávit Deus hóminem; et e primo hómine féminam. Quos in paradísum deínde pósuit Deus.

LECTIO QUADRAGESIMA SEXTA

De subiunctivo activo et passivo in tempore praesenti

Cum creavísset primos hómines, Adam et Evam, Deus imperávit eis ne comédеrent de fructu ligni sciéntiae boni et mali. Hoc lignum stetit in médio paradíso. Adam et Eva obedivérunt Deo. Sed non semper obedivérunt.

Quodam die, diábolus venit ad Evam. Eva non erat cum Adam illo témpore. Adam enim erat in ália parte paradísi. Eva non tímuit diábolum. Diábolus enim venit ad eam in forma serpéntis. Diábolus ergo, sub forma serpéntis, locútus est cum Eva, et interrogávit eam num Deus imperavísset eis ne comédеrent ex omni ligno quod in paradíso erat. Eva respóndit quod licébat eis comédere ex omni ligno—sed non ex ligno sciéntiae boni et mali. Eva étiam dixit quod Deus promíserat eis mortem si non obedírent. Diábolus deínde respóndit: "Deus non dixit veritátem. Deus enim novit quod si homo cómedet ex hoc ligno, fiet sicut Deus. Homo enim sciet bonum et malum. Homo non moriétur si cómedet ex hoc ligno."

Eva crédidit diábolo. Vidit enim fructum huius ligni esse pulchrum. Accépit ergo de frúctibus huius ligni et comédit. Deínde Eva dedit partem huius fructus ad Adam. Adam étiam comédit. Sed diábolus non díxerat veritátem. Adam et Eva non facti sunt sicut dei; re vera sensérunt se esse nudos, et timuérunt.

Audivérunt vocem Dei in paradíso. Deus vocábat eos. Voce Dei audíta, Adam et Eva conáti sunt abscóndere se. Sed Deus invénit eos. Nihil enim abscónditum est a Deo. Deus interrogávit eos ubi essent. Adam respóndit quod timébat cum nudus esset. (Continuábitur)

obedívit-*obeyed*
diábolus-*devil*
serpens-*snake*
interrogáre-*question*
num-*whether*
crédidit-*believed*
fructus-*fruit*
sensit-*felt*
nudus-*naked*
vox-*voice*
abscóndere-*hide*

VOCABULARIUM

abscóndere, abscóndit, abscónditus-*hide*
crédere, crédidit, créditus-*believe* (María credit Marco: *Mary believes Marcus.*)
interrogáre, ávit, átus-*question, ask*
obedíre, obedívit, obedítus-*obey* (*with dat.*)
sentíre, sensit, sensus-*feel, realize, perceive*
num-*whether*
diábolus, o-*devil*
magna vox, voce-*voice*

NUNC COGITEMUS

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE: Study these forms:

1.	2.	3.	3.	4.
amet ament	téneat téneant	ponat ponant	cápiat cápiant	aúdiat aúdiant

Notice that they all have the same *-t* and *-nt* as in the indicative. But the *vowels* are different. Notice that the first conjugation has *e*, while the others have *a*. The verbs that have *-iunt* for the third present indicative, keep the *i* in the subjunctive: *-iat, -iant*. But we would not expect the *e* before the *a* in the second conjugation. The easiest way is merely to memorize the above set of forms.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE: Simply add *-ur* to the above endings:

parétur	paréntur
habeátur	habeántur
ponátur	ponántur
capiátur	capiántur

USE OF THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE: We have seen that in dependent clauses, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive appear only when the principal verb is in a past tense. The present subjunctive appears only after a

present or future tense of the main verb (there is only one more tense of the subjunctive, the perfect, which we shall see later—then there will be a pair, present and perfect, when the main verb is present or future—and another pair, imperfect and pluperfect, when the main verb is in any past tense). But the present subjunctive also has another use:

HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE:

Véniat—*Let him come* (*or May he come.*)

Audiátur—*Let him be heard* (*or May he be heard*).

Notice that this use is *independent*—it may be the main verb. Remember the translations given above. It would be good to memorize a pair of samples. If we need a negative, it is *ne*: Ne véniant . . . *Let them not come*.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS: Notice this example from the reading above:

Interrogávit eam *num* Deus *imperavísset*. . . .

He asked her *whether* God *had ordered*. . . .

We call it an indirect question because of the *question word* "Whether." But we call it an *indirect* question, because it does not ask a question—only reports (or suggests) one. But there is no problem about it; we mention it merely to state that indirect questions most commonly have the subjunctive. But sometimes a Late Latin writer will use the indicative. Find another example in the story above.

SUBJUNCTIVE OF IRREGULAR VERBS:

sit	sint
possit	possint
velit	velint
nolit	nolint

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

In inítio ómnium rerum, Deus coelum et terram creávit. Quo modo omnes res creávit? Deus locútus est. Deus dixit: "Fiat terra." Et terra facta est. Étiam iussit: "Fiat lux." Et lux facta est. Secúndo die ímperat ut sit firmaméntum, id est, coelum. Et coelum factum est. Tértio die Deus dixit: "Véniant aquae in unum locum, ne terra semper sit in aquis." Aquae ergo in unum locum venérunt, et fecérunt mária. Deus étiam dixit: "Próferat terra herbas." Et terra prótulit herbas. Dixit étiam: "Herbae fáciant fructus suos." Et factum est. Étiam ímperat ut sol et luna sint in coelis, ut dies et nox dividántur. Deus ímperat aquis ut próferant pisces. Et pisces in aquis coepérunt esse. Ímperat ut aves fiant. Et factae sunt.

Deus étiam primum hóminem, cuius nomen erat Adam, fecit. Étiam féminam, uxórem pro Adam, creávit. Nomen huius féminae erat Eva. Deus eos in paradísum pósuit. Permíttit eis ut ex omni ligno paradísi cómedant, sed non permíttit ut cómedant ex ligno sciéntiae boni et mali. Quodam ergo die diábolus ad Evam in paradíso venit. Intérrogat num permittátur eis ut cómedant ex omni ligno paradísi. Eva dicit quod permíttitur comédere ex omni ligno, sed non ex ligno sciéntiae boni et mali, ne moriántur. Deínde diábolus dicit Deum veritátem non dixísse. Sed Deus non potest non dícere veritátem. Diábolus dícere id quod non verum est potest. Id quod non verum est vocátur "mendácium." Et diábolus est pater mendácii. Eva non obédit Deo; cómedit ex ligno sciéntiae. Adam idem facit. Sed aúdiunt vocem Dei interrogántis eos ubi sint. Voce Dei audíta, timent respondére.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. Let them obey God, lest they die. 2. The devil asks whether they know good and evil. 3. He does not permit them to eat it. 4. He asks why Adam and Eve are not obeying God. 5. May they never (*numquam*) believe the devil. 6. Let them not attempt to hide from God. 7. Let them not eat of the tree of knowledge of good and evil.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Primis homínibus iam creátis ímperat Deus ne ex frúctibus ligni sciéntiae boni et mali cómedant. Cum iussis Dei obedírent Adam et Eva, in paradíso habéntes bona multa remansérunt. Sed serpens qui olim ex coelis supérbia cecidísset eos temptávit. "Hómines erunt sicut dii," dixit sub forma serpéntis diábolus.

LECTIO QUADRAGESIMA SEPTIMA

De prima et secunda persona in subiunctivo activo

Adam et Eva non obedíverant Deo. Propter hanc causam timuérunt, et conáti sunt abscóndere se a Deo. Sed Deus omnípotens est; tanta est potéstas eius ut nulla creatúra possit abscóndere se a sciéntia Dei. Deus ergo interrogávit Adam cur non obedivísset. Adam dixit quod fémina déderat ei malum, id est, fructum ligni sciéntiae boni et mali. Deus ergo interrogávit féminam, id est, Evam, cur comedísset malum. Eva respóndit se comedísse propter serpéntem. Dixit enim serpéntem fefellísse ipsam. Serpens enim díxerat: "Homo fiet sicut Deus si cómedet de fructu huius ligni sciéntiae boni et mali."

Deus ergo éxpulit Adam et Evam ex paradíso. Sed promísit Redemptórem, id est Christum. "Ille Redémptor enim cónteret caput serpéntis." Et étiam quaedam fémina promíttitur a Deo, quae semper inimíca erit serpénti. Haec fémina est Virgo María, quae est mater Christi. Ergo Deus, propter suam magnam misericórdiam, dedit spem prímis homínibus étiam post peccátum originále.

Adam et Eva habuérunt multos fílios et fílias. Inter hos erant Cain et Abel. Cain erat agrícola, et labor eius erat in agris. Accépit multos fructus terrae. Ex his frúctibus, Cain offerébat sacrifícia Deo. Abel autem erat pastor. Abel ergo offerébat animália Deo in sacrifíciis. Probabíliter Abel offerébat agnos. Sacrifícia Abel placuérunt Deo. Sed sacrifícia Cain non placuérunt Deo. Cain ergo motus est ira.

Quodam die Cain rogávit Abel ut iret in agros secum. Abel ergo in agros iit cum Cain. Sed cum essent soli in agris, Cain interfécit Abel. Deus ergo vocávit Cain, et rogávit ubi Abel esset. Cain dixit se nescíre. Sed Cain non póterat fállere Deum. Cain ergo iit in exílium.

omnípotens-*omnipotent*
tantus-*so great*
cur-*why*
malum-*apple*
feféllit-*deceive*
contérere-*crush*
virgo-*virgin*
mater-*mother*
spes (5th)-*hope*
agrícola-*farmer*
offérre-*offer*
pastor-*herdsman*
secum-*cum se*
nescíre-*not know*

Vocabularium

fállere, feféllit, falsus-*deceive*
offérre, óbtulit, oblátus-*offer* (*compare* proférre *in Lesson 45*)
bonus agrícola, a-*farmer*
malum, o-*apple*
bona mater, matre-*mother*
bonus pastor, pastóre-*shepherd, herdsman*
tantus, a, um-*so great, so large*
bona virgo, vírgine-*virgin, maiden*

Nunc Cogitemus

Preview of all First and Second Person Active Forms: It is very easy to learn to RECOGNIZE the first and second person active in indicative and subjunctive forms except for the perfect indicative. There is a simple set of personal endings. Learn these endings at once—they have many uses. Learn first to *recognize* a form when you see it in the book—gradually you will learn to *make* forms. Here are the endings:

	Singular	*Plural*
1.	m *or* o (*I*)	mus (*we*)
2.	s (*you*)	tis (*you*)
3.	t (*He, she, it*)	nt (*they*)

Most of these endings merely substitute for the *t* of the third singular. We shall see the application of these endings a bit at a time, including the distinction of the *o* and *m* in the first person (all but present indicative and the future indicative of first and second conjugation use *m*).

But now we apply the new endings to: ALL ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVES: Here we merely take the third singular

form, which we already know, and apply a magic stick, thus:

Present

	m		m
	s		s
ame	t	tenea	t
	mus		mus
	tis		tis
	nt		nt

Imperfect		Pluperfect	
	m		m
	s		s
amare	t	amavisse	t
	mus		mus
	tis		tis
	nt		nt

And so on for absolutely any active subjunctives, of all tenses. Pretty simple!

SUBJUNCTIVE OF IRREGULAR VERBS: It is really completely regular. Just take the third singular—*sit, possit, velit, nolit*—and use the above stick.

SECOND PLURAL PRONOUN: *vos, vestrum, vobis, vos, vobis* (you, of you, to you, you, etc.) (The adjective is: *vester, vestra, vestrum*—"your"—referring to more than one person).

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Deus díxerat ad Adam et Evam: Ne comedátis ex fructu ligni sciéntiae boni et mali. Sed Adam et Eva Deo non obedivérunt. Serpens Evam feféllit dicens, "Si ex hoc ligno cómedes, eris sicut Deus." Et Eva feféllit Adam. Deus ergo vocávit Adam et Evam, et dixit: "Necésse est ut púniam vos." Malum enim fecérunt non obediéntes Deo. Malum enim erat comédere malum ex ligno sciéntiae boni et mali. Comédere malum non erat malum in se, sed malum erat non obedíre. Deus ergo interrogávit: "Cur non obediebátis?" Adam dixit, "Diábolus locútus est tam bene (*well*) ut crederémus." Étiam Eva conáta est excusáre se. Sed excusatiónes non erant bonae; peccátum commíttere non debuérunt. Peccátum originále commisérunt. "Ante hoc peccátum," dixit Deus, "non erat necésse ut vos discederétis ex hac vita per portas mortis, sed nunc mortem vidébitis." Adam ergo interrogávit Deum, "Vidébimus mortem, quia peccávimus. Sed videbúntne étiam fílii nostri (*our*) mortem?" Deus dixit, "Útique—et vos et fílii vestri debétis mori. Et nunc, discedátis ex paradíso." Deus étiam ángelo magno imperávit ut staret ad portam ne Adam et Eva possent rursus veníre in paradísum. Deus dixit ángelo, "Stes in hoc loco, ne hómines possint veníre in paradísum."

Cain et Abel fuérunt fílii Adam et Evae. Nati sunt in primis diébus mundi. Sed étiam erant multi álii fílii Adam et Evae. Scriptúra enim Sacra non dat nómina ómnium hóminum qui in illis tempóribus nati sunt. Non enim necésse est ut ómnia illa nómina sciámus. Et Scriptúra id quod non necésse est non dicit. Sanctus Augustínus dicit quod Sacra Scriptúra vult osténdere quod erant duae urbes; una est urbs Dei, id est, urbs bonórum hóminum, qui Deum amant. Sed áltera urbs est urbs huius mundi. In hac urbe sunt hómines mali, qui se ipsos plus quam (*more than*) Deum amant. Sanctus Augustínus étiam multa ália de his duábus úrbibus dixit. Sed non est necésse ut ómnia scribámus in hac lectióne.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. He is sending you (plural) that you may capture Catiline. 2. Since (*cum*) you had committed a sin, God sent you out of paradise. 3. The devil speaks so well that we believe him. 4. May you not believe the devil. 5. God's power is so great that you cannot hide yourselves from Him. 6. Cain cries out with so loud a voice that we hear him. 7. Since Abel was a shepherd, he offered lambs.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Ómnium qui nunc in terra vivunt hóminum mater Eva est, et pater Adam. Ut fíerent sicut dii, Deo non obedivérunt. Sed feféllit eos diábolus. Oblátum ab uxóre malum Adam comédit: quam propter causam a paradíso missi sunt. His factis, Deus adhuc eis misericórdiam dare volébat. Redémptor ítaque promíttitur a Deo.

LECTIO QUADRAGESIMA OCTAVA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

Adam et Eva habuérunt multos fílios et fílias. Et fílii eórum habuérunt étiam multos fílios et fílias. Multi ex his vixérunt per annos plúrimos. Sed non omnes hómines boni erant; plúrimi erant mali, et peccáta multa commisérunt contra Deum. Illi hómines erant magni córpore, sed parvi virtúte. Deus ergo irátus est illis et vóluit delére genus humánum de terra.

Sed nihilóminus unus homo erat qui plácuit Deo. Ille homo vocabátur Noe. Noe erat vir iustus in ómnibus opéribus suis. Noe erat pater trium filiórum. Nómina horum filiórum sunt: Sem, Cham, et Japheth. Sed quia Noe erat iustus, et plácuit Deo, Deus non irátus est ei, nec irátus est fíliis Noe propter Noe. Ítaque Deus dixit Noe: "Finis univérsae carnis est in mente mea. Omnes enim hómines facti sunt péssimi. Necésse est ergo ut déleam eos. Ítaque magnum dilúvium véniet super omnem terram. Omnes hómines delebúntur. Sed étiam ómnia animália in quibus est spíritus vitae non iam vivent; ómnia delebúntur dilúvio."

"Sed fac arcam tibi et fíliis tuis et uxóribus filiórum. Et duc in arcam animália ex ómnibus genéribus animálium ut servári possint in arca." Noe ergo fecit ómnia quae Deus imperáverat ei. Deínde Deus dixit ei: "Vénias in arcam cum fíliis tuis et cum ómnibus animálibus sicut imperátum est tibi. Post septem dies enim imber máximus véniet super omnem terram. Et omnia animália quae sunt super terram, ínsuper et omnes hómines delebúntur de terra."

Noe ergo venit in arcam, et cum eo venérunt tres fílii eius, id est Sem, Cham, et Japheth, et cum eis venérunt uxóres eórum. Ínsuper venérunt in arcam animália omnis géneris, sicut Deus imperáverat Noe. (Continuábitur cras)

plúrimus-*very many*
commísit-*committed*
corpus-*body*
irátus est-*was angry*
genus-*race, kind*
caro-*flesh*
mens-*mind*
péssimus-*very evil*
dilúvium-*flood*
spíritus-*breath*
fac-*make!* (*a command*)
arca-*ark*
tibi-*for yourself*
tuus-*your*
duc-*lead!* (*a command*)
imber-*rain*

VOCABULARIUM

committere, commísit, commíssus-*commit, intrust*

fac—*imperative singular* (*the form that gives a command*) *of* fácere (*The plural is regular, as we shall see later. There are four irregular imperative singulars*: dic, duc, fac, fer. *Last is from* ferre, *bear, the simple verb from which come* offérre *and* proférre).

irásci, irátus est-*be angry at* (*with dative*—María iráscitur Marco: *Mary is angry at* [*with*] *Marcus.*)

bona caro, carne-*flesh, meat*

magnum corpus, córpore-*body*

dilúvium, o-*flood, deluge*

bonum genus, génere-*kind, race*

bonus imber, imbre-*rain*

mea mens, mente-*mind* (*poss. pl.*—méntium)

péssimus, a, um-*very bad, worst*

plúrimus, a, um-*very many, most*

VIDEAMUS FORMAS VETERES

1. How do you say: Let us . . . eat, bring forth, believe, obey, deceive? How do you say: Let me . . . eat, bring forth, believe, obey, deceive? 2. How do you say, in subjunctive: It is . . . commanded, hidden, asked (*interrogáre*), felt, not known? Make the same forms plural. 3. How do you say, in subjunctive: You (both singular and plural) . . . eat, command, believe, question, feel, deceive, say, do?

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

"Adam et Eva, vos tam mali erátis ut peccátum primum committerétis. Vocámus hoc peccátum peccátum originále. Sed non debétis desperáre. Deus enim tantam habet misericórdiam ut vobis Redemptórem promíttat. Multi ex fíliis vestris mali erunt—non omnes, sed plúrimi." Inter eos, Cain interfécit Abel, et álii álios interfecérunt. Ítaque témpore Noe, fere omnes hómines mali

erant. Noe et fílii eius dixérunt: "Ne committámus peccátum. Deus bonus est. Ne faciámus ea quae ille non amat." "Noe, Sacra Scriptúra dicit vos esse iustos. Ergo habétis omnes virtútes. Quando enim Sacra Scriptúra dicit hóminem esse iustum, signíficat eum omnes habére virtútes. Ítaque in Scriptúra 'homo iustus' hóminem bonum signíficat. Semper faciámus ómnia quae Deus vult."

Scriptúra lóquitur eódem modo de Sancto Ioseph, qui erat pater putatívus (*foster-father*) Christi. Scriptúra dicit simplíciter (*simply*) quod Ioseph iustus erat, et non est necésse ut áliud dicámus de eo.

Noe erat tam iustus ut in arca servarétur. Deus dixit ei, "Peccáta hóminum tanta sunt ut necésse sit delére eos."

Quo modo fáciet Deus dilúvium? Magnos mittet imbres super omnem terram. Sed étiam fáciet ut mare super terram véniat. Hoc modo factum est dilúvium magnum. Ómnia animália deléta sunt hoc dilúvio. Suntne pisces deléti? Non. Deus enim dixit necésse esse delére ómnia animália in quibus est spíritus vitae. Sed in píscibus non est spíritus vitae. Pisces sunt semper sub aquis. Aqua pisces non delébit. Pisces aquam amant.

Audiamus de Amicis Veteribus

Sed non ómnia animália amant aquam. Quinque enim porci dicunt, "Nullo modo amámus aquam: lutum (*mud*) amámus." "Sed amíci! Nonne étiam aquam amátis? Quia sine aqua non potéstis habére lutum." Unus ex porcis dixit, "Non dícimus quod amámus aquam simplíciter—amámus enim aquam solúmmodo quando in terra est, ut lutum possímus fácere ex terra et aqua." Sed amíci quinque non erant in dilúvio. Nondum in hac vita erant in illo témpore; álii porci erant in hac vita in témpore dilúvii. Hi erant avúnculi porcórum quinque. Multi ex antíquis porcis deléti sunt in dilúvio—et mors terríbilis est porco deléri in aquis! Sed duo porci erant in arca, et non interfécti sunt.

English to Latin

1. Let us come into the ark. 2. God is so good that He loves all men. 3. Christ is the Good Shepherd, and He will die for the lambs. 4. The human race was so evil that God was angry at them. 5. He sent great rains to destroy them. 6. Let us make a ship for Noe and his sons. 7. It happened that men were very bad in the days of Noe.

Scramble Exercise

Vobis et fíliis navem magnam, quae arca erit, fac—haec dixit Deus Noe. Cum enim péssima peccáta peccavíssent hómines fere omnes, ut eos delére, dilúvium misit Deus. E coelis magni venérunt imbres et ex mari aquae multae. Irascebátur enim Deus ira nímia propter pessimórum hóminum peccáta. Noe autem et fíliis eius, Deus, cum boni essent, misericórdiam dedit.

LECTIO QUADRAGESIMA NONA

De prima et secunda persona in indicativo imperfecto et plusquamperfecto

Cum Noe et fílii eius et uxóres filiórum eius et animália veníssent in arcam, Deus clausit portam arcae. Deínde Deus apéruit coelos, et misit imbres magnos in terram. Étiam fontes maris rupti sunt et aquae maris venérunt super terram. Dilúvium máximum factum est. Hómines térriti sunt, et loca alta inveníre conáti sunt ut ab aquis servaréntur. Sed aquae magnae semper invenérunt hómines. Et non potuérunt evádere. Noe autem et qui cum eo erant, serváti sunt in arca. Aqua venit étiam super montes altos. Nemo hóminum servátus est nisi ei qui in arca erant cum Noe. Étiam ómnia animália in quibus erat spíritus vitae interfécti sunt in aquis. Sed animália quae in arca erant serváta sunt. Imbres et dilúvium venérunt super terram per quadragínta dies. Et aquae ascendérunt super terram centum et quinquagínta dies (*150*).

Deínde Deus recordátus est Noe et ómnium qui cum eo erant in arca. Et Deus misit ventum super aquas. Post dies centum quinquagínta, aquae coepérunt mínui super terram. Deus étiam clausit fontes maris, et non iam misit imbres de coelis. Et aquae revérsae sunt de terra, eúntes et redeúntes. In mense séptimo, in die vigésimo séptimo mensis, arca requiévit super montes Arméniae. In décimo mense, montes coepérunt vidéri. Et post quadragínta dies, Noe apéruit fenéstram in arca, et misit corvum ex arca. Étiam dimísit colúmbam ex arca. Sed colúmba non invénit locum ubi requiésceret pes eius—colúmba ergo revérsa est ad Noe in arcam. Sed post septem dies, Noe rursus dimísit colúmbam. Colúmba revérsa est ferens ramum olívae. Noe ergo intelléxit quod póterat stare in terra. Ítaque venit ex arca.

clausit-*closed*
apéruit-*opened*
fons-*fountain*
ruptus-*broken*
térritus-*terrified*
altus-*high*
nisi-*unless, except*
ascéndit-*rose*
recordátus-*remembered*
ventus-*wind*
minúere-*diminish*
eúntes-*from* ire
fenéstra-*window*
corvus-*raven*
colúmba-*dove*
ferre-*bear, bring*
ramus-*branch*
olíva-*olive, olive tree*
intellégere-*understand*

Vocabularium

claúdere, clausit, clausus-*close*
ferre, tulit, latus-*bear, bring* (*forms like* proférre)
recordári, recordátus est-*remember* (*with poss. case*)
rúmpere, rupit, ruptus-*break*
terrére, térruit, térritus-*terrify*
cur-*why*
nisi-*unless, except, if . . . not*
altus, a, um-*high, deep*
magnus fons, fonte (*poss. pl.*-ium) *fountain, spring*
ventus, o-*wind*

Nunc Cogitemus

First and Second Person in Imperfect and Pluperfect Indicative: To make these forms on all active subjunctives, we use a magic stick. Now, for the imperfect and pluperfect indicative, we stick to the same stick—no trouble at all.

Imperfect

	m		m
	s		s
amaba	t	teneba	t
	mus		mus
	tis		tis
	nt		nt

Pluperfect

	m		m
	s		s
amavera	t	tenuera	t
	mus		mus
	tis		tis
	nt		nt

And so on—for absolutely any imperfect or pluperfect active indicative.

SECOND SINGULAR PRONOUN: tu, tui, tibi, te, te (you, of you, to you, you, etc.).

SECOND SINGULAR ADJECTIVE (to refer to *only one person's possessions*): tuus, a, um (your).

FIRST AND SECOND PERSON OF IRREGULAR VERBS: Completely regular in imperfect and pluperfect: Just take the *third singular forms*—erat, fúerat, póterat, potúerat, volébat, nolébat, volúerat, nolúerat—and *use the same stick* as for any other verbs.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Deus interrogávit Adam, "Cur abscondébas te?" Et Adam respóndit, "Hoc faciébam quia timébam." Sed Adam étiam dícere coáctus est quod malum coméderat. Dixit enim Evae, "Tu dabas mihi (*to me*) malum." Et Eva serpéntem accusávit. Serpens autem álium accusáre non póterat—serpens erat diábolus ipse. "O Eva, quare credébas diábolo?" "Quia diábolus dixit quod homo fiet sicut Deus si ex hoc ligno cómedet." "Sed Eva, nonne scire póteras quod diábolus id quod non verum est dícere amat? Deus díxerat tibi, 'Ne cómedas ex hoc ligno.' Semper fácere debes id quod Deus tibi ímperat. Deus bonus est. Sed Deus Redemptórem tibi promíttet. Nunc, si fácies id quod Deus imperábit, Deus tibi peccátum tuum ignóscet. Ne ália peccáta commíttas!"

Sed hómines boni esse non amant. Ítaque alter álterum interfécit, id est, Cain Abel interfécit. Cain enim et Abel sacrifícia Deo offerébant. Sed sacrifícia Cain Deo non placuérunt, sicut sacrifícia Abel placuérunt. Cain ítaque dixit Deo, "Cur non amábas sacrifícium quod offerébam?" Et Deus dixit, "Quia tu non habébas cor (*heart*) bonum." His audítis, Cain rogávit Abel veníre in agros secum. Dixit, "Vénias in agros mecum (*with me*)." Et cum in agros veníssent, et soli essent, Cain interfécit Abel. Sed Cain sese abscóndere non póterat. Deus enim ómnia videt. Deus ergo eum interrogávit, "Ubi est Abel?" Et Cain respóndit, "Estne necésse ut deféndam Abel?" Et Deus dixit: "Putábas quod nemo te vidébat cum Abel interfíceres—sed vidébam te. Deus enim semper ómnia videt. Non licébat tibi interfícere Abel. Ergo—discédas ex hac terra! Sed ne tímeas. Nemo enim te interfíciet. Accípies signum, ne homo te interfíciat."

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. Why did you come into the fields with him? 2. He is sending you in order that you may bring water. 3. Noe, God commands you that you make an ark. 4. Let us come into the ark with Noe. 5. Men were so evil that they could not hear these words. 6. Noe, you were making a ship (so) that you might sail in it in the flood. 7. May you have many good things with you.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Aquis magnis e coelo et mari veniéntibus super terram omnem, multi hómines locum in quo servári possent inveníre conáti sunt, nec póterant. Super omnes enim montes venérunt magni aquae dilúvii. Qui in arca erant serváti sunt—ex áliis nemo. Post dies multos, Deus imbres non iam misit, et eórum qui cum Noe in arca erant recordátus est ut ex arca eos dúceret.

LECTIO QUINQUAGESIMA

De prima et secunda persona in indicativo perfecto

Cum aquae discessíssent de terra, Noe et fílii eius, et uxóres filiórum eius egréssi sunt ex arca. Sed étiam animália egréssa sunt. Et Noe fecit altáre Dómino. Deínde accépit multa animália ex eis quae fúerant in arca secum (ómnia enim ália animália in quibus erat spíritus vitae interfécta erant dilúvio)—et óbtulit sacrifícia Deo. Sacrifícia Noe placuérunt Deo. Dóminus ergo promísit Noe quod numquam post illud tempus dilúvium delébit omnem terram et ómnia vivéntia quae in ea sunt. Deus étiam dedit signum promíssionis suae, "Verum est quod imbres vénient de coelis. Sed ut sciátis quod numquam dilúvium delébit omnem terram, arcus meus erit in coelis post imbres. Hoc modo scies Deum semper recordári promissiónis suae."

Post dilúvium, omnis terra habébat solúmmodo linguam unam. Sed cum hómines iter fácerent ad orientáles partes mundi, venérunt in terram Sénaar, et voluérunt remanére ibi. Coepérunt ítaque aedificáre turrem máximam. Hi enim hómines supérbi erant. Et Dóminus descéndit ut vidéret turrem et civitátem quam aedificábant. Sed ópera horum hóminum non placuérunt Deo—confidébant enim in se, et in potestáte sua. Sed non debuérunt confídere in se. Homo enim non est tam fortis ut possit vívere et ágere sine Dómino. Propter hanc causam, ópera horum non placuérunt Deo. Ítaque Deus punívit eos. Effécit ut unus homo non posset intellígere álios hómines. Mutávit linguas eórum. Linguis mutátis, magna confúsio erat in illo loco. Multae enim linguae audiebántur, sed nemo póterat álios intellígere. Ítaque hómines discessérunt ex illo loco, et non iam voluérunt aedificáre turrem.

egréssus-*go out*
altáre-*altar*
Dóminus-*Lord*
numquam-*never*
arcus-*bow*
recordári-*remember*
turris-*tower*
cívitas-*city*
confídere-*trust*
effícere-*bring about*
mutávit-*changed*

VOCABULARIUM

confídere, confísus est-*trust in* (confídere *is half-deponent—that is, all forms made from the first part are normal, others are deponent*)
[egrediúntur], gredi, gressus est-*go out*
mutáre, ávit, átus-*change*
numquam-*never*
magnum altáre, i-*altar*
arcus, u-*bow*
magna cívitas, civitáte-*city, citizenship*
dóminus, o-*lord, master*
magna turris, i-*tower*

NUNC COGITEMUS

FIRST AND SECOND PERSON OF PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE: The perfect requires its own set of endings—a different magic stick. You already know *amávit* and *amavérunt*. The others are also easy to learn.

Now try any verb:

amav | i
amav | isti
amav | it
amav | imus
amav | istis
amav | erunt

(I loved have loved did love, etc.)

THE IRREGULAR VERBS: Use the same endings on: *fuit, pótuit, vóluit, nóluit.* (All irregular verbs are normal in all forms made on their second and third parts).

FIRST PLURAL PRONOUN: *nos, nostrum, nobis, nos, nobis* (Why ask permission of the five pigs for this one?)

First Plural Adjective: *noster, nostra, nostrum*—our.

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Quodam die magíster in schola nos interrogávit, "Ubi est terra Sénaar?" Díximus quod Sénaar est in parte orientáli mundi. Noverámus enim quod non in Palestína est. Hebraéi in illa terra (id est, in Palestína) erant. Sed Sénaar est ad oriéntem a Palestína: in Mesopotámia est. "Sed dicas nobis quae sit significátio huius nóminis 'Mesopotámia.' " Mesopotámia est nomen Graecum. In lingua Latína dícitur: In médio inter flúmina. Haec est significátio nóminis "Mesopotámia." In Graeca enim lingua, *potamós* est flumen et *mesos* est médius. Sed, ut dicátur simplíciter, Sénaar idem est ac (*as*) Bábylon. "Nonne tu dixísti nobis, magíster, quod Bábylon in lingua Hebráica signíficat confúsio?" Útique, hoc dixi. In Babylónia enim áccidit confúsio linguárum. Sed in lingua hóminum qui in Babylónia erant, nomen "Bábylon" signíficat "porta Dei." Ítaque, quamquam Babylónii (*the Babylonians*) urbem suam vocavérunt "porta Dei," Scriptúra dicit quod mélius est vocáre eam "confúsio," propter confusiónem linguárum. Re vera, scriptor Sacrae Scriptúrae fecit lusum verbórum (*a play on words*).

"Estne necésse crédere quod dilúvium super totum mundum venit—id est, étiam super Américam Septentrionálem et Meridionálem, et super Áfricam, et super omnes álias terras?" Homo potest crédere quod hoc re vera áccidit, si vult. Sed Sacra Scriptúra hoc non dicit. Scriptúra enim dicit quod dilúvium super totam terram venit: et quaéstio est; quid signíficat *tota terra*? Forsan *tota terra* signíficat solúmmodo totam terram Mesopotámiae. Hoc non certum est.

English to Latin

1. What did you do when the flood came? 2. We came into the ark. 3. Why did you want to build that tower? 4. God is so good that you should trust Him. 5. We have built an altar. 6. We have come to build the tower. 7. We asked why you had changed your plans.

Scramble Exercise

Noe, tu et fílii tui Deo sacrifícium offerátis. Qui enim omnes álios in aquis delévit, te et tuos servávit. Ut servári possétis, tibi ut arcam fáceres imperávit. In quam cum venissétis, vos ab omni perículo liberávit Deus. In eo confidátis in quo misericórdia magna est. Et cum vidébitur in coelis arcus, in mentem véniat vestram promíssio, quam Deus vobis dedit.

LECTIO QUINQUAGESIMA PRIMA

De prima et secunda persona in indicativo praesenti

Dilúvio finíto, et turri Babylónica relícta, hómines discessérunt in multas terras. Sed memória dilúvii non ita térruit eos ut non commítterent multa peccáta. Ínsuper facti sunt peióres quam fúerant ante dilúvium. Sed Deus promíserat quod numquam dilúvium deléret omne genus humánum. Et Deus semper veritátem dicit. Hómines saepe dicunt hoc et fáciunt illud, sed Deus verus est.

Sed non omnes hómines péssimi facti sunt. Quidam viri adhuc servi Dei erant. Inter hos bonos viros erat Abram. Non clarum est in quo anno, vel étiam in quo saéculo dilúvium áccidit. Quidam putant dilúvium accidísse in millenário sexto vel quinto ante Christum. Álii putant id accidísse in millenário tértio, sed non útile est putáre de hac re; homo non potest scire. Probábile autem est quod, Abram natus est in prima parte saéculi vigésimi ante Christum. Abram habitávit in terra quae vocátur Chaldaéa. Abram natus erat in civitáte cuius nomen erat Ur. Ur erat in parte meridionáli Babylóniae. Maióres Abram colébant multos deos; erant ergo polytheístae. Sed Abram ipse cóluit solúmmodo unum Deum. Abram hábuit fratrem, cuius nomen erat Aran. Post mortem autem Aran, Abram discéssit ex Ur, et venit in Haran. Pater enim Abram (cuius nomen erat Thare) discéssit ex Ur et cum eo venérunt Abram ipse, et uxor Abram (quae erat Sara) et Lot, qui erat fílius Aran.

In Haran étiam erant multi polytheístae. Ibi multi hómines coluérunt lunam. Putavérunt enim lunam esse deum, et vocavérunt lunam, in língua Babylónica, "Sin." Erat magnum templum huius falsi dei "Sin" in Haran. Sed Abram non cóluit Sin. (Continuábitur)

finítus-*ended*
ita-*so*
peior-*worse*
quam-*than*
vel-*or*
millenárium-*a thousand years*
útilis- *useful*
satis-*sufficiently*
habitávit-*dwelt*
maióres-*ancestors*
cólere-*worship*
polytheísta-*polytheist, worshipper of many gods*
luna-*moon*

Vocabularium

finíre, ívit, ítus-*finish complete*
habitáre, ávit, átus-*dwell, inhabit*
quam-*than*
satis-*sufficiently, very, enough*
vel-*or, even*
maióres, maióribus-*ancestors* (*merely pl. of* maior *in special sense*)
peior, peius, peióre-*worse*

Nunc Cogitemus

First and Second Person Indicative: It is easy to make these forms, starting from the third singular, which we already know. The easiest way is to make a short stick, leaving out the first and last forms:

	s
ama	t
	mus
	tis

	s
tene	t
	mus
	tis

	s
poni	t
	mus
	tis

	s
capi	t
	mus
	tis

	s
audi	t
	mus
	tis

All the forms we have just made are entirely regular, and fit easily on the short stick.

Now we recall that we already know the bottom forms for each line, that is, the third plurals:

amant tenent ponunt cápiunt aúdiunt

So all we really have to learn today is just five words:

amo téneo pono cápio aúdio

What are the meanings? For *amáre* they would be:

I love	we love
you love	you love
he loves	they love

And of course, we can vary these forms just as we have been doing for a long time. That is, besides "he loves" we can say: "he does love, he is loving." And so on with other forms.

First Singular Pronoun: *ego, mei, mihi, me, me* (I, of me, to me, me, etc.)

First Singular Adjective: *meus, a, um* (my, mine)

Present Tense of Irregular Verbs: We shall save these for a few lessons later, since we have to learn the above forms—but, if anyone is curious, here are some:

sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt
possum, potes, potest, póssumus, potéstis, possunt
volo, vis, vult, vólumus, vultis, volunt
nolo, non vis, non vult, nólumus, non vultis, nolunt

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Deus vocávit Cain, "Quid facis Cain?" Cain dixit, "Nihil fácio. Quid mihi ímperas ut fáciam?" Deus dixit, "Tu fratrem tuum Abel interfecísti. Cur fecísti hoc? Ego interfícere te non volo, sed necésse est ut te púniam. Mitto ergo te in exsílium."

Sed postquam omnes hómines péssimi facti sunt, Deus étiam Noe vocávit. Noe enim vir iustus erat, quamquam fere omnes álii péssimi facti sunt. Noe Deo dixit, "Fáciam (*I will do*) ómnia quae iubes. Quid ergo fácere débeo?" Et Deus dixit, "Debes arcam fácere. Duc (*lead*) in hanc arcam animália ex ómnibus genéribus animálium quae in terra sunt et in se spíritum vitae habent." Noe ergo narrávit haec ómnia fíliis suis. Dixit enim, "Deus mihi imperávit ut arcam fácerem. Vos étiam mihi auxílium dare debétis, ut in arca servári possítis. Veniátis mecum, ut matériam colligámus." Noe ergo fecit arcam, et in arcam ingréssus est. Et imber máximus super omnem terram venit per dies quadragínta et noctes quadragínta. Et Noe dixit, "Magnos vidémus imbres, et dilúvium! Deus meus, bonus es (*you are*). Me et meos in arca hac servavísti." Et post dilúvium Deus dixit, "Pono arcum meum in coelis, ut scire possítis quod semper in memória hábeo promissiónem meam. Numquam delébo omnes hómines aquis dilúvii. Verum est quod hómines mali fient, sed álio modo puniéntur, et non per aliud dilúvium."

English to Latin

1. I am sending a messenger in order that you may know the truth. 2. Are you coming with me? 3. I now have the name "Abram"—but God will change my name, He will call me "Abraham." 4. I dwell in Egypt but I do not know the gods of Egypt. 5. This land is so good that we will not depart. 6. Our ancestors had many gods, but we have the one true God. 7. We did not finish the tower.

Scramble Exercise

Deus dixit, "Ego ómnia quae in hoc mundo sunt feci. Volébam ómnibus homínibus per Adam et Evam qui hómines primi erant dare multa bona. Vos autem non permisístis mihi ut ea quae volúeram fácerem. Peccátis vestris péssimis necésse est ut, cum amem vos, vos púniam. Nihilóminus autem, misericórdia mea magna vobis Redémptor dábitur."

LECTIO QUINQUAGESIMA SECUNDA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

Diffícile est bonus esse inter malos. Sed Abram, cum esset in médio tam multórum polytheistárum, adhuc colébat solum Deum verum. Et Deus locútus est ei, et dixit: Abram, volo ut discédas ex hac terra tua, et de domo patris tui, et vénias in áliam terram, quae ostendétur tibi. Volo enim fácere te in gentem magnam, et benedícere tibi, et fácere nomen tuum magnum. Abram ítaque egréssus est ex terra Haran sicut Dóminus imperáverat ei. Lot venit cum eo. Abram erat vir septuagínta quinque annórum cum egrederétur de Haran. Étiam Sara, uxor Abram, venit cum eis. Venérunt in terram Chánaan. Sed Deus íterum appáruit Abram et dixit ei: Omnis terra haec erit tua. Et Abram aedificávit ibi altáre Dómino qui apparúerat ei. Sed Abram non remánsit in terra illa. Fames enim erat ibi. Descéndit ítaque in Aegýptum.

Sed Abram non semper remánsit in Aegýpto. Revérsus est in terram Chánaan. Lot étiam venit cum Abram ex Aegýpto. Et Lot et Abram facti sunt valde dívites. Habuérunt multos agnos et multa ália. Terra non póterat tenére omnes possessiónes eórum. Abram ergo dixit ad Lot, "Ecce, univérsa terra est coram te. Éligas partem terrae tibi. Si tu éligis unam partem, ego accípiam álteram." Lot ítaque vidit terram quae erat circa Iordánem esse bonam, et habitávit ibi. In illis enim diébus, terra quae est circa Sódoma et Gomórrham valde bona erat multis frúctibus. Dóminus enim adhuc non deléverat illas urbes. Lot fecit domum suam in Sódomis. Sed hómines Sodomítae erant péssimi.

Et Deus appáruit íterum Abram et dixit ei, "Vides omnes stellas quae in coelo sunt? Postéritas tua erit maior número quam stellae." Et Abram crédidit Deo. (Continuábitur cras)

polytheísta-*polytheist*
cólere-*worship*
volo-*I wish*
gens-*people*
benedícere-*bless*
íterum-*again*
appáruit-*appeared*
fames-*famine*
valde-*very*
dives-*rich*
ecce-*behold*
elígere-*choose*
circa-*about*
Sódoma, is-*Sodom*
stella-*star*

Vocabularium

apparére, appáruit, appáritus-*appear*
íterum-*again*
valde-*very*
ecce-*behold*
dives, dívite-*rich* (*poss. pl.* -um)
magna fames, fame-*hunger, famine*

Videamus Formas Veteres

1. How do you say in the subjunctive (both singular and plural): you open, you were opening, you had opened. Give the same forms for: *rúmpere, terrére, mutáre*. 2. How do you say in the indicative: I open, I was opening, I will open, I have opened, I had opened. Now, do the same with: *claúdere, finíre, rúmpere, mutáre*. Give also all the "we" forms. 3. Make all the indicative forms in number 2 (above) subjunctive (omit: I have opened). 4. Summarize the rules for forming the first and second person in all tenses of the subjunctive. Make up a rule for as many indicatives as you can.

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Abram, quid facis nunc? "Multas res paro ut discédam ex hac terra. Deus enim mihi locútus est." Quid dixit tibi Deus? "Mihi imperávit ut ex hac terra mea discédam cum ómnibus possessiónibus meis. Ítaque relínquimus ómnia quae portári (*to be carried*) non possunt." Cur vult Deus ut hoc faciátis? "Deus mihi causam non dixit, sed eum interrogáre nólui. Satis est mihi ut sciam Deum locútum esse. Si ille iubet, nos non interrogáre, sed obedíre debémus. Sed Deus étiam magnam dedit mihi

promissiónem. Fáciet me in gentem magnam." Sed Abram, non iam es (*you are*) aduléscens (*young man*). Nonne multos annos habes? "Non multos—solummodo septuagínta quinque annos hábeo. Sed, sicut iam dixi, non debémus consideráre difficultátes quando Deus nobis ímperat; si ille ímperat, étiam potestátem nobis dabit ut ómnia quae iubet faciámus." In quam terram discédis? "In Palestínam." Et ubi est Palestína? "Est ad occidéntem a terra hac. Illa terra bona nobis erit, quia Deus illam nobis dabit."

Pauca de Civitate Dei

Sanctus Augustínus scripsit de duábus civitátibus. Dixit haec: Duo amóres aedificavérunt duas civitátes. Unus amor est amor Dei. Hic amor fecit civitátem Dei. Alter amor est amor sui. Hic amor fecit civitátem huius mundi. Cives civitátis Dei non confídunt in se ipsis; confídunt in Deo. Exspéctant auxílium ab eo. Sed cives civitátis huius mundi confídunt in potestáte sua, et návibus, et in exercítibus magnis. Non exspéctant auxílium a Deo. Amant res temporáles, et res aetérnas négligunt.

English to Latin

1. We are leaving this land because there is a famine in it. 2. Although my ancestors thought there were many gods, I know that there is only one God. 3. I have built an altar in this place because God appeared to me. 4. The famine was so great that many men died. 5. God has told me that the Hebrews will become great. 6. He is so rich that no one loves him. 7. Do you see the stars? Your sons will be greater in number.

Scramble Exercise

Vir bonus Abram, cum inter multos polytheístas esset, visiónem vidit, in qua ei appáruit Deus ut ex terra sua discéderet. Ille, ut obedíret Dei iússis, venit in Chánaan. Propter famem autem in Aegýptum venit, terram in qua dei multi et falsi ab homínibus esse putabántur. Ille autem unum, qui verus Deus est, qui étiam apparúerat ei, amábat.

LECTIO QUINQUAGESIMA TERTIA

De prima et secunda persona in indicativo futuro
De imperativo activo

Quodam die Abram audívit quod quáttuor reges cepíssent Lot. Abram ergo collégit omnes servos suos, et secútus est illos reges. Hoc modo salvávit Lot. Post haec, Melchísedech, qui erat rex Salem venit ad Abram. Melchísedech erat sacérdos Dei. Ítaque óbtulit sacrifícium Deo. In hoc sacrifício offerébat panem et vinum. Hoc modo praefigurábat sacrifícium Missae.

Post haec, Deus íterum appáruit Abram, et mutávit nomen eius. Dixit, "Nomen tuum non iam erit Abram, sed Ábraham. Quia volo fácere te patrem multárum géntium. Iúbeo te circumcídere omnes púeros in die octávo post nativitátem eórum. Haec circumcísio erit signum foéderis inter me et te. Ínsuper, tu et Sara uxor tua habébitis fílium, et vocábitis nomen eius Ísaac."

Cum Ábraham habitáret in Mambre, Deus ipse cum duóbus ángelis venérunt ad eum in forma humána. Ábraham accépit eos in domum suam. Póstea Deus discéssit, et Ábraham secútus est eum. Duo ángeli iérunt in Sódoma, sed Dóminus remánsit cum Abraham, et dixit ei, "Hómines qui in Sódomis hábitant péssimi facti sunt. Necésse est ergo delére eos et civitátem eórum." Ábraham autem non amávit peccáta, sed amávit amícos suos, quorum multi habitábant in Sódomis. Ergo rogávit Dóminum dicens: "Dómine, si quinquagínta viri iusti inveniéntur in Sódomis, parces civitáti illi?" Et Dóminus respóndit: "Si in Sódomis inveniéntur quinquagínta viri iusti, eórum causa non delébo (*I will not destroy*) hanc civitátem." Ábraham ergo íterum rogávit Dóminum dicens: "Dómine, si in illa civitáte inveniéntur quadragínta quinque iusti, parces civitáti?" Et Dóminus íterum dedit ei petitiónem eius. Ábraham ítaque perseverábat rogans in hoc modo. Último Dóminus dixit: "Si solúmmodo decem iusti inveniéntur, non delébo Sódoma." (Continuábitur cras)

salváre-*save*
sacérdos-*priest*
panis-*bread*
vinum-*wine*
gens-*people, nation*
circumcídere-*circumcise*
foedus-*covenant*
iérunt-*went*
Dómine-*Lord* (*vocative form*)
párcere-*spare*
causa-*for the sake of* (*with poss.*)
petítio-*request*
perseveráre-*continue*
último-*finally*

Vocabularium

circumcídere, cídit, císus-*circumcise*
párcere, pepércit, párcitus (*or* parsus)-*spare* (*takes dat. case*)
perseveráre, ávit, átus-*continue, persevere*
causa-*for sake of* (*with poss.*)
último-*at last*
Ábraham-*poss. and dat. are* Ábrahae, *other forms:* Ábraham
bonus panis, e-*bread*
bonus sacérdos, dóte-*priest*

Nunc Cogitemus

First and Second Person Future Indicative: It is easy to make these forms, starting from the third singular which we already know. The easiest way is to use a short stick (as we did in Lesson 51), leaving out the first and last forms:

	s
amabi	t
	mus
	tis

	s
tenebi	t
	mus
	tis

	s
pone	t
	mus
	tis

	s
capie	t
	mus
	tis

	s
audie	t
	mus
	tis

All the forms we have just made are entirely regular, and fit easily on the short stick.

Now we recall that we already know the bottom forms for each line, that is, the third plurals:

amábunt tenébunt ponent cápient aúdient

So all we really have to learn today is just five words:

amábo tenébo ponam cápiam aúdiam

What are the meanings? For *amáre* they would be:

I shall love	we shall love
you will love	you will love
he will love	they will love

And of course, we can vary these forms just as we have been doing for a long time. That is, besides "he will love" we can say: "he will be loving." And so on with other forms.

IMPERATIVE ACTIVE: The imperative is the form that gives a command. It is easy to make; merely remove the letters *-re* from the present active infinitive, thus: *para habe pone cape* (the *iunt* verbs are not odd here) *audi.*

The plural is almost as easy—except in the third conjugation, just add *-te* to the imperative singular:

paráte habéte audíte

But in the third conjugation we get *not* ponete *but* pón*i*te, cáp*i*te.

How do we translate it? It merely gives a command:
prepare! have! put! seize! hear!

NEGATIVE:
Suppose we want to say: "Don't do it!" That is, use a negative with the imperative. Sometimes (but rarely) *ne* is used: *ne paráte.* But ordinarily, Latin will talk around a negative, by using the imperative of *nolle* (be unwilling) followed by an infinitive. Thus:

nolíte veníre
be unwilling to come—don't come

COMMANDS:
The singular of *nolíte* is, of course, *noli.*

The hortatory subjunctive with *ne* is about the same as a negative command:

Ne fáciat—Let him not do it.
Ne fácias—May you not do it.

This seems like a "mild" command.

UN-SCRAMBLE EXERCISE: We have now seen some forms that are very similar. But they are easy to keep unscrambled if we take a close look at them lined up one under the other, e.g.:

pétimus—we ask
petémus—we will ask
petámus—let us ask.

For practice, make a similar list for each of these verbs: dícere, pónere, claúdere, rúmpère, míttere. It will help too if we make them not only for *we* forms, but also for forms to mean: *I, you* (singular and plural), *he, they.* Notice especially what happens in the *cápiunt* type verbs in the forms that mean *I* and *they* (test it out on *fácere* and *accípere*).

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Dóminus Ábraham vocávit ad se et dixit, "Veni ad me, Ábraham. Tibi explicábo hanc rem. Olim totum delévi mundum dilúvio quia hómines omnes péssimi facti sunt. Sed étiam illo témpore famíliam unam servávi, id est, Noe et fílios eius, et uxóres filiórum eius. Noe enim fuit iustus coram me. Nunc in Sódomis et Gomórrha íterum fere omnes hómines péssimi facti sunt. Et tu Ábraham rogábis me ut illi civitáti parcam (*spare*)? Sed nihilóminus, hoc re vera fáciam si númerus suffíciens hóminum iustórum in ea inveniéntur." Ábraham ítaque dixit, "Rogo te, Dómine, ut dicas mihi: Quot (*how many*) hómines dices satis esse?" Et Dóminus respóndit ei, "Si quinquagínta iustos ibi invéniam, civitátes illas non delébo." Sed quinquagínta iusti non sunt invénti. Ábraham autem perseverábat rogans Dóminum. Último Dóminus promísit ei: "Si invéniam decem iustos, urbes illas servábo." Sed étiam decem non invénti sunt.

Ubi erant hae urbes? In parte meridionáli Palestínae erant. Sed nunc in illo loco est Mare Mórtuum. Deus enim non solum Sódoma, sed étiam Gomórrham delévit, propter peccáta máxima quae hómines in illis úrbibus faciébant. Multis áliis tempóribus Deus punívit hómines propter peccáta. Saepe Hebraéos punívit, sed ignem de coelis non misit in urbes eórum. Álias gentes misit ut contra eos pugnárent exercítibus magnis. Exémpli causa, Assýrios et Babylónios misit. Assýrii erant gens (*nation*) fortis in bello. Omnes hómines terrebántur cum Assýrios vidérent. Non enim póterant stare contra eos. Assýrii autem non omnes Iudaéos interfecérunt; quosdam in pugnis interfecérunt, sed álios e terra eórum in Assýriam portavérunt (*carried*). Sed Iudaéi in terra nova noluérunt habitáre. Assýriam non amavérunt. Assýrii autem eos non dimisérunt ut in terram Ísrael redírent.

BUGS LEPUS

Duo operárii (*laborers*) cenam (*dinner*) comedébant. Panem et carnes habébant. Unus ad álterum locútus est,

"Uxor mea carnes bonas mihi dat semper." Et alter interrogávit, "Quales (*what kind*) carnes habes?" Cui primus operárius respóndit: "Uxor mea capit lépores (*rabbits*) in nocte." "Sed quo modo potest uxor tua lépores vidére in ténebris (*darkness*)?" "Non potest eos vidére, sed potest eos audíre cum exclámant." "Illa potest audíre lépores! Sed lépores nihil dicunt!" "Sed hi lépores re vera exclámant—dicunt enim: *meow*, *meow*."

English to Latin

1. Abraham, I will not spare that city. 2. I have spoken, and I will do all that I said. 3. Put your hand on the altar and promise that you will do all that I will ask you. 4. We will circumcise our sons because God commands it. 5. For the sake of Abraham, God will spare the Hebrews. 6. I will continue asking God to spare that city. Come with us and we will ask God to give us help.

Scramble Exercise

Lot capto, Abram exércitum ex servis fecit suis ut contra quáttuor reges pugnáret. Quam post victóriam, Melchísedech vini et panis sacrifícium óbtulit. Ábrahae habitânti in Mambre, duóbus cum ángelis appáruit Deus. Cui necésse esse delére Sódoma, péssima propter peccáta dixit Deus. Ábraham autem Deum rogáre persevérávit ne illam deléret urbem.

LECTIO QUINQUAGESIMA QUARTA

De prima et secunda persona in verbis: velle, nolle, et ire

Sed decem iusti non invénti sunt in Sódomis. Ítaque duo ángeli missi sunt ut destruérent Sódoma. Sed primum venérunt ad Lot. Lot sedébat ad portam civitátis. Ángeli dixérunt ei, "Surge, discéde ab hoc loco, Dóminus enim déstruet illum." Illa nocte, Lot venit ad duos iúvenes qui voluérunt dúcere fílias Lot in matrimónium et dixit eis, "Dóminus déstruet hanc urbem, propter peccáta multa túrpia quae hómines in ea commíttunt." Sed illi iúvenes noluérunt crédere Lot, et putábant eum iocári.

Mane ángeli íterum venérunt ad Lot, et monébant eum ut statim discéderet ne períret cum illa turpi civitáte. Dixérunt, "Uxor tua véniat tecum, et étiam duae fíliae tuae éxeant." Sed Lot adhuc morabátur, ita ut necésse esset dúcere eum manu, quasi contra voluntátem eius. Ángeli ergo duxérunt Lot et famíliam eius e Sódomis, et monuérunt eos ne respícerent post se. Dixérunt, "Nolíte respícere. Si enim hoc faciétis, moriémini (*you will die*)." Uxor Lot erat curiósa—volébat vidére quid Dóminus fáceret illi civitáti. Respéxit ítaque, et statim convérsa est in státuam salis.

Deus misit ignem et sulphur de coelis et destrúxit Sódoma et Gomórrham. Locus harum úrbium nunc est sub Mari Mórtuo. Id quod áccidit his civitátibus debet monére omnes hómines ne peccáta commíttant contra Deum. Quamquam enim Deus non semper punit peccáta in hac vita, certe púniet ea in futúra vita.

destruére-*destroy*
primum-*first*
sedére-*sit*
súrgere-*rise*
iúvenis-*youth*
turpis-*shameful*
iocári-*to joke*
mane-*in morning*
períre-*perish*
exíre-*go out*
morári-*delay*
ita-*so*
quasi-*as if*
volúntas-*will*
respícere-*look back*
convérsus-*turned*
sal-*salt*
certe-*certainly*

VOCABULARIUM

Today we take it a bit easy, since we have had many new forms lately. We will merely apply the new forms to three somewhat irregular verbs: *velle, nolle, ire.*

VELLE AND NOLLE: We already know all the third person forms of these verbs. To refresh memories:

INDICATIVE

Imperfect	Future	Perfect
volébat	volet	vóluit
nolébat	nolet	nóluit

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present	Imperfect
velit	vellet
nolit	nollet

The *perfect indicative* has its special set of endings, like other perfects: *i, isti, it, imus, istis, erunt.*
The other forms given above just use the magic stick:

| m
| s
| t
| mus
| tis
| nt

Except that the first singular future turns out to be *-am* (not *-em*).
(*It is just like a future of third conjugation.*)

That means we now have to pick up only the *present indicative*! Here it is:

volo	vólumus
vis	vultis
vult	volunt
nolo	nólumus
non vis	non vultis
non vult	nolunt

We do have the normal *present indicative endings*: *o, s, t, mus, tis, nt*—but they are attached in strange ways. We would have no trouble in *recognizing* these forms—to make them, there is no way out but to memorize.

IRE: In Lesson 40, in the vocabulary, we learned the third person indicatives of this verb:

Present: it, eunt
Imperfect: ibat, ibant
Future: ibit, ibunt

The imperfect and future will run just like any other *-bat* and *-bit* imperfects and futures. But the *present* needs just a bit of attention:

Ego	eo	Nos	imus
Tu	is	Vos	itis
Is	it	Ei	eunt

Almost like endings looking around for something to end! The subjunctive starts out with *eam*—and then uses the familiar stick:

	m
	s
ea	t
	mus
	tis
	nt

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Hódie fábulam legámus de Graécia. In Graécia erant quaedam loca quae *orácula* vocabántur. In his locis falsi dei videbántur respónsa dare quaestiónibus. Sed respónsa saepe erant nullo modo clara. Erant ambígua.

Quidam aduléscens (*young man*) Graecus—vocémus eum Philíppum—qui in Phócia habitábat, ad bellum vocátus est. Quae cum audivísset ad amícum suum Platónem locútus est Philíppus, "Plato, cívitas mea ad bellum vocat, sed nolo ire. Numquam vidi bona veníre ex bello. Ínsuper, mortem tímeo. Nondum multos annos hábeo, et celériter mori non volo."

His verbis audítis, Plato amíco suo Philíppo dixit, "Si vis veritátem de hac re cum certitúdine audíre, consílium dabo (*from* dare) tibi. Urbs clara est in Graécia; Delphi vocátur. In hac urbe est oráculum (*oracle*) magnum in quo deus Apollo (*nominative case*) respónsa dat peténtibus (*to those who ask*). Si ad hoc oráculum ibis, et Apóllini (*dative*) sacrifícia ófferes, scio quod deus tibi respónsum de hoc bello dabit.

Grátias egit (*thanked*) Platóni Philíppus, et in viam suam ibat ad oráculum clarum Apóllinis. Iter non erat longum ex domo Philíppi. Cum ad oráculum venísset, pecúniam sacerdótibus dedit suam, "Volo hoc scire: ibo ad bellum? Et si hoc fáciam, redíbo (*return—a compound of* ire: redíre) sine iniúria?"

Vox mysteriósa ex oráculo venit. Philíppus non pótuit intellégere (*understand*)—quaedam enim fémina quae Pýthia vocabátur locúta est, sed sacerdótes dedérunt ei interpretatiónem. Et hoc erat respónsum, "Ibis redíbis numquam períbis in armis."

Et nunc, quid putámus? Quid dicit oráculum? Moriétur Philíppus?

English to Latin

1. We are going to Rome to see Caesar. 2. We do not want to hear Cicero. 3. You want to know whether you will return. 4. We will go lest the fire destroy us. 5. Let us arise and go quickly lest we perish. 6. That which God wills is certainly (*certe*) good for us. 7. We certainly will not remain here.

Scramble Exercise

Decem iustis in Sódomis non invéntis, a Deo missi sunt ut illam urbem destrúerent duo ángeli. Quibus loquéntibus de destructióne urbis, Lot crédidit. Huic autem duo iúvenes qui in matrimónium fílias Lot dúcere voluérunt crédere noluérunt. Lot enim dixit illis, "Evadámus nos ex ruína urbis huius ne pereámus omnes cum viris peccatóribus."

LECTIO QUINQUAGESIMA QUINTA

Iterum videamus formas novas activas

Deus promíserat Ábrahae quod fáceret eum in gentem magnam. Ut impléret hanc promissiónem, Deus dedit ei púerum, cuius nomen erat Ísaac. Ábraham ipse erat centum annórum quando Ísaac natus est. Ábraham ergo amávit Ísaac multum, quia putábat quod Deus impléret promissiónem suam per Ísaac. Secúndum foedus quod fécerat cum Deo, Ábraham circumcídit púerum octávo die post nativitátem eius.

Sed quodam die Deus vocávit Ábraham. Vóluit enim vidére num Ábraham amáret fílium suum plus quam Deum. Ítaque Deus dixit, "Ábraham, Ábraham." Ille respóndit, "Adsum Dómine." Et Deus dixit illi, "Tolle fílium tuum quem amas, Ísaac, et ófferes eum in holocaústum super unum móntium quem monstrábo tibi."

Ábraham ergo surréxit et parávit ómnia quae necessária erant ad hoc sacrifícium. Ísaac fecit iter cum patre suo Ábraham. Et fecérunt iter per tres dies. Et die tértio vidérunt montem quem Deus monstráverat. Ábraham ergo imperávit servis suis ut remanérent in quodam loco. Ipse et puer Ísaac ascendérunt. Ísaac portábat ligna pro holocaústo. Ábraham ipse portábat ignem et gládium. Et cum iter fácerent, Ísaac interrogávit patrem suum, "Pater, habémus ligna, ignem, et gládium, sed ubi est víctima pro holocáusto?" Cui Ábraham respóndit, "Ne tímeas, fili mi, Deus ipse dabit víctimam pro holocaústo." Cum venissent ad locum sacrifícii, Ábraham ténuit et ligávit Ísaac, et pósuit eum super ligna. Et exténdens manum, parátus erat interfícere púerum suum. Sed ántequam posset tángere fílium gládio, ecce, ángelus vocávit eum et dixit, Ábraham, ne exténdas manum tuam in fílium tuum. Nunc enim novi quod times Deum, et non pepercísti fílio tuo propter Deum." Ábraham ergo respéxit post se, et vidit aríetem. Hunc cepit, et óbtulit in holocaústum pro púero suo. Deus íterum locútus est ei, "Quia fecísti hanc rem, et non pepercísti fílio tuo, benedícam tibi, et fáciam te in gentem magnam, et omnes gentes terrae benedicéntur in te, quia obedivísti voci meae."

gens-*nation*
implére-*fill*
secúndum-*according to*
foedus-*covenant*
plus-*more*
tóllere-*take*
adsum-*I am here*
monstráre-*show*
surréxit-*arose*
fili mi-*my son*
ligávit-*bound*
exténdere-*extend*
ántequam-*before*
tángere-*touch*
áries-*ram*
benedícere-*bless*

VOCABULARIUM

adésse, ádfuit, *adfutúrus-*be present*

ligáre, ávit, átus-*bind*

tángere, tétigit, táctus-*touch*

tóllere, sústulit, sublátus-*remove, take, lift, raise*

secúndum (*with obj.*)-*according to*

plus, plure (*has only neuter form in sing. pl. is*: plures, plura—*two termination type, with* -ium *poss. pl.*)-*more*

VIDEAMUS FORMAS VETERES IN PERSONA 1ª ET 2ª

We can now sum up the first and second person active forms:

1. The perfect indicative has its own endings: *i, isti, it, imus, istis, erunt.*
2. All active subjunctives and imperfect and pluperfect indicatives—use the stick:
   | m
   | s
   | t
   | mus
   | tis
   | nt
3. PRESENT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE: Use the short stick for both present and future (that is, the stick covers all but first and last forms). For example:

   ama | s, t, mus, tis

   amabi | s, t, mus, tis

Then recall the third plurals we learned long ago: amant, tenent, ponunt, cápiunt, áudiunt. Finally, we add the first singulars: amo, téneo, pono, cápio, aúdio. In general, then, for all actives except the perfect indicative, we have: *o* or *m, s, t, mus, tis, nt* (*o* for present indicative and future of conjugations one and two—otherwise *m*).

Practice: 1. Give the second singular active of all tenses of indicative and subjunctive of: habitáre, tenére, míttere, rápere, scire.

2. Give the first singular active of all tenses of indicative and subjunctive of the same verbs.

3. Do the same with the first plural on your own list of verbs. Be sure to use the tape for this lesson!

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

"Cur vis interfícere me?" rogávit Ísaac. "Hódie enim tecum egréssus sum ut sacrifícium Deo offérrem, sed nescívi quod ipse debérem sacrifícium esse. Estne re vera bonum ut hoc fiat? Nonne satis est animália offérre?" Cui Ábraham respóndit, "Deus mihi imperávit ut te in (*for a*) holocaústum offérrem, fili mi. Verum est quod Deus mihi magnam promissiónem fecit dicens, 'Fáciam te in gentem magnam,'—et vidétur mihi quod promíssio debet per te impléri. Sed confídere Deo debémus. Ómnia enim quae ille promísit certe nobis vénient. Deus enim non solum verus est, sed est Véritas ipsa. Ítaque, fili mi, confidámus in eo. Quamquam enim te interfíciam—Deus fácere potest ut a mórtuis surgas. Ipse est Dóminus vitae et mortis, et nihil est diffícile ei. Debémus semper dícere: Fiat volúntas (*will*) eius."

Sed hoc modo Deus vóluit tentáre (*try*) Ábraham. Non enim re vera vóluit Deus sacrifícium humánum. Deus enim sacrifícia humána próhibet. Et Deus non tentávit Ábraham quia ipse (id est, Deus) nescíret virtútem Ábrahae. Deus enim ómnia novit, et nihil potest ab eo abscóndi. Sed, haec ímperans, Deus monstráre vóluit ómnibus nobis magnum exémplum fídei (*of faith*) et obediéntiae. Ábraham vocátus est "Pater ómnium credéntium," id est, pater ómnium hóminum qui credunt Deo. In hoc sensu Deus promísit Ábrahae, "In te benedícentur omnes gentes." Non autem necésse est ut homo sit fílius Ábrahae secúndum carnem, id est, ut sit Iudaéus nativitáte. Sed necésse est imitári fidem Ábrahae. Hoc modo, sensu spiritáli, nos póssumus esse fílii eius, et benedictiónem, quam Deus promísit ei, recípimus.

English to Latin

1. Let us go to find Abraham. 2. We do not wish to remain in that place. 3. It is necessary that I see him. 4. I am willing to do all that he asks. 5. He has sent me so that I may learn the truth. 6. When he had raised his hand, God ordered him not to touch his son. 7. Are you not willing to hear me?

Scramble Exercise

Ábraham post fílii nativitátem eius vocávit Deus ut eúndem sacrificáret fílium impérans. Ómnibus quae hoc ad sacrifícium necessária erant parátis, ad locum quem monstráverat Deus cum fílio est proféctus pater. Fílium autem ántequam interfícere posset, per ángelum ne víctimam tángeret parátam Ábrahae imperávit. Magnam quod benedictiónem daret Ábrahae promísit Deus.

LECTIO QUINQUAGESIMA SEXTA

De prima et secunda persona in verbis: esse, posse et ferre

Ábraham senex erat, et multos iam annos hábuit. Vocávit ítaque unum ex servis suis et dixit ei, "Ego iam senex sum, et Dóminus benedíxit mihi in multis. Sed ante mortem meam volo providére uxórem bonam pro fílio meo Ísaac. Sed ne accípias uxórem ei de fíliis quae hábitant in hac terra—eas ad terram meam unde discéssi et áccipe ibi uxórem pro fílio meo Ísaac."

Respóndit servus, "Quid fáciam si múlier nolet redíre mecum in hanc terram: débeo ego dúcere fílium tuum in terram Haran unde tu venisti?" Et Abraham dixit: "Nullo modo—hómines enim qui hábitant in Haran multos deos colunt. Nolo fílium meum habitáre cum illis. Sed ínsuper, Deus promísit mihi quod fáceret me in gentem magnam in terra hac. Débeo implére voluntátem eius."

Ítaque servus discéssit, et iter fecit in Haran. Cum ad urbem esset, servus vidit mulíeres egrediéntes ut haurírent aquam. Servus Ábrahae autem hoc modo ad Deum orávit, "Dómine Deus, fac misericórdiam cum dómino meo Ábraham. Ego ítaque rogábo puéllas has ut dent (*from* dare) mihi aquam. Puélla ergo quae dicet mihi: 'Étiam camélis tuis aquam dabo'—illa sit puélla quam tu, Dómine, paravísti fílio dómini mei. Hoc modo sciam voluntátem tuam."

Servus non finíverat oratiónem suam ad Dóminum—et ecce puélla pulchra, cuius nomen erat Rebécca, venit ad eum. Ítaque cum servus petivísset aquam ab ea, Rebécca dixit, "Étiam camélis tuis aquam dabo."

Hoc modo invénit servus Ábrahae uxórem bonam pro Ísaac. Paréntes enim Rebéccae, audiéntes ómnia quae accíderant, dixérunt, "Volúntas Dómini Dei clara est. Rédeat Rebécca tecum, ut sit uxor bona fílio dómini tui."

senex-*old man*
sum-*I am*
providére-*provide*
fília-*daughter*
eas-*subj. of* ire
unde-*whence*
múlier-*woman*
cólere-*worship*
gens-*people*
implére-*fulfill*
volúntas-*will*
hauríre-*draw*
orávit-*prayed*
fac (*imperative of* fácere)
camélus-*camel*
paréntes-*parents*

VOCABULARIUM

cólere, cóluit, cultus-*worship, till, cultivate*
implére, implévit, implétus-*fill, fulfill*
fília, a-*daughter*
magna gens, gente-*tribe, people* (*poss. pl.*-ium)
bona volúntas, voluntáte-*will*
unde-*whence, from where*

NUNC COGITEMUS

FORMS OF ESSE: We already know the third person forms of *esse*:

INDICATIVE

Present	Imperfect	Future	Perfect
est	erat	erit	fuit
sunt	erant	erunt	fuérunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present	Imperfect	Pluperfect
sit	esset	fuísset
sint	essent	fuíssent

On most of these we can make the first and second person simply—of course, the perfect indicative behaves like other perfects—of the rest, all but the present and future indicative use the stick that has: *m, s, t, mus, tis, nt*.

Now the *future* is almost the same:

ero	érimus
eris	éritis
erit	erunt

But the *present* indicative is quite irregular:

sum	sumus
es	estis
est	sunt

Forms of Posse: Outside of the infinitive, this verb is merely *esse* with the prefixes *pot-* and *pos-*: we use *pot-* before forms beginning with *e*—such as *pótero, potes, potest,* etc. Before forms beginning with *s* we have *pos-*, thus: *possum, póssumus, possunt,* etc. Only the present indicative is any bother (because it jumps around):

possum	póssumus
potes	potéstis
potest	possunt

Forms for the rest are easy—such as present subjunctive *possim* (with stick). Write out a table of the rest.

Forms of Ferre: This verb acts just like a normal *third conjugation verb* outside the *present indicative*. Thus we have imperfect indicative—*ferébam*; future—*feram, feres,* etc.; present subjunctive—*feram, feras,* etc.; imperfect subjunctive—*ferrem, ferres,* etc. Here is the present indicative:

fero	férimus
fers	fertis
fert	ferunt

These are easy to *recognize*—to make them, remember to drop the normal connection vowel in second and third singular and second plural. That is all.

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

"Ubi sumus?" dixérunt quinque porci. "Sumus in foro," respóndit unus ex eis. "Vólumus audíre Cicerónem. Cícero enim habébit oratiónem veheméntem." Sed álius porcus dixit, "Ille? Nullo modo. Nólumus audíre eum. Inflátus est magno vento. Érimus aegri si audímus illum. Sed audíte me, amíci mei—si nos vólumus fácere rem magnam, ut simus veri porci, et ut honórem demus (*from* dare) géneri nostro, consílium hábeo. Hódie álius orátor habébit oratiónem. Hic orátor amat nos, et dedit nobis magnum honórem: habet enim nomen nostrum. Certe, nemo est ex nobis qui nésciat hóminem de quo dico—dico de Marco Pórcio Catóne. Ille vult esse consul Románus. Nos debémus fácere ómnia quae póssumus ut ille re vera fiat consul. Cato enim promísit quod si fiet consul, omnes hómines nullas álias carnes cómedent nisi carnes bovínas assas. Cato étiam dixit in senátu, 'Audíte me, amíci mei. Nos veri Románi sumus. Ergo faciámus legem novam. Ne Románi cómedant álias carnes nisi carnes bovínas assas.' " Et parvus porcus dixit, "Si habébimus hanc legem, non iam in magno perículo érimus. Laborémus (*let us work*) ergo, et audiámus Catónem nostrum."

Sed agnus dixit, "María et ego vénimus quotídie in scholam. In schola díscimus multa. Mélius enim est nos esse in schola quam in foro. In foro enim audíre póssumus Catónem et Cicerónem. Sed in nostra schola audímus Marcum. María saepe dicit Marco, 'Marce, tu es parvus agnus meus.' Forsan verum est, sed numquam audívimus Marcum dicéntem *baa*. Néscio quid María significáre velit. Marcus enim vidétur esse homo."

English to Latin

1. It is better to see Caesar than to see the five pigs. 2. You are a good orator. 3. We are able to hear him often. 4. I am a servant of Abraham, who is a good man. 5. I will bring water for your camels. 6. We are always able to do that which God commands. 7. His will is always good for us.

Scramble Exercise

Suam ante mortem ut fílio uxórem providéret bonam, in terram ex qua vénerat servum misit Ábraham. Qui dóminum quid fáciat si mulier cum eo redíre nolet intérrogat. Cui ille ne mulíerem veníre cogat ímperat. Qui servus ut patris celériter voluntátem impléret est in Haran proféctus. Uxórem pro fílio bonam Rebéccam quae camélis étiam aquam dedit invénit. Dei qui bonus est voluntáte accidérunt haec.

LECTIO QUINQUAGESIMA SEPTIMA

De prima et secunda persona in perfectis passivis

Ísaac et Rebécca duos fílios habuérunt, quorum nómina erant Esau et Iacob. Esau autem irascebátur quia Iacob accéperat benedictiónem patris Ísaac per simulatiónem. Rebécca ítaque, videns iram Esau, tímuit ne interfícere vellet Iacob. Vocávit ergo Iacob, et mónuit eum ne morarétur sed celériter discéderet dicens, "Iráscitur tibi Esau. Tímeo ne te interfícere conétur. Fuge ítaque in Haran, ad Laban fratrem meum. Post dies paucos revérti póteris."

Iacob ergo proféctus est in Haran, et cum iter fáceret, nox invénit eum in quodam campo. Tulit ítaque lápidem, et ponens eum sub cápite suo, dormívit. Et cum dormíret, vidit visiónem magnam: scala stabat in terra, et cacúmen huius scalae coelum tangébat. Ángeli Dei ascendébant et descendébant per scalam; Dóminus Deus ipse in coelo erat, et locútus est ad Iacob, "Ego sum Dóminus Deus Ábrahae, patris tui, Deus Ísaac. Terram in qua dormis tibi et fíliis tuis dabo." Deus promíserat Ábrahae quod fílii eius essent multi, ita ut nemo posset numeráre eos. Deus renovávit idem foedus cum Iacob, et dixit, "In te omnes gentes terrae benedicéntur."

Post haec Iacob surréxit et dixit, "Re vera Dóminus est in hoc loco, et ego nesciébam. Terríbilis est locus hic—nihil enim áliud est nisi domus Dei et porta coeli!" Iacob ítaque vocávit nomen loci illíus Bethel, id est, *domus Dei*. "Beth" enim in lingua Hebraíca est "domus" et "El" est Deus.

simulátio-*pretense*
morári-*delay*
frater-*brother*
campus-*plain*
lapis-*stone*
dormíre-*sleep*
scala-*ladder*
cacúmen-*top*
ita-*so*
numeráre-*count*
renováre-*renew*
foedus-*pact, covenant*
Hebraícus-*Hebrew*

VOCABULARIUM

dormíre, ívit, ítus-*sleep*
morári, morátus est-*delay, stay*
numeráre, ávit, átus-*count, number*
ita-*so*
campus, o-*field, plain*
bonum foedus, foédere-*pact, covenant*
bonus frater, fratre-*brother*

NUNC COGITEMUS

FIRST AND SECOND PERSON PERFECT PASSIVES: We learned long ago to make the third person forms of the perfect and pluperfect passives (both indicative and subjunctive). Now that we know the first and second person forms of *esse*, it is obvious that we can fill out the table and make all three persons. A few samples:

parátus sum, es, est — paráti sumus, estis, sunt
parátus eram, eras, erat — paráti erámus, erátis, erant

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE: Since *parátus sum*, etc., gives perfect indicative, it is obvious that by changing *sum* to *sim* (subjunctive of *esse*) we get perfect subjunctive:

parátus sim, sis, sit — paráti simus, sitis, sint

USE OF PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: *Ordinarily* it will be found only in *dependent clauses*, when the main verb refers to *present or future* time. The perfect subjunctive then could indicate completed action, e.g.:

Rogat *num* mílites interfécti sint.
He asks *whether* the soldiers have been killed.

But this is enough for our use now—it is easy to see how to translate it from Latin to English. As to the perfect *active* subjunctive—we shall learn it soon.

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE: We make it simply—add the future of *esse* to the perfect participle, thus:

parátus ero, eris, erit — paráti érimus, éritis, erunt

Translation?—I shall have been prepared, you will have been prepared, etc. We shall learn the future perfect *active* soon.

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

"Esau, cur locútus es haec verba contra Iacob fratrem tuum?" "Quia ille malus est. Benedictiónem quam pater mihi dare vóluit, ille accépit." "Sed nonne tu vendidísti (*sold*) illi primogénita (*birthright*) tua quodam die cum de agris revérsus esses?" "Hoc verum est, sed Iacob non débuit simuláre (*pretend*) se esse me. Nonne mendácium (*lie*) est dícere id quod non verum est?" "Útique, sed post haec, tu ingréssus es ad patrem tuum, et áliam benedictiónem accepísti." "Verum est, accépi, sed benedíctio quam fratri meo dedit mélior erat." "Sed rem peiórem de te audívi—nonne conátus es étiam interfícere Iacob?" "Hoc non sum conátus fácere—sed vellem (*I would like*) interfícere eum!"

"Iacob, quare de terra tua egréssus es? Et in quam terram proféctus es?" "Proféctus sum quia mater mea de ira fratris mei mónuit me. Iter ítaque in Haran fácio." "Sed in Haran nonne multi polytheístae sunt?" "Útique, sed ibi non remanébo. Pater enim meus vult ut uxórem ibi accípiam ex filiábus (*daughters—abl. pl.*) Laban, avúnculi mei. Laban enim vir bonus est." "Puer bonus es. Bonam invenías uxórem."

English to Latin

1. He asks whether you have attempted to do it. 2. Jacob, why have you gone out from your own land? 3. I have said these words (use *loqui*) because I hate him. 4. You have been sent by your mother into Haran. 5. I do not know why you have said these things. 6. You have been filled with good things because you have fulfilled the will of God. 7. Have you attempted to count the stars?

Scramble Exercise

Cum Iacob benedictiónem quam ipse a patre accípere volúerat accepísset eum odit Esau. Ut e domo, ne eum interfícere posset Esau, fúgeret mónuit mater Iacob. Apérto in campo cum in Haran iter fáceret Iacob invénit eum nox. Quo in loco vidit dórmiens magnam a Deo visiónem e coelo scalae descendéntis. Hoc sciens modo esse sanctum locum, dedit nomen loco Bethel Iacob.

LECTIO QUINQUAGESIMA OCTAVA

De prima et secunda persona passiva in subiunctivo praesenti et imperfecto

Sunt multa ália de Iacob quae légere póssumus in Scriptúris Sanctis. Sed hódie audíre vólumus de duódecim fíliis Iacob, et praesértim de uno ex his fíliis, cuius nomen erat Ioséphus.

Quodam die fratres Ioséphi fecérunt rem péssimam. Iooséphus venit ad patrem suum Iacob et narrávit ei id quod fratres eius fécerant. Propter hanc causam fratres eius iráti sunt ei, et coepérunt odísse eum. Insuper, Iacob amávit Ioseph plus quam álios—ecce ália causa ódii.

Ioseph étiam hábuit duo sómnia, quae narrávit frátribus suis. Dixit enim, "Audíte sómnium meum quod vidi: putábam nos ligáre manípulos in agro. Et manípulus meus surréxit et stetit, sed vestri manípuli circumstántes adoravérunt manípulum meum."

Somnio audíto, fratres eius respondérunt, "Num rex noster eris? Aut nos subiciémur (*be subjected to*) tibi?" Post haec, fratres eius sensérunt ódium maius contra Iosephum. Sed Ioseph étiam vidit áliud sómnium, et narrávit frátribus suis. Dixit, "Vidi per sómnium, quasi solem et lunam et stellas úndecim adoráre me." Audíto hoc sómnio, pater eius dixit, "Quid sibi vult hoc sómnium (*What does it mean*)? Num ego et mater tua et fratres tui adorábimus te super terram?" Pater eius non odit Iosephum, sed fratres eius odérunt eum.

Quodam die, Iacob vocávit Iosephum. Qui dixit, "Adsum; quid vis a me?" Et pater respóndit, "Veni, mittam te ad fratres tuos, ut vídeas si ómnia próspera sint cum eis et cum pecóribus quae custódiunt." Iosephus ergo discéssit, et secútus est fratres suos, ut vidéret si ómnia próspera essent eis et pecóribus. Fratres eius vidérunt eum veniéntem et dixérunt, "Ecce, somniator venit! Veníte, occidámus eum, et videámus quid prosint illi sómnia eius." (Continuábitur cras)

sómnium-*dream*
manípulus-*sheaf*
circumstáre-*stand around*
adoráre-*adore*
num-*do not translate* (*see below*)
subícere-*subject*
quasi-*as it were*
pecus-*cattle*
prósperus-*favorable*
custodíre-*watch*
somniátor-*dreamer*
occídere-*kill*
prosint-*be helpful*

Vocabularium

adoráre, ávit, átus-*respect, reverence, adore*
circumstáre, -stetit, ——, -*surround*
occídere, occídit, occísus-*kill*
prodésse, prófuit, *profutúrus-*be profitable to* (*dat., compound of* esse)
subíciunt, subícere, iécit, iéctus-*subject*
magnum pecus, pécore-*cattle*
sómnium, o-*dream*
num (*see below*)
quasi-*as if, as it were*

Num: There is no English equivalent for the use of *num* we have just seen (we saw it some time ago in the sense of *whether*—a different use). It serves to introduce a question, and shows that one *expects* the answer *no*. We can get the same effect in English, not by one word, but in a round about way—thus:

You aren't going to the city, are you?
Num vadis in urbem?

The enclictic particle *-ne* that we have been using, is neutral—expects no particular answer. But *-ne* on the end of *non* (*nonne*) expects the answer *yes*:

Nonne vadis in urbem?
Aren't you going to the city?

Nunc Cogitemus

Preview of Passive Forms of Simple Tenses (all but the perfects—that is, present, imperfect, and future): We saw that one set of endings, *m* or *o, s, t, mus,*

tis, nt accounted for nearly all active forms. We also saw that perfect passives are made with the perfect participle and a form of *esse*. But all simple tenses of passives are made with just one set of endings—no exceptions—which are:

r, ris, tur, mur, mini, ntur

We already know two out of the six, and so have only four to learn. It is perfectly easy to learn to *recognize* any passive form. There are a few special things to watch in making them, and so we take them up a little at a time.

TODAY WE LEARN THE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. There we merely use the old stick method:

Present

	r		r
	ris		ris
pare	tur	habea	tur
	mur		mur
	mini		mini
	ntur		ntur

Imperfect

	r		r
	ris		ris
parare	tur	habere	tur
	mur		mur
	mini		mini
	ntur		ntur

And so on in any conjugation (write out a set of samples for yourself).

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Nomen meum est Iacob. Mater mea me vocávit, et in Haran me míttere vóluit. His audítis, dixi, "Estne re vera necésse ut ego in Haran proficíscar?" Et mater mea respóndit, "Útique, ne a fratre tuo Esau interficiáris. Sed ne moréris. Fac iter celériter ne ab illo videáris."

Celériter ítaque sum proféctus ne vidérer et interfícerer ab illo. Sed aliquándo (*sometime*) redíbo ut matrem meam vídeam et ut cum Esau lóquar. Nolo enim inimícus ei esse.

AUDIAMUS ALIAM NARRATIONEM

Quidam ex pharisaéis rogávit Iesum ut coméderet secum. Iesus ergo venit in domum huius pharisaéi, et recúbuit ut cibum coméderet. Et ecce, múlier mala, quae erat peccátrix, id est, quae multa peccáta committébat in illa civitáte, cum novísset Iesum venísse in domum pharisaéi, tulit alabástrum unguénti, et venit in domum ad Iesum. Haec múlier ad pedes Iesu stetit et coepit rigáre pedes eius lácrimis, et ungébat pedes unguénto. Sed ille pharisaéus qui invitáverat Iesum (nomen huius pharisaéi erat Simon) videns hanc peccatrícem ad pedes Iesu, dícere coepit in mente sua, "Hic vir Iesus certe non est prophéta, sicut putáveram, quia nescit hanc mulíerem esse peccatrícem!"

Sed Iesus vidére póterat ea quae agebántur in mente Simónis, et respóndit ei, "Simon, hábeo áliquid quod volo dícere tibi." Simon ait, "Dic, Dómine." Et Iesus dixit ei, "Quidam faenerátor habébat duos debitóres qui debébant pecúniam ei. Sed, cum non habérent pecúniam ut sólverent, ille faenerátor dimísit débitum eis. Unus ex eis debúerat quingéntos (*500*) denários, et álius debúerat quinquagínta (*50*). Haec ergo est quaéstio mea: Quis ex illis debitóribus amávit illum faeneratórem plus?" Simon respóndit, "Probabíliter ille cui plus dimíssum est."

Et Dóminus ait, "Veritátem dixísti. Vidésne hanc mulíerem? Veni in domum tuam. Aquam pédibus meis non dedísti. Sed haec múlier lácrimis rigávit pedes meos. Et caput meum óleo non unxísti. Sed illa unxit pedes meos unguénto. Ergo dico tibi: multa peccáta dimittúntur illi, quia amávit multum. Sed is cui minus dimíttitur, minus amat."

recúbuit-*reclined*
múlier-*woman*
peccátrix-*sinner*
alabáster-*box*
unguéntum-*ointment*
rigáre-*wash*
lácrima-*tear*
ungébat-*anointed*
áliquid-*something*
ait-*said*
faenerátor-*money lender*
sólvere-*pay*
denárius-*denarius*
dimíttere-*forgive*
óleum-*oil*

English to Latin

1. Let us speak (use *loqui*) lest we be put into prison. 2. You (plural) were so good that you were loved by all. 3. Let us fight bravely lest we die. 4. Let us adore the one true God and not many gods. 5. May you be filled with good things. 6. I will not be a slave will I? 7. My enemies have surrounded me to kill me.

Scramble Exercise

Huius Isaac, de quo iam légimus quod pater eius non nolébat sacrificáre eum, iubénte Deo, erant nepótes (*grandsons*) duódecim. Inter quos erat Ioséphus qui sómnia magna vidit. De uno sómnio dixit, "In agro manípulos nos ligántes vidi. Inter quos manípulos meum surrexísse et stetísse—vestros autem meum adoráre." Hoc propter sómnium ei fratres iráti sunt.

LECTIO QUINQUAGESIMA NONA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

Fratres Ioséphi comprehendérunt eum, et ligavérunt eum. Voluérunt occídere eum, et dícere patri suo Iacob: Fera mala devorávit fílium tuum Ioseph. Sed unus ex frátribus Ioséphi, cuius nomen erat Ruben, nolébat interfícere fratrem suum. Sciébat enim quod Ioséphus merúerat nihil mali. Vóluit ergo liberáre eum. Sed non póterat simplíciter dícere áliis frátribus, "Volo liberáre Ioséphum." Ergo dixit, "Ne interficiátis ánimam eius, nec fundátis sánguinem eius. Mittámus eum in hanc cistérnam véterem." (Non erat aqua in hac cistérna.)

Haec verba placuérunt áliis frátribus, et misérunt Ioséphum in cistérnam véterem. Sed cum sedérent ut coméderent panem, vidérunt mercatóres veniéntes. Hi mercatóres erant Ismaelítae, et faciébant iter in Aegýptum. Unus ex frátribus, Iudas, videns hos mercatóres, dixit áliis: "Quid prodest nobis si occidémus fratrem nostrum? Nonne mélius est véndere eum Ismaelítis? Hoc modo manus nostrae non polluéntur." Cum ergo Ismaelítae veníssent ad eos, traxérunt Ioséphum ex cistérna, et vendidérunt eum vigínti argénteis (*abl. case—price*).

Ruben non áderat cum álii fratres vénderent Ioséphum. Cum ergo venísset ad cistérnam, et non invenísset fratrem suum, magno dolóre afféctus est. Sed fratres tulérunt (*from* ferre) túnicam Ioséphi, et intinxérunt in sánguine haedi quem occíderant.

Tunc iérunt ad patrem suum, et monstravérunt ei túnicam intínctam sánguine. Et dixérunt, "Vide, estne haec túnica Ioséphi?" Et pater, motus dolóre máximo dixit, "Fera péssima devorávit fílium meum Ioséphum." Ismaelítae autem duxérunt Ioséphum in Aegýptum.

fera-*wild beast*
devoráre-*eat*
merére-*earn, deserve*
ánima-*soul, life*
fúndere-*pour, shed*
sanguis-*blood*
verbum-*word*
sedére-*sit*
argénteus-*silver (piece)*
véndere-*sell*
pollúere-*defile*
traxit-*drew*
intíngere-*dip*
haedus-*goat*

Vocabularium

fúndere, fudit, fusus-*pour, shed*	ánima, a-*soul, life, breath*
merére, méruit, méritus-*earn, deserve*	ferus, o & fera, a-*wild beast*
tráhere, traxit, tractus-*draw, drag*	bonus sanguis, sánguine-*blood*
véndere, véndidit, vénditus-*sell*	verbum, o-*word*

Videamus Formas Veteres

1. How do you say in the indicative (both singular and plural): You are, you were, you will be, you have been, you had been; and in the subjunctive: you are, you were, you had been. Now make the same forms for *posse* and *ferre*. 2. How do you say: We have been called, we had been called, we shall have been called. Now make the same forms for *tenére* and *cápere*. 3. How do you say in the subjunctive (singular and plural): You have been sent, you had been sent. Now make the same forms for *implére* and *ferre*. 4. How do you say in the subjunctive (plural only): You are being counted, you were being counted. Now make the same forms for *habére, occídere, finíre*.

Audiamus de Terra Aegypti

Amícus noster, Sanctus Ioséphus, a frátribus suis vénditus est. Mercatóres Ismaelítae eum in terram Aegýpti ducunt. Itaque, nos étiam ingrediámur in hanc terram, ut eam videámus. Ubi est Aegýptus? Est in África. Non est terra magna, sed est terra valde antíqua.

In média terra est flumen magnum, cuius nomen est Nilus. Hoc flumen necessárium est in Aegýpto. Omni

anno hoc flumen dilúvium parvum facit super magnam partem terrae. Sine hoc dilúvio annuáli (*annual*) Aegýptii non possent (*could not*) cólere agros suos. Non possent habére panem et álios cibos necessários. In parte enim septentrionáli terrae, ad Mare Mediterráneum, terra imbres (*rains*) moderátos áccipit. Sed áliae partes Aegýpti fere numquam imbrem accípiunt. Ergo dilúvium annuále flúminis Nili valde necessárium est.

Sed ecce—vir Aegýptius ad nos venit. Interrogémus eum de terra hac. Amice! (*friend*) Veni ad nos. Quis es? "Nomen meum est Ptáhotep." Nomen novum est. Numquam tale nomen audívimus. Quid signíficat? "Ptah est magnus deus in terra Aegýpti. Ptah enim est intelléctus et língua ómnium deórum. Haec suffíciant de prima parte nóminis mei. Secúnda pars, id est, *hotep*, signíficat 'satis est.' Ergo totum nomen signíficat: Satis est pro Ptah—vel, in áliis verbis: Placet Ptah." Sed vólumus scire quid signíficat id quod tu dicis, "Ptah est língua ómnium deórum." "Difficile est hanc rem explícare, sed conábur (*I will try*). Ptah est potéstas per quam omnes álii dei imperáre possunt. Ptah ergo est super omnes álios deos. Habémus enim multos álios deos. Étiam ipse rex noster est deus magnus." (Cras audiémus plura de Aegýpto)

Psittacus (Parrot) Dixit ##%*??!!!

Quaedam bona fémina, Margaríta nómine, psíttacum habébat. Sed psíttacus, qui olim cum nautis navigáverat, semper multa verba profána (*profane language*) dicébat. Margaríta verba profána audíre non amábat, et propter hanc causam, omni die domínica (*Sunday*) psíttacum ponébat in cáveam (*cage*) et eum tegébat (*covered*), ne in die domínica psíttacus tália verba díceret. Sed quadam hebdómeda (*week*), in féria secúnda (*Monday*), Margaríta vidit minístrum (*a minister*) veniéntem ad domum suam. Celériter ítaque psíttacum in cáveam pósuit et texit eum. Post haec, miníster in domum venit, et loquebátur cum Margaríta, quando vox querens (*complaining*) ex cávea audiebátur, "Unam ##% ??!!! brevem hebdómedam!!!"

English to Latin

1. Let us try to learn all that we can about this land. 2. A man is coming. Let us see if he knows many things about this land. 3. Let us speak to this man. 4. We will be in danger if we remain here. 5. We were dragged into prison although we did not deserve it. 6. Let us not shed his blood—let us sell him to these men. 7. Will they believe our words?

Scramble Exercise

Idem patriárcha áliud étiam narrávit sómnium: se vidísse quasi solem et lunam et stellas úndecim adoráre se. Quíbus audítis interrogávit pater num ipse et mater et fratres debérent adoráre illum super terram. Frátribus autem eius irascéntibus hanc propter causam, pater Ioséphi non est irátus. In Aegýptum ut servus fíeret vendidérunt eum fratres eius.

LECTIO SEXAGESIMA

De prima et secunda persona in indicativo imperfecto
De pronomine: aliquis

Ígitur Iosépbus ductus est in Aegýptum, emítque eum Pútiphar, princeps exércitus. Sed Deus erat cum Iosépho et benedíxit ei. Ioséphus habitábat in domo dómini sui. Et Deus benedíxit dómui Putíphari propter Ioséphum. Ioséphus ipse plácuit Putípharo, et datum est ei ut administráret ómnia negótia domus illíus. Sed uxor Putíphari odit Ioséphum, et accusávit eum crímine falso. Pútiphar crédidit verbis uxóris suae, et iecit Ioséphum in cárcerem. Sed Deus erat cum Iosépho, et dedit ei grátiam in conspéctu príncipis cárceris.

In hoc cárcere erant multi álii viri. Inter hos erant duo servi regis. Unus ex his fúerat pistor regis. Álius fúerat pincérna régius (ille ferébat cálicem vini ad regem). Hi duo vidérunt sómnia quadam nocte, et narravérunt sómnia sua Iosépho. Pincérna narrávit sómnium suum, "Vidébam coram me vitem in qua erant tres propágines in quibus uvae erant. Hábui cálicem Pharaónis in manu mea, et pressi uvas in cálicem et dedi calícem Pharaóni."

Ioséphus autem respóndit ei, "Haec est interpretátio sómnii—tres propágines, tres adhuc dies sunt. Post hos dies Phárao recordábitur tui et ministérii tui, et restítuet te in locum tuum, et dabis ei cálicem secúndum offícium tuum, sicut ántea faciébas. Sed cum vénies in domum Pharaónis, rogo te ut loquáris illi pro me, ut éxeam ex hoc cárcere. Quia vénditus sum e terra Hebraeórum a frátribus meis, et ínnocens missus sum in hunc cárcerem."

ígitur-*therefore*
emit-*bought*
-que-*and*
administráre-*manage*
negótium-*business*
crimen-*charge*
grátia-*favor*
conspéctus-*sight*
pistor-*baker*
pincérna-*butler*
calix-*cup*
vitis-*vine*
propágo-*branch*
uva-*grape*
pressit-*pressed*
restitúere-*restore*
ántea-*before*

Vocabularium

administráre, ávit, átus-*govern, manage*
émere, emit, emptus-*buy*
restitúere, restítuit, restitútus-*restore*
ántea (*adv.*)-*before, formerly*
magnus calix, cálice-*cup*
malum crimen, crímine-*charge, crime*
grátia, a-*favor, grace, gratitude*
negótium, o-*business, trouble*

Nunc Cogitemus

First and Second Person Passive of Imperfect Indicative: We already know the third person passive of the imperfect indicative—and we know the stick:

r, ris, tur, mur, mini, ntur

Put them together, and we have what we want:

	r
	ris
amaba	tur
	mur
	mini
	ntur

And, since all *imperfects* are the same, there is no use to write out more examples in this book (but you write some for practice).

The Indefinite Pronoun Aliquis, Aliquid: It means: "someone, something."

Declension—just like the interrogative *quis, quid* (see Lesson 38) except: *Neuter nominative and objective plural* is *áliqua*—not *áliquae.*

How does it differ in meaning from *quidam*? *Quidam* means: a certain one (I know but won't tell). *Áliquis* means: someone (I don't know who).

The Indefinitive Adjective: It has the same forms as *qui, quae, quod,* except for three: *áliqua* (used in three places): *nominative singular feminine,* (2) nominative

and objective plural neuter. Therefore it has three forms in the nominative singular: *áliqui, áliqua, áliquod.*

THE ENCLITIC -QUE: In the story above, we saw *-que* used to mean *and*. It is different from *et* in two ways: 1. *-que* is attached to the end of a word, but is translated *before* the same word. 2. *-que* is a closer connective than *et*: English has only one *and*—Latin has three—in order of closeness of connection: *-que, ac* (*atque*), *et*. *Et* is the loosest; but *-que* is the closest: *agnus porcíque* —the lamb and the pigs (The lamb would prefer to have *et*.)

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

"Ioséphe, quare in Aegýptum ducebáris?" "Fratres mei me odérunt." "Sed cur te odérunt? Conabáris áliquid mali contra eos fácere?" "Nullo modo. Sed sómnia hábui: In uno sómnio in agris cum eis eram, et adorábar a manípulis eórum. In áltero sómnio a sole, luna, et úndecim stellis colébar." "Cum haec eis loqueréris, nonne timébas ne occideréris ab eis?" "Útique, sed Deus non permísit ut occíderer—solúmmodo permísit ut vénderer servus in Aegýptum. Sed Deus bonus est. Fáciet ut bona étiam ex his malis meis véniant."

AUDIAMUS PLURA DE TERRA AEGYPTI

Quid loquebáris? Dicísne quod rex tuus est deus? Nos crédere hoc non póssumus—nos enim Hebraéi sumus, et unum verum Deum cólimus. Sed nihilóminus, de rege vestro audíre vólumus. Quod est nomen eius? "Nomen eius est Phárao." Et quis erat pater eius? "Pater eius étiam erat Phárao—semper enim reges nostros 'Phárao' vocámus. Verum nomen eius est nomen sacrum. Non licet nobis pronuntiáre verum nomen eius."

Quid ergo signíficat hoc verbum *Phárao*? "Signíficat: *domus magna*. Nemo enim in persóna secúnda loqui potest huic regi. Semper dícimus *de eo* in tértia persóna. Póssumus dícere de '*Quodam*'. Ille enim est étiam *ka* totíus terrae Aegýpti." Sed quid signíficat illud verbum *ka*? "Diffícile est explicáre. Phárao est, ut ita dicam (*so to speak*) ánima terrae huius. Ómnia enim per eum vivunt. Sol étiam movétur potestáte eius. Sed étiam est protéctor Aegýpti. Ítaque dúplici (*double*) sensu dícimus quod ille est *ka* totíus Aegýpti." Sed nonne móritur rex vester? et si móritur, quo modo deus esse potest? Deus enim immortális est. "Rex noster non solum est deus unus —est plures dei. Est Horus, id est, *accípiter* (*falcon*)—qui est étiam deus et fílius dei. Sed étiam est Seth. Ítaque rex est duo dómini. Sed post mortem fit álius deus. Fit Osíris, qui est deus, rex mortuórum." Sed nos crédere nólumus quod ille est deus qui semper rémanet et remanébit in sepúlchro. Deus enim vere immortális est. Est rex vivórum et mortuórum.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. You were called the great house. 2. We were heard by all men in this land. 3. Joseph (*Ioséphe*), you were bought by the men of Egypt. 4. He will attempt to govern this great land. 5. Let them speak to Joseph, for he will restore everything. 6. I was sent here because of a false charge (use ablative without preposition). 7. You were restored to the favor of Pharao.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Pater matérque eius magno affécti sunt dolóre putántes eum interféctum esse, cum re vera in terra Aegýpti servus esset. Non solum autem in illa terra servus factus est Ioséphus, verum étiam in cárcerem propter ódium uxóris dómini sui missus est. Cui cum in cárcere esset narravérunt sómnia pincérna pistórque Pharaónis.

LECTIO SEXAGESIMA PRIMA

De prima et secunda persona in indicativo passivo praesenti
De pronomine: quis

Iosḗphus, in cárcere in terra aliéna, iam interpretátus est sómnium príncipis pincernárum Pharaónis. Sed étiam princeps pistórum Pharaónis narrávit sómnium suum, dicens: "Et ego vidi sómnium, quod tria canístra farínae habérem super caput meum. Et in uno canístro portábam omnes cibos qui fiunt arte pistória, et aves coeli comedébant ex eo. Rogo te, ut éxplices mihi interpretatiónem sómnii huius." Respóndet Iosḗphus, "Haec est interpretátio sómnii: Tria canístra, tres adhuc dies sunt: post quos aúferet Phárao caput tuum, ac suspéndet te in cruce, et aves cómedent carnes tuas."

Et post tres dies natalítius Pharaónis erat, et in convívio Phárao recordátus est pincérnae et pistóris qui erant in cárcere. Et restítuit álterum in locum suum, ut porrígeret ei cálicem, álterum autem suspéndit in cruce. Pincérna tamen oblítus est Iosḗphi, et hic remánsit in cárcere.

Post duos annos, vidit Phárao sómnium. Putábat se stare ad flumen, de quo ascendébant septem boves pulchrae et crassae valde, et pascebántur in locis palústribus. Étiam áliae septem boves venérunt e flúmine, defórmes et exíles valde, et septem defórmes boves comedérunt septem pulchras boves.

Sed eádem nocte, Phárao vidit et áliud sómnium. Septem spicae erant in culmo uno, et plenae et pulchrae erant. Sed áliae septem oriebántur, exíles valde, et septem exíles comedérunt septem pulchras. Post haec, Phárao surréxit a sómniis suis, et térritus est. Et misit ad omnes vates in omni terra Aegýpti ut veniŕent et interpretaréntur sómnia sua. Sed non póterant. (Continuábitur)

aliénus-*foreign*
canístrum-*basket*
farína-*meal*
auférre-*take away*
suspéndere-*hang*
crux-*cross*
natalítius-*birthday*
convívium-*banquet*
porrígere-*reach*
tamen-*nevertheless*
oblítus-*forgot*
bos-*cow*
crassus-*fat, thick*
pasci-*feed*
palúster-*marshy*
defórmis-*ugly*
exílis-*thin*
spica-*ear of grain*
culmus-*stalk*
plenus-*full*
oríri-*arise*

VOCABULARIUM

auférre, ábstulit, ablátus (*compound of* ferre)-*take away*: Aufert arma míliti: *He takes arms from the soldier*

oblivísci, oblítus est-*forget* (*with poss. or obj.*)

oriúntur, oríri, ortus est-*rise, arise*

pasci, pastus est-*feed on* (*with abl.*)

suspéndere, péndit, pénsus-*hang*

aliénus, a, um-*foreign, unfavorable*

bos, bove-*cow, bull, ox* (*masc. or fem.*)

bona crux, cruce-*cross*

tamen-*nevertheless*

FIRST AND SECOND PERSON PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE: Here the short stick works reasonably well—though there are two forms, in circles, where it does not fit perfectly:

ama	tene	poni	capi	audi
ris	ris	(e)ris	(e)ris	ris
tur	tur	tur	tur	tur
mur	mur	mur	mur	mur
mini	mini	mini	mini	mini

Then we recall that we already know the third plurals:

amántur teneńtur ponúntur capiúntur audiúntur

So we have to learn only five forms:

amor téneor ponor cápior aúdior

And to note the two irregulars: *póneris* and *cáperis*.

The easiest way to deal with these forms is merely to memorize them! But concentrate on *recognizing* them

for the moment, and learn to *make* them gradually. Compare them to the present subjunctive—there are some similarities.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN QUIS, QUID: Declension is no problem—just the same as that of the interrogative pronoun *quis, quid*, which we already know. It means: someone, anyone; something, anything. *Qua* may replace *quae*, except in the nominative singular feminine.

THE INDEFINITE ADJECTIVE: QUI, QUAE, QUOD: Same declension as the relative pronoun, *qui, quae, quod*.

USE OF THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE: The meaning is about the same as that of the indefinite *áliquis* (and its adjective form *áliqui*)—but Latin used *quis, quid* (and the adjective form likewise, of course) —always and only after: *si, nisi, ne, num,* and *an*.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Iosḗphus vénerat ut fratres suos inveníret, sed cum ad eos venísset, noluérunt ei loqui. Iosḗphus ítaque dixit, "Fratres mei, quid vultis? Quare non loquímini mihi? Irascímini mihi? Si quid contra vos feci, dícite mihi quid sit." Sed fratres coepérunt ligáre eum dicéntes, "Somniátor es. Vídeas nunc quid prosint tibi sómnia tua." Iosḗphus autem, "Cur ligor a vobis? Conámini me interfícere?" Post áliquid témporis fratres vidérunt mercatóres veniéntes ad sese, et vocavérunt eos, "Mercatóres, veníte ad nos. Vultis servum émere?" Sed Iosḗphus dixit, "Quid nunc facis mihi? Cur vendor his viris?" Illi autem respondérunt dicéntes, "Ódimus te. Discéde a nobis—sis servus in Aegýpto."

NUNC AUDIAMUS PLURA DE AMICIS NOSTRIS IN AEGYPTO

(Note: In this story we must use two verbs that are very similar:
[iáciunt], iácere, iecit, iactus—throw
iacére, iácuit, iácitus—lie)

Velímus (*we would like*) plura de hoc Osíride audíre. Quis erat ille? "Antíquis tempóribus Osíris erat rex in Aegýpto. Uxor eius Isis vocabátur. Osíris et Isis hómines agros cólere docuérunt et fruméntum comédere. Ántea enim hómines in Aegýpto álios hómines coméderant.

Sed Osíris fratrem hábuit, cuius nomen erat Seth. Seth Osíridem óderat, et eum occídere vóluit. Ut hoc fáceret, Seth magnum fecit convívium (*banquet*) et invitávit Osíridem et uxórem eius Ísidem. Cum omnes cibos bonos coméderent in hoc convívio, Seth surréxit et dixit, "Audíte me, amíci mei! Volo magnum dare vobis donum (*gift*)! Vidéte hanc arcam (*box, coffin*) egrégiam in qua homo mórtuus poni potest. Uni ex vobis volo hanc arcam dare. Si quis ex vobis eam habére vult, iáceat (*lie*) in hac arca. Ille cui aptíssima (*best fitting*) est, eam habébit!"

Omnes qui convívio áderant voluérunt iacére in hac arca. Necésse enim est ut corpus mórtui hóminis servétur—alióquin (*otherwise*) *ka* eius vívere non potest. Inter álios, Osíris in hac arca iácuit. Et arca ei aptíssima erat! Sed Seth et amíci eius celériter arcam clausérunt, et illam in flumen Nilum iecérunt. Ítaque haec arca, in qua erat Osíris, portáta est (*was carried*) aquis in mare, et in mari portáta est in quandam urbem Phoeníciae quae Byblos vocabátur. Ibi arca in terra iacta est, et arbor (*tree*) magna circa eam crevit (*grew*).

Sed quid fecit Isis? Isis audívit ubi corpus Osíridis esset, et in Phoeníciam venit. Ibi regem Phoeníciae rogávit ut corpus Osíridis licéret portáre (*carry*) íterum in Aegýptum. Rex permísit ei hoc fácere. Sed Seth audívit Osíridem iterum esse in Aegýpto. Ítaque venit et corpus eius in quatuórdecim (*14*) partes scidit (*cut*)." Sed iam tempus est ut discedámus. Audiémus te de hac re cras.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. You are being sold to the Egyptians. 2. I am being led to a strange land. 3. If anyone questions you, say, "We are following Joseph." 4. He asks whether anyone wishes to see him. 5. Pharao will take away your head and the birds will feed on it (abl. alone). 6. He asked whether anyone would forget Joseph. 7. Because the king loves Joseph, we will remain in this land.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Non solum hómines qui in cárcere sunt sómnia vidére possunt. Ipse enim Phárao nocte quadam duo sómnia quae omnes in terra Aegýpti vates non possent interpretári (*deponent verb*) vidit. His sómniis visis, Phárao térritus est, sed virum qui interpretári posset in cárcere esse nescívit. Iosḗphi enim pincérna cuius sómnium olim in cárcere explicáverat oblítus erat.

LECTIO SEXAGESIMA SECUNDA

De prima et secunda persona in indicativo passivo futuro
De casu vocativo

Phárao, rex Aegýpti vocáverat omnes vates in terra Aegýpti, ut interpretaréntur sómnia sua. Sed non póterant. Tum pincérna cuius sómnium Ioséphus interpretátus erat recordátus est Ioséphi, qui adhuc erat in cárcere, et locútus est Pharaóni, "Dómine mi rex, líceat mihi áliquid loqui. Servus tuus olim erat in cárcere, et étiam sómnium somniávi. Sed mecum in carcere erat puer Hebraéus, qui recte explicávit sómnium mihi. Ego pollícitus sum quod recordárer eius—sed oblítus sum. Ille póterit interpretári sómnium regis. Habet enim magnam sapiéntiam a Deo."

Rex ergo praecépit ut Ioséphus adducerétur ad se. Cum Ioséphus staret coram rege, Phárao narrávit ei duo sómnia. Et Ioséphus respondit: "Duo sómnia regis re vera unum sunt. Deus enim osténdere vult ea quae vénient in terra Aegýpti. Septem boves pulchrae et septem spicae plenae sunt septem anni ubertátis. Sed septem boves exíles et septem spicae exíles, septem anni famis sunt. Et hi anni hoc órdine implebúntur: Ecce primum vénient septem anni fertilitátis magnae in univérsa terra Aegýpti: quos sequéntur septem anni tantae sterilitátis ut oblivióni tradátur cuncta abundántia praetérita. Fames enim consúmet omnem terram, et magnitúdo inópiae perdet magnitúdinem ubertátis. Deus misit duo sómnia tibi, ut osténderet firmitátem consílii sui—quia haec ómnia sine áliquo dúbio vénient super terram hanc. Nunc ergo provídeat rex virum sapiéntem et indústrium, et praefíciat eum terrae Aegýpti. Et hic vir praefíciat álios viros per cunctas regiónes. Et servétur quinta pars (⅕) frúctuum per septem annos fertilitátis. Et omne fruméntum sit sub potestáte Pharaónis, et servétur in úrbibus. Hoc modo praeparétur futúrae fami septem annórum, ne consumétur terra Aegýpti." (Continuábitur cras)

tum-*then*
interpretári (*deponent*)-*interpret*
Dómine mi-*my Lord*
somniáre-*dream*
recte-*rightly*
pollícitus-*promised*
praecípere-*command*
sapiéntia-*wisdom*
addúcere-*lead to*
plenus-*full*
ubértas-*fertility*
implére-*fulfill*
oblívio-*forgetfulness*
trádere-*give over*
cunctus-*all*
praetéritus-*past*
inópia-*need*
pérdere-*destroy*
providére-*provide*
sápiens-*wise*
praefícere-*put in charge of*

VOCABULARIUM

addúcere, dúxit, dúctus-*lead to, influence*
pollicéri, pollícitus est-*promise*
[praecípiunt], praecípere, praecépit, praecéptus-*command*
[praefíciunt], praefícere, fécit, féctus-*put someone in charge of something* (praefécit Ioséphum urbi)
trádere, trádidit, tráditus-*hand over*
inópia, a-*need*
plenus, a, um-*full*
sapiéntia, a-*wisdom*
magna ubértas, ubertáte-*fertility, richness*
tum-*then*

NUNC COGITEMUS

FIRST AND SECOND PERSON FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE: Our short stick here works again reasonably well. But, just as in the present passives, so too here there are two forms, in circles, where it does not fit perfectly:

	(e)ris
amabi	tur
	mur
	mini

	(e)ris
tenebi	tur
	mur
	mini

	ris
pone	tur
	mur
	mini

	ris
capie	tur
	mur
	mini

	ris
audie	tur
	mur
	mini

Then we recall that we already know the third plurals: amabúntur tenebúntur ponéntur capiéntur audiéntur

So, we have to learn only five forms:

amábor tenébor ponar cápiar aúdiar

and to note the two irregulars: *amáberis* and *tenéberis*.

We have, therefore, a total of *three* irregular second singulars in the passive: two presents: *póneris* and *cáperis*, and one future, *paráberis* (or *tenéberis, vidéberis*, same thing).

Are any of these forms spelled the same as any other form we know? Yes—the future second singular *ponéris* looks like the present second singular *póneris*: but the accent is different. The future is pronounced *ponéris*; the present *póneris*.

VOCATIVE CASE: When we call someone by name, we use the vocative case. Most nouns have no special form for the vocative—so we use the nominative. Only in the singular of the second declension do we have special forms, thus:

NOUNS: ending in *-us—e*. For example, *Marce, Domine*
ending in *-ius—i*. For example, *Porci* (in *Marcus Pórcius Cato*)

ADJECTIVES: Both forms in *-ius* and forms in *-us* use *-e*. For example, *bone*.

Notice the one odd adjective form, *mi*, as in: *Dómine mi Rex*—My Lord King. Learn all easily: O mi egrégie et bone Marce Porci!

N.B. *Deus* never changes.

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Iosēphus ex cárcere in Aegýpto ductus est, et nunc coram Pharaóne stat. Phárao lóquitur, "Iosēphe, veni ad me." "Quid vis a me, Dómine mi Rex?" "Servus meus dicit quod tu conáberis interpretatiónem somniórum meórum dare. Si póteris, non solum a cárcere liberáberis, sed a me honoráberis." Cumque Iosēphus Regi explicavísset de fame futúra, Rex dixit: "Si septem anni famis in hanc terram vénient, omnes moriémur." Iosēphus autem respóndit, "Si consílium meum sequémini, servabímini et non moriémini. Praefíciat Rex virum qui fruméntum servet per annos fertilitátis sub potestáte tua." Et Rex dixit, "Consílium tuum mihi placet—tu vocáberis Salvátor (*Savior*) mundi."

VELIMUS AUDIRE PLURA DE OSIRIDE

Iam audívimus ab amíco nostro Ptáhotep quo modo Seth corpus mórtui Osíridis invénit, quem Isis e Phoenícia reportáverat (*had carried back*). "Seth scidit corpus Osíridis in quatuórdecim partes, et sparsit (*scattered*) partes per terram ad flumen Nilum." Sed quare Seth fecit hoc? "Néscio, sed probabíliter ne Osíris posset esse immortális—homo enim non potest esse immortális sine córpore. Seth enim magno odit ódio.

Sed dei boni sunt. Non semper permíttunt malis ut ómnia quae volunt fáciant. Ergo magnus deus Ra (qui est sol) duos álios deos misit, id est, Thoth et Anúbem (Anúbis). Hi dei quatuórdecim partes mórtui Osíridis invenérunt, et partes eius per artem mágicam composuérunt (*put together*). Tum Isis apéruit os eius (*his mouth*) et vanno (*fan*) flavit (*blew*) spíritum in os eius. Hoc modo Osíris vitam recépit—sed non vitam huius mundi: Osíris enim in sepúlchro remánsit. Deus mortuórum est."

Qui manet in sepúlchro non vidétur nobis esse deus. Sed quo modo nunc fit rex Osíris? "Rex per mágicas artes fit Osíris. Olim plebs Aegyptíaca has artes nesciébat. Sed nunc omnes sciunt. Ergo per mágicas artes, omnes nos fiémus Osíris post mortem."

Tum Ptáhotep, non sine supérbia, étiam dixit, "Ipse étiam fiam Osíris!" Poterátne Osíris vindíctam súmere (*get revenge*) de Seth? "Osíris et Isis fílium habuérunt, cuius nomen erat Horus. Ille Horus post mortem Osíridis natus est. Sed Horus vicit Seth, et regnum sibi accépit. Ínsuper, Horus olim auxílium dedit étiam magno deo Ra. Quam propter causam, Horus in navi solis sedére potest. Omni nocte, haec navis solis návigat in Nilo quae sub terra est. Horus in navi sedet omni nocte, et deféndit Ra a monstris quae sub terra sunt."

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. We will be saved by Joseph. 2. You will be led into Pharao's house. 3. You (plural) will be restored to your place. 4. You and your friends will forget me. 5. We will not be killed, for the King loves us. 6. I will not delay but will set out swiftly. 7. If he asks anything, I will promise to do it.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Iosēphum interpretátum (*participle of* interpretári) sómnium praefécit Phárao omni terrae Aegýpti. Ille autem explicáverat de septem annis ubertátis futúris, et de septem áliis annis famis futúris. Ut osténderet firmitátem consíli sui misit Deus Pharaóni duo quae eándem significatiónem habérent sómnia. Homínibus univérsae terrae praecépit Iosēphus ut fruméntum servarétur in úrbibus sub Pharaónis potestáte.

LECTIO SEXAGESIMA TERTIA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

Consílium Ioséphi plácuit Pharaóni et ómnibus minístris eius. Phárao ítaque locútus est ad eos, "Ubi inveníre potérimus talem virum, qui spíritu Dei plenus sit?" Dixítque Phárao Iosépho, "Quia osténdit tibi Deus ómnia, quae locútus est, numquid sapientiórem virum inveníre pótero? Tu eris super domum meam, et ad tui oris impérium, omnis pópulus obédiet: uno tantum regni sólio te praecédam. Ecce, constítui te super univérsam terram Aegýpti."

Phárao tulit ánulum de manu sua, et dedit eum in manum Ioséphi, vestiméntaque melióra dedit ei. Fecítque eum ascéndere super currum suum secúndum, clamánte praecóne, ut omnes sciant Iooséphum secúndam habére potestátem univérsae terrae Aegýpti. Phárao étiam vertit nomen Iooséphi, et vocávit eum língua Aegyptíaca "Sáphaneth-phanée." (Nescímus significatiónem huius nóminis. Sciéntia enim línguae Aegyptíacae adhuc imperfécta est. Sanctus Hierónymus putábat hoc nomen probabíliter significáre "Salvátor mundi.")

Ioséphus erat trigínta annórum quando stetit ante Pharaónem. Post haec, Ioséphus circumívit omnes regiónes Aegýpti. Venítque fertílitas septem annórum, cum magna abundántia ómnium frumentórum. Tántaque fuit abundántia fruménti, ut arénae maris coaequarétur. Iubénte Iosépho, multa fruménta pósita sunt in hórrea Aegýpti, ut servaréntur in annis fertilitátis magnae. Venérunt étiam quos Ioséphus praedíxerat septem álii anni magnae famis. Étiam in áliis terris fames valde magna erat. (Continuábitur cras)

sapiéntior-*wiser*
os, ore-*mouth*
tantum-*only*
numquid-num (*see Lesson 58*)
sólium-*throne*
praecédere-*be ahead*
constítuit-*set up*
ánulus-*ring*
currus-*chariot*
clamáre-*cry*
praeco-*herald*
verto-*change, turn*
salvátor-*savior*
circumíre-*go around*
aréna-*sand*
coaequáre-*make equal*
hórreum-*barn*

Vocabularium

circumíre, íit, *itúrus-*go around*	vértere, vertit, versus-*turn, change, translate*
constitúere, stítuit, stitútus-*set up, decide, determine*	hórreum, o-*barn*
praecédere, céssit, *cessúrus-*go before*	magnum os, ore-*mouth*
	bonus praeco, praecóne-*herald*
	tantum-*only*

Videamus Formas Veteres

Review of all Passives:

1. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive simply use the passive participle with the suitable form (present, imperfect, or future) of the verb *esse*.

2. That leaves us with the simple tenses: present, imperfect, and future.

a) The present and imperfect subjunctive, and the imperfect indicative merely use the full stick: *r, ris, tur, mur, mini, ntur.*

b) The present and future indicatives use the short-stick, *ris, tur, mur, mini* except for three second singular forms:

Present of third conjugation: *póneris* and *cáperis*
Future of first and second conjugation: *amábéris* (*tenébéris*). We already knew the third plurals:

PRESENT: amántur tenéntur ponúntur capiúntur audiúntur
FUTURE: amabúntur tenebúntur ponéntur capiéntur audiéntur

So we had to memorize only the first singulars:

PRESENT: amor téneor ponor cápior aúdior
FUTURE: amábor tenébor ponar cápiar aúdiar

Practice: 1. How do you say, in the indicative: you are loved, you were being loved, you will be loved, you have been loved, you had been loved, you will have been loved; and in the subjunctive: you are loved, you were being loved, you have been loved, you had been loved.

—Now make the same forms for *tenére, dúcere, cápere, audíre.*

2. How do you say, in the indicative: we are being killed, we were being killed, we shall be killed, we have been killed, we had been killed, we shall have been killed; and in the subjunctive: we are being killed, we were being killed, we have been killed, we had been killed. Now make the same forms for *amáre, vidére, pónere, audíre.*

3. Give the vocative of: Marcus Pórcius Cato, Quintus Servílius, good lamb.

BE SURE TO USE THE PATTERN TAPE FOR THIS LESSON.

ADHUC PLURA DE REBUS AEGYPTIACIS

Viri Hebraíci duo, amíci nostri, quodam die in terra Aegýpti ambulábant (*were walking*). Fere hoc modo unus ad álterum locútus est, "Ea quae Ptáhotep nobis de Osíride et de régibus Aegýpti narrábat, sunt mirabília (*wonderful*). Sed non possum tália crédere. Non enim fácile est crédere illa. Ínsuper prophétae nostri veritátem nobis dicunt: unum tantum esse Deum. Ergo certum est quod rex Aegýpti re vera non est deus. Probabíliter quidam ex illis régibus mali sunt. Hódie si vidébimus Ptáhotep, interrogábimus eum de hac re. Sed ecce—ibi ille est. Ptáhotep! Veni ad nos. Vólumus plura a te de terra tua audíre.

Ptáhotep non odit de terra sua loqui, et de se. Celériter cucúrrit (*ran*) ad amícos nostros, "Quid vultis amíci mei? Forsan vos étiam vultis esse Osíris post mortem?" Hoc non vólumus. Sed dic nobis de magnis régibus Aegýpti. Tu dicis eos esse deos. Nos, qui Hebraéi sumus, crédímus, sicut scis, solúmmodo unum Deum esse. Sed nunc ne de quaestióne illa loquámur. Habémus áliam quaestiónem: suntne omnes reges Aegýpti boni? "Útique, amíci mei—qui enim deus est, quómodo potest non bonus esse?" Ergo omnes reges Aegyptíaci credidérunt narratiónem de Osíride veram esse? "Hoc non nego—non omnes reges haec credidérunt." (Continuábitur cras)

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. Will you promise to save Egypt? 2. I will attempt to do that. 3. He put grain into the barns so that we might be saved. 4. We know why you have been put into prison. 5. Having given him a ring, Pharao set Joseph over the whole land. 6. But the king himself did not have the grain; he ordered them to follow Joseph. 7. You are being sold because we hate you.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Ioséphi nomen a Pharaóne in áliud nomen versum est. Nomen novum eius erat: Sáphaneth-phanée. Huius verbi significatiónem cum sit in lingua Aegyptíaca quae quibúsdam viris modérnis nota est, nescímus. Cum enim multa de hac lingua nóverint, nihilóminus adhuc quaedam quae interpretári non possunt rémanent. Salvatórem mundi hoc nomen significáre putávit Sanctus Hierónymus (*Jerome*).

PSITTACUS ET MAGUS
(The Parrot and the Magician)

Quidam bonus magus laborábat in magna navi transatlántica. Omni nocte ostendébat artem suam áliis qui iter faciébant in hac navi. Sed psíttacus, cuius dóminus nauta erat, semper ridébat (*laughed*), "Ille re vera non est magus! Nihil enim potest fácere evanéscere (*vanish*) nisi cerevísiam (*beer*)." Illa nocte venit tempéstas (*storm*) magna in mari. Navis in qua amíci nostri erant mersa est (*was sunk*). Sed magus et psíttacus serváti sunt, tenéntes tábulam (*a plank*). Cum ergo illi iam in aquis essent, psíttacus dixit, "Awk. Concédo (*I admit*) te esse bonum magum—sed quid fecísti navi?"

LECTIO SEXAGESIMA QUARTA

De indicativo futuro perfecto et de subiunctivo perfecto
De formis passivis modi imperativi

Septem anni magnae famis iam áderant. Hómines venérunt ad regem, clamántes se non habére cibum. Phárao autem dicébat, "Ite ad Ioseph: et quidquid ille vobis díxerit, fácite." Étiam in terra Chánaan, in qua habitábat Iacob, pater Ioséphi, fames venit. Ille ergo misit decem ex fíliis suis in Aegýptum ut émerent fruméntum. Bénjamin autem, fílium suum mínimum, non misit in Aegýptum ne quid mali accíderet ei.

Decem fílii Iacob venérunt in Aegýptum, et vidérunt Ioséphum. Sed non scivérunt eum esse fratrem suum. Forsan putavérunt eum iam mórtuum esse. Ioséphus ipse scivit fratres sed, ut probáret eos, non dixit se esse fratrem eórum. Interrogávit eos, "A qua terra venístis?" Qui respondérunt, "A terra Chánaan, ut emámus quae necessária sunt. Omnes nos fílii uníus viri sumus. Pater noster duódecim fílios hábuit, e quibus decem vénimus, mínimus cum patre nostro est, et álius non iam super terram est."

Iosépus autem simulábat se suspicári eos, "Re vera vos exploratóres estis—ut videátis munitiónes terrae huius venístis." Et misit eos in cárcerem. Post tres dies edúxit eos e cárcere et dixit eis, "Fácite quae dixi, et vivétis: Deum enim tímeo. Si pacífici estis, frater vester unus ligétur in cárcere: vos autem abíte, et ferte fruménta quae emístis in domos vestras, et fratrem vestrum mínimum ad me addúcite ut possim vestros probáre sermónes, et non moriámini."

Fratres ergo locúti sunt ad ínvicem, "Mérito haec pátimur, quia peccávimus in fratrem nostrum. Ergo venit super nos haec tribulátio." E quibus unus, Ruben, dixit, "Nonne dixi vobis: Nolíte peccáre in púerum, et non audivístis me? Ecce, sanguis eius exquíritur."

Fratres autem nesciébant quod intellígeret Iosépus, quia per intérpretem loquerétur ad eos. Iosépus autem flevit, et mox revérsus est ad eos. Iosépus iussit Simeónem ligári, illis praeséntibus, et étiam iussit pecúniam poni in saccis eórum.

Cum in via essent, vidérunt pecúniam esse in saccis suis. Et timuérunt multum. (Continuábitur cras)

quidquid-*whatever*
mínimus-*least*
simuláre-*pretend*
suspicári-*suspect*
explorátor-*spy*
pacíficus-*peaceful*
ferte-*carry!*
abíre-*go away*
sermo-*word*
mérito-*rightly*
pati-*suffer*
peccáre-*sin*
exquírere-*demand*
intérpres-*interpreter*
flere-*weep*
saccus-*sack*

Vocabularium

abíre, iit, *itúrus-*go away*
flére, flevit, fletus-*weep*
patiúntur, pati, passus est-*suffer*
peccáre, ávit, átus-*sin*
bonus explorátor, óre-*spy, scout*
mínimus, a, um-*least, smallest*
bonus sermo, óne-*word, conversation*
mérito-*deservingly*

Nunc Cogitemus

Future Perfect Indicative Active: To form this tense we use the second part of the verb, the perfect active. Merely remove the third singular ending *-it* and substitute:

ero	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erint

	parav	ero	parav	erimus
Thus:		eris		eritis
		erit		erint

Notice that these endings are the same as the future of *esse* except that the third plural future perfect has *-erint* instead of *-erunt*.

Translation: I shall have prepared, you will have prepared, he will have prepared.

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE: In spelling, all forms are the same as the future perfect indicative, except for the first singular—the subjunctive has *-erim*, not *-ero*. But the accent of the subjunctive is different in some few forms, as follows:

Future Perfect Indicative	*Perfect Subjunctive*
paravérimus	paraverímus
paravéritis	paraverítis

USE OF THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: We have already seen this (for the perfect passive) in Lesson 57. But here it is again: it is ordinarily found only in dependent clauses, when the main verb refers to present or future time. The general sense will show the difference between present and perfect subjunctive, in English to Latin. Study the following pair, one having the present, one having perfect subjunctive:

Rogat ex qua terra vénerint. *Rogat ubi sint.*

He asks from what land they have come. He asks where they are.

IMPERATIVE PASSIVE: In the singular, the forms are the same as the active infinitive endings. Thus:

amáre,	habére,	pónere,	cápere,	audíre
be loved!	be had!	be put!	(etc.)	

In the plural, the forms are the same as the second plural present indicative passive. Thus: parámini, habémini, ponímini, capímini, audímini.

Deponent verbs will use the same endings as above, including the singular forms that seem like active infinitives. Thus:

lóquere—speak!
loquímini—speak!

NUNC EXERCEAMUS NOS

Iacob fílios suos ad se vocávit, dixítque eis, "Nisi eméritis fruméntum nobis in Aegýpto, omnes nos moriémur. Proficiscímini ergo celériter." Unus ex filiis eius eum interrogávit, "Pater, quid faciémus si Rex nolúerit fruméntum véndere?" Cui Iacob respóndit, "Ferte pecúniam multam vobíscum, et loquímini illi de magna fame in terra nostra. Sed praecípue (*especially*) oráte ad Deum nostrum. Si nos ómnia quae póssumus fecérimus, ille nos non relínquet."

Sed in Aegýpto Ioséphus primum símulat se eos non novísse, et intérrogat eos num contra Aegýptum vénerint.

DE REGE AEGYPTI HAERETICO

Deínde Ptáhotep rem novam dixit, "Re vera, unus ex régibus nostris olim factus est haeréticus!" Haeréticus! Hoc valde mirábile est. "Útique—nomen eius fuit Amenhótep quartus. Sed ille rex significatiónem huius nóminis non amávit—nomen enim signíficat, 'Satis est pro Amen.' Mutávit ítaque nomen suum, et se vocávit 'Ikhnaton'—quod signíficat, 'Ille qui agit pro Aton.' Aton enim est sol. Ikhnáton dixit quod Aton erat solus Deus. Hoc modo símilis vobis Hebraéis erat." Nos scimus solúmodo unum verum Deum esse, sed non póssumus dícere quod sol est solus Deus. Sol enim non solum non solus deus est, sed étiam sol omníno non est Deus. Deus enim verus vidéri óculis (*eyes*) mortálibus non potest. Sed si Aton est sol—nonne étiam Ra est sol, et Horus est fílius solis? "Útique, veritátem dixístis—sed divérsis (*various*) modis illi sunt sol. Sed, ut revertámur ad quaestiónem nostram—Ikhnáton dixit solum Aton deum esse. Ergo omnes álii dei, secúndum illum, non sunt re vera dei. Re vera non sunt. Séquitur ut Osíris non sit deus, et nos omnes, qui putámus nos fiéri Osíridem post mortem, nihil érimus. Quam propter causam, omnes boni Aegýptíaci noluérunt verbis Ikhnáton crédere. Ikhnáton Aton colébat, sed omnes álii colébant Ikhnáton et álios deos multos." Ikhnáton ítaque se esse deum non putávit? "Útique. Videtísne omnes has státuas regum antiquórum? Nonne vidétis divínam maiestátem (*majesty*) in faciébus (*faces*) eórum? Sed Ikhnáton iussit státuas picturásque de se fíeri áliis modis. In his státuis Ikhnáton non vidétur esse deus. Vidétur esse homo aeger. Sed iam tempus est ut discédam. Narrábo vobis plura de hoc rege cras."

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. He asks us why we have attempted to conquer Egypt. 2. We really have not come here to conquer the country, but to buy grain. 3. Since he has warned us, we ought to fear him. 4. We suffer these things deservingly, since we sold our brother. 5. Joseph left so that he might weep. 6. I will ask him why Ikhnaton wished to destroy all the

other gods. 7. So that they would not know him, Joseph spoke to them through an interpreter.

Scramble Exercise

Frátribus per intérpretem lóquitur Iosḗphus suis interrogátque eos qua ex terra vénerint et quid habḗre velint. Et iussit eos, "Loquímini mihi de ómnibus quae vultis veritátem et parámini ut faciátis ómnia quae vobis díxerim. Cum enim multis videámini viri boni esse, mihi exploratóres esse vidémini. Ut bellum contra nos faciátis venístis.

LECTIO SEXAGESIMA QUINTA

De participiis futuris passivis
De casu obiectivo spatii et temporis

Novem fratres Iosépho, pecúnia repérta in saccis, timuérunt accédere ad patrem suum. Timébant étiam de salúte Simeónis, quem Ioséphus coégit manére in Aegýpto. Ítaque, doléntes accessérunt ad patrem suum, et narravérunt ei ómnia quae accíderant eis in Aegýpto. Ómnibus audítis, Iacob dóluit veheménter et flevit. Praesértim nolébat míttere Béniamin cum eis in Aegýptum, sicut Iosephus mandáverat. Nóluit amíttere Béniamin, sicut olim Iosephum amíserat. At necésse erat émere fruméntum, ne omnes períent. Ítaque, magno cum metu, permísit eis ut redírent in Aegýptum cum Béniamin. Misit étiam cum eis multa egrégia dona.

Cum eos vidísset, Ioséphus mandávit servis suis ut cenam parárent. Fratres autem térriti sunt, dicéntes, "Hic vir vult fácere omnes nos servos suos, propter pecúniam quam reperúimus in saccis nostris." Venérunt ítaque ad dispensatórem domus Iosephi, et narravérunt ei de pecúnia repérta in saccis. At ille dixit eis, "Pax vobíscum, nolíte timére: Deus vester, et Deus patris vestri dedit vobis pecúniam in saccis vestris. Nam pecúniam quam dedístis mihi accepi." Eduxítque ad eos Símeon. Deínde duxit eos in domum et dedit eis aquam ut lavárent pedes suos. Póstea Ioséphus ipse venit et interrogávit eos, "Vivítne adhuc pater vester? Qui respondérunt, "Útique, pater noster, servus tuus, adhuc vivit." At cum Ioséphus vidísset Béniamin, non pótuit se continére, sed discéssit in cubículum suum et flevit. (Continuábitur cras)

repértus-*found*
accédere-*approach*
salus-*safety*
manére-*remain*
dolére-*grieve*
veheménter-*greatly*
amíttere-*lose*
at-*but*
metus-*fear*
donum-*gift*
cena-*dinner*
dispensátor-*steward*
laváre-*wash*
pes-*foot*
continére-*restrain*
cubículum-*bedroom*

Vocabularium

accédere, céssit, *cessúrus-*go to, approach*	manére, mansit, *mansúrus-*remain*
amíttere, mísit, míssus-*lose*	reperíre, repéruit, repértus-*find, find out*
dolére, dóluit, *dolitúrus-*grieve, be pained*	metus, u-*fear*
mandáre, ávit, átus-*entrust, command*	mille-*thousand (see below)*
	bona salus, salúte-*safety, salvation*
	at-*but*

Nunc Cogitemus

Future Passive Participle: It is formed on the first part of the verb, using the ending *-ndus*, with the same connective vowels as in the *imperfect* indicative. Therefore, we could take any *imperfect* form, e.g., third singular, remove the *-bat*, add *-ndus*. The participle has all the endings of *bonus*: Thus:

parándus, habéndus, ponéndus, capiéndus, audiéndus

How is it used? *It expresses obligation*. Study this sample:

Hoc est faciéndum mihi.
This is TO BE DONE by me.

Therefore, we might make a crude but simple translation formula, which will work with all normal examples: TO BE plus the third part (participle) of the English verb.

Notice in the above example that we use the dative for the *agent*—ordinarily we use *ab* with the ablative for such ideas, but *not* with the future passive participle.

Notice also that this future passive participle normally comes with a *linking verb*—that is, the verb *to be* or any other verb that behaves in the same way, such as: *to seem, to be called*, etc.

Now notice that *Hoc est faciéndum mihi* could be translated: *I must do it*.

Therefore, the *dative* would become the *English subject*, and we would insert *must* before the *English verb*. With that in mind, we could translate an odd sort of example

because some verbs that have no passive in English can be used in this construction in Latin, thus:

Veniéndum est mihi. *Eúndum est tibi.*
I must come. You must go.

We could not say: "It is to be comed by me"—but we can soon learn to jump at once to say: I must come.

This construction is really very handy, once one gets used to it. But we will need some practice (and will get it).

Objective Case of Extent of Space and Time: The objective case *without any preposition* can indicate extent. Study these examples:

Erat in cárcere *tres dies.*

He was in prison *for three days.*

Venérunt *tria míllia* pássuum.

They came *three miles* (literally: three thousands of paces).

Mille: The word *mille,* meaning a *thousand,* is peculiar. In the singular, to mean *one thousand,* it is not declined, and acts like an *adjective* agreeing with a noun. Thus:

mille viri—a thousand men

But when it means more than one thousand, it becomes a third declension neuter *noun,* with a word in the possessive depending upon it. Thus:

tria míllia virórum—three thousand men (literally: 3 thousands of men). It is sometimes spelled: *mília* instead of *míllia.*

Nunc Exerceamus Nos

Iacob, pater duódecim filiórum, dixit fíliis suis, "Fames magna iam venit in terram nostram. Sed audívi fruméntum esse in Aegýpto. Quid ergo faciéndum est nobis? Fruméntum eméndum est in Aegýpto. Discedéndum est vobis, et in Aegýptum est eúndum (*from* ire) vobis. Dona bona sunt ferénda vobis ad regem terrae illíus, ut ille det vobis sufficiéntiam ómnium bonórum. Non reverténdum est vobis sine fruménto." Ad quae Símeon respóndit, "Pater mi, ómnia quae dicis nobis faciénda sunt. Et nos ea faciémus celériter. Plura verba nunc non sunt dicénda. Statim discedémus."

Plura de Ikhnaton

Próximo die Hebraéi nostri íterum amícum suum Ptáhotep vidérunt. Sine mora (*delay*) ille ad eos venit, quia multa adhuc remanébant dicénda de rege haerético. Quibus interrogántibus, Ptáhotep respóndit, "Ikhnáton non convérsus est ab haéresi sua. Mórtuus est in impietáte sua. Post regnum breve regis Sménkh-ka-Re, factus est rex álius vir—vel, ut veritátem dicam—puer. Novus enim rex adhuc puer erat cum in sólium Aegýpti veníret. Nomen huius regis fuit Tutankháton. Significátio huius nóminis vobis clara est—vos enim línguam nostram scitis—signíficat 'Imago viva de Aton.' Hunc regem, cum puer adhuc esset, sacerdótes magni dei Amen coegérunt relínquere vanam religiónem Aton, et redíre ad deum magnum, Amen. Hoc modo 'Amen' scriptus est religióni Aton. Et nomen regis mutátum est in Tutankhámen—cuius significatiónem fácile vidére potéstis. Ille paucos regnávit annos et mórtuus est."

English to Latin

1. There are many things to be done. 2. Why do we have to go to Egypt? 3. We shall have to go for many days and many miles. 4. But we must have grain—or we shall all die. 5. The Egyptians thought that the religion of Aton was to be destroyed. 6. It follows that Osiris also is not a god. 7. Ikhnaton did not think that he himself should be worshipped.

Scramble Exercise

Multa míllia pássuum iter fécerant Ioséphi fratres ántequam in saccis pecúniam invenérunt. Qua invénta multum doluéruntdixerúntque, "Quid faciéndum nobis? Reverténdum ad virum magnum illum in Aegýptum? An in terram nostram? Ducéndus erit nobis ad eum étiam frater mínimus quem pater amat Béniamin? Doléndum erit patri nostro si ille ducéndus est."

Psittachus (*a parrot*) sub aulaeo ferreo (*iron curtain*)

Quodam die in Hungária, miles Rússicus supérbus in tabérnam (*tavern*) venit ut bíberet (*drink*) Vodkam. Et cum bíberet, vidit, et étiam audívit psíttachum. Psíttachus saepe dicébat, "Mors Communístis! (Communísta, a-*Communist*) Mors Communístis!" Miles veheménter irátus est haec verba aúdiens, dixítque caupóni (caupo, one-*tavern-keeper*): "Cras (*tomorrow*) íterum in hanc tabérnam véniam—si psíttachus ille adhuc in hoc loco est—mors tibi et psíttacho!" Caupo tímuit multum. Cum ergo Communísta discessísset, caupo, tollens psíttachum suum, cum dolóre ivit ad sacerdótem, explicavítque ei difficultátem suam. Cui sacérdos respóndit, "Fili mi (*my son*), nulla difficúl-

tas est. Ego étiam psíttachum hábeo. Dabo tibi psíttachum meum, et tuum accípiam." Revérsus est ítaque caupo, cum psíttacho sacerdótis. Próximo die, cum novus psíttachus in tabérna esset, idem miles Rússicus in tabérnam venit, bibítque Vodkam. Cumque bíberet, semper psíttachum spectábat, exspectabátque audíre, "Mors Communístis!" Psíttachus autem haec verba non dixit. Tandem (*finally*), cum multam Vodkam bibísset, et nullum verbum ex psíttacho audivísset, miles in ira dixit psíttacho, "Euge, euge (*come on*)—Mors Communístis!" Et psíttachus celériter respóndit ei: "Dóminus det (*from* dare) tibi id quod rogas, fili mi!"

LECTIO SEXAGESIMA SEXTA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

Ítaque úndecim fratres cenam cum Iosépho habuérunt, sed non cognové- runt eum esse fratrem suum. Cogitábant eum esse virum Aegyptíacum qui magnam habébat auctoritátem. Sed etsi hi fratres olim volúerant nocére Iosépho, hic nóluit nocére eis. Ínsuper, Iוséphus dedit eis multa bona múnera, sed dedit máxima múnera Béniamin. Et iam tempus erat ut discéderent. Ioséphus ítaque iussit minístros suos implére saccos eórum fruménto. Sed étiam iussit pecúniam clam poni in saccis ómnium, et in sacco Béniamin, poni scyphum suum argénteum.

Cumque fratres iam iter fácerent in terram suam, misit Ioséphus servos suos post eos. Qui, consequéntes fratres, accusavérunt eos, dicéntes unum ex eis cepísse scyphum argénteum. Fratres deposuérunt saccos in quibus fruménta portábant, eósque aperuérunt. Ecce in ore sacci Béniamin invéntus est scyphus argénteus Ioséphi!

Omnes térriti sunt. Revérsi sunt ad domum Ioséphi. Cumque vidíssent eum, se in terram ante pedes eius proiecérunt dixerúntque, "Ecce, omnes servi érimus tibi dómino nostro." Sed Ioséphus respóndit, "Nullo modo ita fiat, sed is qui cepit scyphum meum—ille sit servus meus. Céteri discedátis ad patrem vestrum." Iudas ítaque, accédens ad Ioséphum, vóluit clam loqui cum eo, dixítque, "Dómine mi, loquátur servus tuus verbum tecum. Ne irascáris servo tuo. Ego pollícitus sum patri nostro quod servárem vitam huius púeri. Pater enim noster amat eum amóre magno. Nisi puer revérsus erit ad patrem nostrum, pater moriétur. Da mihi ut máneam hic, et sim servus tuus pro eo." (Continuábitur cras)

cena-*dinner*
cognóvit-*learned*
cogitáre-*think*
auctóritas-*authority*
etsi-*although*
nocére-*harm* (*with dat.*)
munus-*gift*
clam-*secretly*
scyphus-*cup*
argénteus-*silver*
cónsequi-*catch*
portáre-*carry*
pes-*foot*
proiécit-*threw*
céteri-*the rest*

VOCABULARIUM

cogitáre, ávit, átus-*think*
cognóscere, nóvit, nótus-*learn* (*and therefore the perfect means*: *know*)
cónsequi, consecútus est-*follow up, overtake, accomplish*
nocére, nócuit, *nocitúrus-*harm* (*with dat.*)
portáre, ávit, átus-*carry*
magna auctóritas, táte-*authority, influence*
bonum munus, múnere-*duty, gift*
clam-*secretly*
etsi-*even if, although*

VIDEAMUS FORMAS VETERES

1. Give the future perfect indicative active of: *praecédere, cogitáre, nocére*. 2. Give future perfect indicative passive of: *cognóscere, flere, mandáre*. 3. Give perfect subjunctive active of: *manére, accédere, dolére*. 4. Give perfect subjunctive passive of: *reperíre, amíttere, constitúere*. 5. Give the present imperative passive of: *amíttere, reperíre, vértere*.

REVIEW OF PRINCIPLES OF SUBJUNCTIVE TENSE USE: Now that we know all four tenses of the subjunctive, let us make our information more exact on when to use them. Their use is controlled by a law called sequence of tenses (*consecútio témporum*). But it is very easy. ALL THIS LAW DOES IS TO TELL US WHICH TWO SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES WE MUST PICK FROM (IN A DEPENDENT CLAUSE) ACCORDING TO WHICH TIME THE MAIN VERB IS IN. So—

1. If the main verb *refers to anything but past* time (that is, to present or future)—we pick from *present* or *perfect* subjunctive in the dependent clause. General sense tells which to pick.
2. If the main verb *refers to past* time—we pick from *imperfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive in the dependent clause. Again, general sense tells which to pick.

Here is a set of samples, to show each combination.

1. Cum Caesar haec sciat, non vult veníre.
   Although Caesar knows these things, he does not want to come.
   Cum Caesar Gálliam vícerit, Románi laeti sunt.
   Since Caesar has conquered Gaul, the Romans are glad.
2. Cum Caesar haec sciret, non vóluit veníre.
   Although Caesar knew these things, he did not want to come.
   Cum Caesar Gálliam vicísset, Románi laeti erant.
   Since Caesar had conquered Gaul, the Romans were glad.

(Note: The two examples under 1 are said to be in PRIMARY SEQUENCE, because they follow a *main* verb referring to *present* or *future*. The two examples under number 2 are said to be in SECONDARY SEQUENCE, because they follow a *main* verb referring to the *past*.)

Pharao Vult Audire de Vita Iosephi

Quodam die, Phárao cum Iosépho in palátio loquebátur, "Audívi de te, quod servus eras ántequam sómnium meum interpretátus es. Quis véndidit te ut servus esses?" Cui respóndit Ioséphus: "Dómine mi rex, quia tu ímperas, véritas dícenda est. Quodam die díxerat pater meus mihi: 'Eúndum tibi. Vidéndum si ómnia bona sint cum frátribus tuis. Cum víderis eos, et invéneris ómnia bona esse, redeúndum ad me.' Revéra fratres meos timébam. Me enim odérunt. Dixi enim in corde meo: Si víderint me fratres mei, forsan ligábor, forsan nocébunt mihi; forsan étiam interfíciar ab eis."

Et Phárao interrogávit, "Quare timéndi erant fratres tibi? Féceras áliquid mali contra eos?" Cui Ioséphus, "Nihil mali féceram. Sed illi malum fécerant, et ego patri meo narrávi. Ínsuper, duo sómnia hábui. Sómnia videbántur significáre quod fratres mei debérent me adoráre super terram." Cui Phárao, "Et nonne sómnia vera erant? Revéra adorándus es eis nunc! Sed réliqua narránda de frátribus." Ioséphus ergo narrávit, "Sicut dicébam, timébam fratres. Sed pater meus locútus erat. Faciénda erant ómnia quae ille vóluit. Pater enim a Deo nostro auctoritátem habet. Sed cum consecútus essem fratres, in perículo eram. Cum enim me vidíssent, comprehendérunt et ligavérunt. Sed unus ex frátribus, Ruben, rogávit álios ut me in cistérnam mítterent. Postea, mercatóribus eúntibus in hanc terram vénditus sum."

"In hac terra, sicut audivísti, emptus sum a Putípharo. Sed uxor eius accusávit me. Pútiphar ergo me vocávit et dixit, 'Estne verum id quod uxor mea dicit? Revéra malum fecísti?' Cui ego, 'Malum non feci.' Nihilóminus, in cárcerem missus sum. Ibi manéndum erat multos dies. Duo autem servi vestri sómnia étiam habuérunt. Haec interpretátus sum pro eis. Et a pincérna petívi, 'Cum in palátium íterum véneris, ne obliviscáris mei. Sed loquáris pro me ad regem, ut egrédiar ex hoc loco.' Nihilóminus, pincérna, cum restitútus esset, mei oblítus est multos dies. Sed in palátium vocátus sum ut interpretárer sómnium vestrum."

English to Latin

1. We do not know who the Pharao was who did not know Joseph. 2. Do you know why he wanted to harm the Jews? 3. For many years, Joseph had done many things for Egypt. 4. Nevertheless the people suffered such great evils that they asked God to free them. 5. Their salvation was in the power of God. 6. Pharao attempted to overtake them, but was not able. 7. The army of the king of Egypt was destroyed in the sea.

Scramble Exercise

Cum Iosépho fratre suo quem non cognoscébant cenam habébant álii fratres. At cum venísset ut discéderent tempus iussit Ioséphus poni in saccos eórum íterum pecúniam. Sed ut vidére posset num adhuc invídia moveréntur iussit ille clam in saccum Béniamin scyphum poni argénteum suum. Consecúti eos minístri Ioséphi ubi scyphum posuíssent interrogavérunt. In Béniamin sacco invénto illo multum doluérunt.

LECTIO SEXAGESIMA SEPTIMA

De gerundivis finalibus
De dativo possessionis

Ex his verbis Iudae, et étiam ex eis quae álii fratres fécerant, Ioséphus póterat scire fratres suos non iam malos esse, non iam invídiam habére sicut olim habúerant cum vénderent eum in Aegýptum. Ítaque, his audítis, Iosépus non iam póterat se continére, sed conféstim iussit servos suos abíre ne quis adésset praeter fratres. Elevavítque vocem suam, flens multum, ita ut Aegýptii omnísque domus Pharaónis audírent, et dixit frátribus suis: "Ego sum Iosépus. Valétne pater meus?" Non póterant respondére fratres, nímio terróre térriti. Ad quos ille sine ira: "Accédite ad me. Ego sum frater vester, quem vendidístis in Aegýptum. Nolíte timére, neque vobis durum videátur quod vendidístis me in his regiónibus: pro salúte enim vestra misit me Deus ante vos in Aegýptum. Iam enim duos annos habúimus famem. Adhuc quinque anni famis vénient. Sed Deus misit me ante vos ut habeátis fruméntum quo ali possítis in hac fame. Non vestro consílio, sed Dei voluntáte huc missus sum. Deus fecit me quasi patrem Pharaónis. Phárao enim dedit mihi magnam potestátem, ut secúndus post ipsum regam univérsam terram hanc. Sed celériter ite ad patrem meum, et dicétis ei: 'Haec mandat fílius tuus Iosépus: Deus fecit me dóminum univérsae terrae Aegýpti. Descénde ad me, ne moréris, et habitábis in terra Gessen. Ibíque te alam—quinque enim anni famis adhuc sunt." Dixítque étiam Iosépus frátribus suis: "Ecce, óculi vestri et óculi fratris mei Béniamin vident quod os meum loquátur ad vos. Dícite patri meo univérsam glóriam meam, et ómnia quae vidístis in Aegýpto. Celériter ágite, et addúcite eum ad me." (Continuábitur cras)

continére-*restrain*
conféstim-*at once*
praeter-*besides*
elevávit-*raised*
valére-*be well*
durus-*hard*
álere-*nourish*
huc-*to this place*
quasi-*as it were*
régere-*rule*
morári-*delay*
óculus-*eye*

VOCABULARIUM

álere, áluit, álitus-*feed, nourish*
continére, contínuit, conténtus-*hold together, restrain*
régere, rexit, rectus-*rule*
valére, váluit,* valitúrus-*be well, be strong*
durus, a, um-*hard*
óculus, o-*eye*
conféstim-*at once*
praeter (with obj.)-*beyond, besides, except*

GERUNDIVE TO EXPRESS PURPOSE: The gerundive seems to be the same as the future passive participle, which we have already learned. The same form may be used to express the idea of *purpose*. We have already seen that Latin can express purpose by *ut with the subjunctive*. It seldom used the infinitive as English does. But the gerundive is almost as easy to use as the infinitive, once you get used to it.

Venit ad vidéndum Caésarem.
He came to see Caesar.

Notice that the form *vidéndum* is an adjective, agreeing with *Cáesarem*. The whole phrase: *ad vidéndum Cáesarem*, is in the objective case because of the preposition *ad*. Notice that the whole phrase is equivalent to an English infinitive plus an object: Caesar—to see Caesar.

Now instead of *ad*, other prepositions could be used. The most common are *causa* and *grátia* (strictly speaking not prepositions, but close enough), which *follow* the phrase, instead of coming ahead as *ad* does. With *causa* and *grátia* we get the possessive case. Thus:

Venit vidéndi Cáesaris causa *or*
Venit vidéndi Cáesaris grátia.

The meaning is still: He came to see Caesar. Therefore we should consider that *ad*, *causa* or *grátia* plus the gerundive is equivalent to an English infinitive (in a purpose construction).

(Certain other prepositions can also be used, but we need not learn them now: they are, chiefly—with objective: *ob, propter,* —with ablative: *pro*).

DATIVE OF POSSESSION: Languages, like people, are different. Not all say the same thing with the same twist. English prefers to say:

He has a book. Latin can also say: *Habet librum.*

But Latin is very fond of saying:

A book is to him or, *There is a book to him*: Liber est ei.

PHARAO ITERUM CUM IOSEPHO LOQUITUR

Próximo die Phárao íterum cum amíco nostro Iosépho loquebátur: "Ioséphe, iam narravísti mihi quaedam de frátribus tuis. Quot (*how many*) fratres tibi sunt?" Cui Ioséphus: "Dómine mi rex, úndecim mihi fratres sunt." Et Phárao interrogávit: "Quare venérunt fratres tui in hanc terram?" "Fames venit in terram eórum, et pater misit eos in terram Aegýpti ad eméndum fruméntum," dixit Ioséphus. Cui rex: "Venérunt omnes fratres in itínere primo? Solúmmodo decem vidi tum." Ioséphus autem explicávit: "Verum est, dómine mi rex, solúmmodo decem venérunt in itínere primo. Pater enim meus magnópere amávit fílium mínimum, Béniamin, et nóluit míttere eum. Sed misi fratres meos in terram eórum íterum ad Béniamin in Aegýptum ducéndum. Díxeram eis: 'Nonne vobis est étiam álius frater? His audítis, fratres probabíliter timébant et cogitábant de me, quem vendíderant ut servus essem. Sed nescivérunt me—loquébar enim eis per intérpretem." "Sed audívi," dixit rex, "te posuísse pecúniam íterum in saccis eórum cum reverteréntur. Quare hoc fecísti?" "Revéra," ait Ioséphus, "nólui pecúniam eórum accípere. Non enim odi eos: fratres enim mei adhuc sunt. Et ínsuper, nólui pecúniam accípere pro fruménto ad patrem meum aléndum." "Sed nonne étiam audívi," interrogávit rex, "te posuísse scyphum argénteum qui tibi est, in sacco Béniamin póstea, cum discéderet cum áliis frátribus tuis. Quare hoc fecísti? Num volébas eum scyphum tuum habére?" "Non hoc vólui," explicávit Ioséphus, "sed hoc feci ad fratres meos probándos. Volébam vidére num invídia eis adhuc esset contra fratrem meum mínimum. Propter hanc causam ergo imperávi ut scyphus in sacco eius poneretur. Cum autem illi revérsi essent ad palátium, et audivíssem eos loquéntes, et vidíssem illis nullam invídiam esse, non pótui me continére. Fléndum erat, et flevi."

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. Let us go to Egypt to buy grain. 2. The army came quickly to catch the Jews. 3. But God led the Egyptians into the sea to destroy them. 4. Joseph had no money when he came to Egypt. 5. Now he has many good things. 6. Joseph ordered money put into their sacks to test them. 7. God sent him into Egypt to save his brothers.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Ad probándos fratres suos fecit haec ómnia Iosephus. Non ad eos qui merúerant pati puniéndos persecútus est fratres. Non enim sicut illis, ita Iosépho invídia erat. Illi enim ei ob malam voluntátem suam nocére volúerant vendéntes eum in terram aliénam servum. Ipse autem eis pro malis bona dedit eórum servandórum causa.

LECTIO SEXAGESIMA OCTAVA

De gerundio
De dativo finali et dativo iudicantis

Post haec, Iosépus dedit múnera bona síngulis frátribus suis, et proficiscéntibus illis dixit: "Ne irascámini in via." Qui ascendéntes ex Aegýpto, venérunt in terram Chánaan ad patrem suum Iacob, et nuntiavérunt ei, dicéntes: "Iosépus fílius tuus vivit, et ipse dominátur in omni terra Aegýpti. Quo audíto, Iacob, quasi de gravi somno evígilans, tamen non credébat eis. Illi narravérunt ei ómnia de Iosépho et de magna cópia ómnium rerum quam habébat. Cumque Iacob vidísset ómnia quae míserat fílius suus, dixit: "Satis est mihi si adhuc fílius meus vivit: ibo et vidébo eum ántequam móriar." Proféctus est ergo cum ómnibus quae habébat, et fílii eius et líberi filiórum eius cum eo. Venérunt ad fines Chánaan, ibíque Iacob sacrifícium Deo óbtulit. His factis, in visióne noctis, Iacob audívit Deum vocántem se et dicéntem sibi: "Iacob, Iacob." Cui respóndit: "Ecce, adsum." Dixítque ei Deus, "Ego sum Deus patris tui: noli timére. Descénde in Aegýptum, quia in gentem magnam fáciam te ibi. Ego descéndam tecum in terram illam, et ducam te reverténtem. Iosépus étiam ponet manus suas super óculos tuos."

Cum Iosépus audivísset patrem suum iam appropinquáre, ascéndit ad vidéndum eum. Vidénsque eum, cucúrrit et osculátus est eum flevítque multum. Iosépus étiam nuntiávit Pharaóni patrem suum venísse. Phárao laetus fuit, et mandávit Iosépho tribúere patri suo terras óptimas. Cumque Phárao vidísset Iacob, interrogávit eum de aetáte eius: "Quot sunt dies annórum vitae tuae?" Qui respóndit: "Dies mei sunt centum trigínta anni, parvi et mali." (Continuábitur)

sínguli-*one at a time*
nuntiávit-*reported*
dominári-*be a ruler*
gravis-*heavy*
somnus-*sleep*
evigiláre-*wake up*
cópia-*abundance*
líberi-*children*
appropinquáre-*approach*
cucúrrit-*ran*
osculári-*kiss*
tribúere-*give*
óptimus-*best*
aetas-*age*
quot-*how many*

Vocabularium

appropinquáre, ávit, átus-*approach* (*with dat.*)	cópia, a-*abundance, supply* (*pl.—troops*)
cúrrere, cucúrrit, *cursúrus-*run*	gravis, e, i-*heavy*
tribúere, tríbuit, tribútus-*assign, give*	líberi, is (*pl. only*)-*children*
magna aetas, aetáte-*age*	óptimus, a, um-*best, very good*
	síngulì, ae, a (*pl. only*)-*one at a time, each*

Nunc Cogitemus

Gerunds: Gerunds are verbal nouns—that is, half noun and half verb (compare participles: half verb, half adjective). But the Latin gerund has only a few forms—possessive, dative, objective, and ablative singular: *i, o, um, o*—no other forms are in use.

How is it used? There are chiefly two kinds of uses:

1. To express purpose—just like the gerundive, except that this is a noun, and so (in English) there will be no object; e.g., *Venit in silvas septentrionáles* ad piscándum.
   He came into the north woods to fish.

(Of course, we could also use: *piscándi causa, piscándi grátia, ob piscándum*, etc.)

2. As a mere verbal noun, translated by the English noun in *-ing*: A variety of combinations are possible (but, for the most part, no object should be used).
   1. Amor piscándi traxit eum in silvas.
      Love of fishing drew him into the woods.
   2. Expectándo, Fábius servávit Romam.
      By waiting, Fabius saved Rome.

Datives of Purpose and Reference: These two datives often, though not always, come in a pair. Sometimes they are called *double dative*. The basic meanings are easy: the dative of purpose expresses the goal of something, that *for which* it is or is done. Often English

would use merely nominative instead of one dative. Thus:

Hoc est auxílio mihi.
This is (for) a help to me.

English would prefer to leave out the word *for*. *Auxílio* is, of course, dative of purpose, while *mihi* is dative of reference. The latter expresses the one concerned, or in whose eyes a thing is so (hence the Latin name: *datívus iudicántis*).

Pharao et Iacob

Cum patrem suum vidísset, Ioséphus laetus erat, et cucúrrit ad eum vidéndum. Phárao étiam ipse Iacóbum vidére vóluit. Ductus est ítaque in palátium. Phárao locútus est: "Placet mihi valde te vidére. Multa de te audívi a fílio tuo. Nonne multos annos habes?" Cui Iacob: "Non multos, solúmmodo centum trigínta annos." "Fílius tuus egrégius," dixit Phárao, "magna sómnia vidit, potuítque interpretári sómnia mea. Credo Deum misísse eum salúti omni terrae Aegýpti. Vidísti tu étiam sómnia áliqua?" "Útique," respóndit Iacob, "quadam nocte máximum sómnium vidi. Faciébam iter in Haran. Nox me in quodam campo invénit. Lápides (*stones*) ítaque tuli, et pósui sub cápite meo, dormiéndi causa. Et ecce! In sómnio vidi scalam (*ladder*). Scala a terra ascendébat ad coelum ipsum! In scala, ángelos Dei vidi, ascendéntes et descendéntes per eam. Sed in coelo ipso Dóminum Deum nostrum vidi, et locútus est mihi: 'Terram hanc, in qua dormis, tibi tríbuam, et fíliis tuis. Líberi tui erunt valde multi, sicut promísi pátribus tuis Ábrahae et Ísaac. Fáciam enim te in gentem magnam.' " "Magnum miráculum erat," respondit Phárao, "sed vellem de hac promissióne Dei tui audíre. Quid fecit Ábraham pater tuus?" "Quodam die appáruit ei Deus, et imperávit ut sacrificáret filíum suum Ísaac. Deus promíserat Ábrahae quod fáceret eum in gentem magnam per Ísaac—sed póstea iussit Ísaac duci in montem ut sacrificarétur. Ábraham autem crédidit Deo. Deus enim potest ómnia fácere quae vult. Quando Deus lóquitur, credéndum est, non interrogándum. Sed cum filíum ligavísset ad occidéndum, ángelus Dómini ei appáruit, imperavítque ut cáperet ariétem ad sacrificándum. Non enim interficiéndus erat Ísaac. Sacrifícium enim humánum Deo nostro non placet."

English to Latin

1. Joseph was sent into Egypt to be (for) salvation to his brothers. 2. Many nations were to be conquered before the Jews entered Palestine. 3. By remaining in Egypt Joseph became a great man. 4. The love of ruling has destroyed many men. 5. Joseph forgave his brothers. 6. He was a servant to the king. 7. Jacob was heavy with age but great in good works.

Scramble Exercise

Cumque vidísset Ioséphus fratres suos non iam nocéndi voluntátem habére, se esse fratrem eórum conféssus est: "Quem in Aegýptum vendidístis sum ego frater vester. Nec vobis timéndum est. Salúti enim vobis me in hanc terram misit Deus patrum nostrórum. Mihi autem dedit Deus voluntátem vobis ignoscéndi quae fecístis. Ómnium bonórum cópiam vobis tríbuam."

LECTIO SEXAGESIMA NOVA

De participio et infinitivo in tempore futuro activo
De verbis regentibus duplicem obiectivum

Post haec, Iacob benedíxit Pharaóni et discéssit. Ioséphus autem patri suo agros tríbuit in Gessen, parte Aegýpti valde fértili. Gratum enim erat Pharóni iuváre Hebraéos ob mérita óptima Ioséphi. Iacob et céteri Hebraéi habuérunt cópiam ómnium bonórum. Hoc modo annos septéndecim vixit Iacob. Cum autem cérneret mortem suam appropinquáre, Iacob benedíxit duóbus filíis Iosséphi, Éphraim et Manásse. Post haec Iacob vocávit filíos suos, et ait eis: "Veníte ut annúntiem quae ventúra sunt (*are about to come*) vobis in diébus novíssimis. Veníte et audíte filíi Iacob, audíte Israel patrem vestrum." Et locútus est Iacob prophetíam longam de fíliis suis et de eis quae ventúra essent eis in diébus novíssimis. Inter ália haec dixit, benedícens Iudae: "Non auferétur sceptrum de Iuda, et dux de fémore eius, donec véniat ille qui mitténdus est; et ipse erit exspectátio géntium."

Haec prophetía lóquitur de Christo qui ventúrus erat. Christus re vera est ille quem omnes gentes exspectavérunt.

Prophetía finíta, Iacob imperávit fíliis suis ut sepelírent eum in terra Chánaan in loco suo, et mórtuus est. Ioséphus, cernens patrem suum mórtuum esse, ruit super fáciem eius, flens multum. Et praecépit servis suis médicis ut aromátibus condírent patrem suum. Et omnis Aegýptus flevit eum septuagínta dies.

benedícere-*bless*
gratus-*pleasing*
iuváre-*help*
ob-*on account of*
céteri-*others*
cérnere-*see*
ait-*he says*
novíssimus-*last*
ventúrus, a, um-*about to come*
auférre-*take away*
femur-*thigh*
donec-*until*
sepelíre-*bury*
rúere-*rush, fall*
fácies-*face*
praecípere-*command*
arómata-*spices*
condíre-*embalm*

VOCABULARIUM

ait-*he says*
benedícere, díxit, díctus-*bless* (*sometimes with dat.*)
cérnere, crevit, cretus-*see, distinguish*
iuváre, iuvit, iutus-*help, please*
rúere, ruit, rutus-*fall, rush*
céteri, ae, a-*the rest, the others*
gratus, a, um-*pleasing*
donec-*while, until*
usque ad-*as far as, even to*

NUNC COGITEMUS

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE: For some time we have been learning a third part for some verbs, that is not a perfect participle. Those forms have been marked*. Notice that they all end in *-urus*. The same form can be made for any verb—merely change the final *-us* of the perfect participle to *-urus*. It has all the endings of *bonus*.

parátus—becomes: paratúrus.

The meaning is easy to learn: about to prepare, going to prepare, intending to prepare.

FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE: If we use the infinitive *esse* (to be) with a future active participle, we have the future active infinitive. We must remember to use the right ending on the participle—gender, number, and case. Recall that one form of indirect statement uses objective case with an infinitive. For example:

Dicit Caésarem veníre.—He says that Caesar is coming.

Dicit Caésarem venísse.—He says that Caesar came.
Now—with the future:

Dicit Caésarem ventúrum esse.—He says that Caesar will come.

Dixit Caésarem ventúrum esse.—He said that Caesar would come.

Notice that the ending of *ventúrum* agrees with the subject of the infinitive, *Caésarem*.

Note also that the infinitive expresses time *relative* to the time of the main verb:

Therefore: Present infinitive—*same* time as main verb
Perfect infinitive—action done *before* main verb
Future infinitive—action *to come after* time of main verb

DOUBLE OBJECTIVE CASE WITH SOME VERBS: Some verbs (not all—we must learn by experience, or by the dictionary those which do) can have two objects:

Rogat Marcum pecúniam.
He asks Marcus for money.

But the verb *pétere,* also meaning ask, doesn't have two objects:

Petit pecúniam a Marco.

DE PROPHETIA IACOB

Tempóribus Véteris Testaménti, Deus populo suo multos misit prophétas ad eos iuvándos. Hi prophétae multa quae ventúra erant dixérunt. Sed étiam patriárchae Iacob et Ioséphus prophetías de rebus futúris dedérunt. Quodam die Ioséphus audívit patrem suum aegrum esse. Cogitávit ergo patrem suum moritúrum esse. Et verum erat: Iacob revéra moritúrus erat. Cumque ad eum venísset Ioséphus, Iacob eum mónuit de promissiónibus Dei. Deus enim promíserat se factúrum esse eos in magnum pópulum. Dixítque se tributúrum esse eis terram Chánaan. Benedíxit ítaque Iacob duóbus fíliis Ioséphi, dixítque gentes magnas ventúras esse ex illis fíliis. Étiam praedíxit Deum íterum ductúrum esse pópulum suum ex terra Aegýpti in terram Chánaan. Non dixit Ioséphum ipsum habitatúrum esse in terra patrum ipsíus. Ioséphus enim remansúrus erat in Aegýpto et moritúrus erat ibi.

Cum ergo Iacob haec dixísset, vocávit étiam fílios suos ut annuntiáret eis multa ventúra. In benedictióne et prophetía data Iudae, dixit sceptrum non discessúrum esse a Iuda donec veníret ille qui mitténdus erat. Christus erat ille qui mitténdus erat. Iacob étiam praedíxit multa ália ventúra esse fíliis suis. His prophetíis datis, mórtuus est Iacob.

Simíliter Ioséphus ipse, ántequam mórtuus est, prophetávit Deum ductúrum esse Hebraéos ex terra Aegýpti in terram quam eis promíserat. Scivítne Ioséphus étiam Hebraéos multa passúros esse in terra Aegýpti ántequam discéderent? Diffícile est dícere. Si revéra haec scivit, Sacra Scriptúra non dicit eum praedixísse eos tália passúros esse.

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. We are about to hear a prophecy. 2. He says that these things will come to us in the last days. 3. They wept for him seventy days. 4. Jacob gave them a prophecy that the Jews would have their own leaders until Christ should come (use subj.). 5. Jacob saw that death would come soon. 6. It pleased Pharao to help the Hebrews. 7. Joseph ran to see his father.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Iosephus Pharaóni patrem suum ventúrum esse dixit, et Pharaónem bona multa frátribus suis rogávit. Qui illi ut terram óptimam eis dáret imperávit. Iuvit enim Pharaónem iuváre fratres patrémque Iosephi. At ante mortem suam prophetíam magnam datúrus erat Iacob Iosephi pater de rebus ventúris. Inter ália de Messía futúro praedíxit non nulla: eum mitténdum esse ex Iuda.

LECTIO SEPTUAGESIMA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

Post mortem patris sui, Ioséphus iit ad Pharaónem, dixítque ei, "Pater meus cupívit sepelíri in terra patrum suórum, in Chánaan. Ascéndam ígitur, et sepéliam patrem meum, ac revértar." Dixítque ei Phárao, "Ascénde et sépeli patrum tuum sicut pollícitus es." Cum ergo Iacob condítus aromátibus esset secúndum morem Aegýpti, Ioséphus proféctus est ut iret in terram Chánaan. Et iérunt cum eo omnes senes domus Pharaónis, et multi álii.

Cumque sepelivíssent Iacob, revérsi sunt in terram Aegýpti. Quo mórtuo, timéntes fratres eius dixérunt, "Ne Ioséphus nunc irascátur nobis, velítque supplícium súmere de nobis ob peccáta nostra, eámus (*let us go*) ad eum." Dixerúntque ei, "Pater tuus praecépit nobis ántequam morerétur ut haec tibi in nómine suo dicerémus, 'Óbsecro ut obliviscáris peccatórum fratrum tuórum, et malítiae quam exercuérunt contra te.' "

Quibus audítis, flevit Ioseph. Venerúntque ad eum fratres sui, et proni adorántes in terram dixérunt, "Servi tui sumus." Quibus ille respóndit, "Nolíte timére. Num póssumus Dei resístere voluntáti? Vos cogitavístis de me malum: sed Deus vertit illud in bonum, ut exaltáret me, sicut nunc cérnitis, et salvos fáceret multos pópulos. Nolíte timére. Ego alam vos et líberos vestros."

Ioséphus vixit in Aegýpto cum omni domo patris sui. Vixítque centum decem annos, et vidit fílios Éphraim usque ad tértiam generatiónem. Cumque sentíret finem vitae suae prope esse, locútus est frátribus suis, "Post mortem meam Deus visitábit vos, et ascéndere vos fáciet de terra hac ad terram quam pollícitus est ad Ábraham, Ísaac, et Iacob. Portáte ossa mea vobíscum de loco hoc." Et mórtuus est, et condítus aromátibus, pósitus est in lóculo in Aegýpto.

cúpere-*desire*
ígitur-*therefore*
condítus-*embalmed*
mos-*custom*
senex-*old man*
supplícium-*punishment*
súmere-*take, exact*
óbsecro-*beg*
exercére-*practice*
malítia-*malice*
pronus-*prostrate*
salvus-*safe*
prope-*near*
visitáre-*visit*
os, osse-*bone*
lóculus-*coffin*

VOCABULARIUM

cúpiunt, cúpere, cupívit, cupítus-*desire*
exercére, exércuit, exércitus-*practice, train*
súmere, sumpsit, sumptus-*take, assume* (súmere supplícium de eo—*exact punishment from him*)
bonus mos, more-*custom, habit* (*in pl.*: *morals, character*)
durum os, osse-*bone* (*compare*: *os, ore-mouth*)
bonus senex, sene-*old man*
supplícium, o-*punishment*
ígitur-*therefore*
prope-*near*

VIDEAMUS FORMAS VETERES

1. Translate these sentences in as many ways as possiable: a) Joseph was sent into Egypt to save his brothers. b) I must help them. 2. Translate in two ways: He has ten brothers. 3. Give the gerundive of: *álere, régere, cúrrere, tribúere, benedícere, auférre*. 4. Give future active infinitive of: *cérnere, rúere, appropinquáre*.

ITER FACIAMUS IN ALIAS TERRAS

Ad Oriéntem a Iudaéa habitátur terra magna et antíqua. Huius terrae nomen est Mesopotámia. Significátio huius nóminis nobis paucis verbis explicári potest. Est enim nomen Graecum—*flumen* in Graeca língua dícitur *potamós*, et *médius* in eádem língua díctus *mesos*. *Mesopotámia* ergo terram quae inter flúmina est signíficat. Et verum est, nam terra duóbus magnis flumínibus irrigátur, scílicet (*that is*) Tígride et Euphráte. Haec duo flúmina, scílicet Tigris et Euphrátes, terram hanc habitábilem (*habitable*) fáciunt. Quidam hómines in hac terra paradísum fuisse putant. Quorum senténtia

nec probári nec omníno disprobári potest. Certum est hómines hanc habitavísse terram saltem (*at least*) quinque míllia annórum ante Christi nativitátem.

In Aegýpto, flumen Nilus dilúvium (*flood*) omni anno facit. Aegýptii haec dilúvia amant; sine his dilúviis, terra eórum nullo modo habitábilis esset (*would be*). In Mesopotámia étiam dilúvia sunt. Saepe haec dilúvia sunt bona; praebent (*provide*) aquam ad irrigatiónem necessáriam. Sed saepe étiam agros et domos huius terrae delent.

Multae fábulae mirábiles (*wonderful*) in hac terra narrántur. Inter ália, narratiónem épicam de Gílgamesh habent. Quidam hómines putant Homérum scripsísse primum épicum. Sed verum non est. Narrátio enim de Gílgamesh compósita est multis saéculis (*many centuries*) ante poémata Homérica. Cras mirábilem narratiónem de hoc Gílgamesh audiémus.

English to Latin

1. Mesopotamia must have floods to irrigate the land. 2. The love of ruling is a danger to many men. 3. To feed an army, much food is needed. 4. There is no one here except us Egyptians. 5. Jacob said that Christ would come. 6. Joseph said that the Jews would leave Egypt. 7. The brothers feared lest Joseph punish them.

Scramble Exercise

Ad sepeliéndum patrem suum in terra patrum eius ex Aegýpto cum multis ex Aegýpti senióribus proféctus est Ioséphus. Iacob enim moritúrus rogáverat Ioséphum sepúlchrum in terra illa. Post haec autem fratres eius ne illi esset volúntas puniéndi se timébant. Qui timentes ei appropinquavérunt, rogaverúntque ne irascerétur.

LECTIO SEPTUAGESIMA PRIMA

De formis comparativis et superlativis
De ablativo comparationis

Post mortem Ioséphi, Hebraéi fuérunt in Aegýpto multos annos. Et crevérunt número, ita ut multi Aegýptii miraréntur et timérent. Étiam rex Aegýpti animadvértit Hebraéos factos esse numerósos. Post annos multos venit in sólium Aegýpti Phárao qui ignorábat Ioséphum. Hic rex contémpsit Hebraéos, et quaesívit quo modo deléret eos. Ait ítaque ad pópulum suum, "Ecce, pópulus filiórum Ísrael multus, et fórtior (*stronger*) nobis (*than us*) est. Veníte, opprimámus eum, ne, si bellum contra nos véniat, tránseat ad hostes nostros, et, victis nobis, egrediátur e terra."

Praepósuit ígitur eis magístros duros, ut afflígerent eos onéribus. Et aedificavérunt Pharaóni duas urbes, Phithom et Rámesses. Cumque magístri duri opprímerent eos, Hebraéi crescébant número, oderántque fílios Ísrael Aegýptii, et affligébant eos.

Cum Phárao animadvertísset Hebraéos, etsi gráviter oppréssos, adhuc créscere, mandávit ut omnes púeri Hebraeórum interficeréntur statim post nativitátem suam.

Inter álios púeros Hebraéos, natus est unus párvulus pulcher. Mater eius ábdidit eum tres menses post nativitátem eius. Sed post haec, putans se non iam posse serváre púerum, pósuit eum in sporta, inter cálamos in aqua ad ripam flúminis Nili. Soror huius púeri stetit procul, et spectábat fratrem párvulum suum.

Ecce, venit fília Pharaónis cum puéllis suis, viderúntque párvulum. Fília Pharaónis mota est misericórdia, videns hunc párvulum, et dixit, "De infántibus Hebraeórum est hic." (Continuábitur cras)

crevit-*grew*
mirárī-*wonder*
animadvértit-*noticed*
ignoráre-*not know*
contémnere-*despise*
quaesívit-*sought*
opprímere-*crush*
transíre-*go over*
égredi-*go out*
praepósuit-*put over*
afflígere-*afflict*
onus-*burden*
gráviter-*gravely*
statim-*at once*
párvulus-*child*
ábdidit-*hid*
sporta-*basket*
cálamus-*reed*
ripa-*bank*
procul-*far off*
spectáre-*look at*

Vocabularium

animadvértere, vértit, vérsus-*notice, punish*
contémnere, témpsit, témptus-*despise, scorn*
créscere, crevit, cretus-*grow* (*compare parts of* cérnere)
mirári, mirátus est-*wonder, admire*
quaérere, quaesívit, quaesítus-*seek*
spectáre, ávit, átus-*look at*
durum onus, ónere-*burden*
statim-*at once*

Nunc Cogitemus

Comparison of Adjectives: In English, an adjective has three degrees:

clear, clearer, clearest

The first form is called positive (*clear*), the second, comparative (*clearer*), the third, superlative (*clearest*). Sometimes the comparative uses the word *more*, e.g., more ready.

Now Latin has a similar set of forms for all adjectives—to make the comparative we get a base from the ablative singular of an adjective (ablative singular less the ablative ending) and add to that base: *-ior, -ius*.

We have already had some of these words, such as *mélior*—they are all declined like *mélior*—that is, *all* (even those that come from *bonus* type words) are third declension, *with ablative in -e*.

For the superlative, we use the same base, and add: *-issimus* (declined like *bonus*).

Therefore take the adjective clarus—clárior, claríssimus

Translations: for the comparative—clearer
quite clear
for the superlative—most clear
clearest
very clear

IRREGULAR COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES: The above method is used for most adjectives—but there are a few exceptions :

1. Adjectives in *-er* (such as *acer*, or *pulcher*) make the superlative by adding *-rimus* to the nominative singular masculine: acérrimus, pulchérrimus.

2. Six adjectives make the superlative by adding *-limus* to the base (ablative singular minus ending):

fácilis—facíllimus	(easy)
diffícilis—difficíllimus	(hard)
símilis—simíllimus	(similar)
dissímilis—dissimíllimus	(dissimilar)
húmilis—humíllimus	(humble)
grácilis—gracíllimus	(slender)

3. Many common adjectives have completely unpredictable forms—but we have already learned the most important of them, a few at a time: here they are—

bonus—mélior—óptimus
malus—peior—péssimus
parvus—minor—mínimus
multus—plus (*has no masculine and feminine singular*)—plúrimus
magnus—maior—máximus

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON: How can we say *than* after a comparative? Two ways:

1. Use *quam* (same case after and before):
   Ioséphus mélior est quam Phárao. (Notice *Phárao* is nominative).
   Joseph is better than Pharao.
2. Use the ablative case:
   Ioséphus mélior est *Pharaóne*.

DE POEMATE EPICO: GILGAMESH

Quo témpore compósitum est hoc poéma? Nescímus—probabíliter fere saéculo vigésimo secúndo (*twenty-second century*) ante Christum. Certe antíquior est poemátibus Homéricis. Sed ad narratiónem ipsam procedámus.

Gílgamesh rex duríssimus erat, qui urbem quae vocabátur Erech regébat. Pauci reges crudelióres erant illo Gílgamesh. Cives ígitur huius urbis, ad liberándos se ipsos, in urbem vocavérunt quoddam monstrum. Nomen huius monstri fuit Eabáni—ille erat semibéstia et semíhomo. Gílgamesh (qui étiam fere monstrum erat) factus est amícus huius Eabáni. Hi duo ítaque ex urbe profécti sunt ad venándum (*hunt*).

Véniunt in silvas (*forest*) cédrinas (*cedar*) occidentáles. Ibi terríbile invéniunt monstrum (multa monstra sunt his tempóribus), cui nomen est Humbába. Quidam deus tempestátum, Enlil nómine, Humbábam in hac silva pósuit, ad custodiéndam (*guard*) eam. Humbába terríbilis est—et amíci (!) nostri, id est Gílgamesh et Eabáni, terribilióres sunt quam Humbába. Ítaque Humbábam interfíciunt! Fere hoc témpore, quandam mulíerem (*woman*) vident, vel pótius (*rather*) deam quae vocatur Ishtar. Ishtar amat Gílgamesh, sed ille non vult mulíeres amáre: interfícere monstra vult. Ishtar ítaque, ira mota, quia contémpta est a Gílgamesh, mittit áliud monstrum, quod vocátur "taurus (*bull*) coelórum" contra eos. Sed Gílgamesh et amícus eius hunc taurum coelórum celériter interfíciunt. Quidam poéta dixit, "Étiam in inférno non est furor (*fury*) furiósior quam múlier quae contémpta est." Ítaque, Ishtar facit ut Eabáni aeger fiat et moriátur. (Continuábitur).

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. Gilgamesh is fiercer than Humbaba. 2. Was he the fiercest king in the world? 3. The Jews grew and became greater in number than the Egyptians. 4. Joseph was more pleasing to his father than the rest of his brothers. 5. By running swiftly he escaped his enemies. 6. Marcus is brave, Julius is braver, and Augustus is the bravest of all. 7. The authority of the king is not to be scorned.

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Peccáta eórum ignoscéndo eis monstrávit Ioséphus se illis meliórem esse. Post cuius mortem Hebraéi crescéndo celériter facti sunt numerosíssimi. Etsi non erant ipsis Aegýptiis numerosióres causam dedérunt timéndi. Quos rex ipse ne ad hostes transírent tímuit. Quam propter causam ut infantes mox post nativitátem interficeréntur imperávit rex.

LECTIO SEPTUAGESIMA SECUNDA

De adverbiis
De nominibus neutralibus declinationis quartae

Quaedam múlier Hebraeórum ausa erat serváre fílium suum párvulum tres menses etsi Phárao mandáverat ut omnes púeri Hebraeórum interficeréntur statim post nativitátem suam. At post tres menses non iam póterat abscóndere eum, exposuítque eum in sporta, in aqua inter cálamos ad ripam flúminis Nili. Fília Pharaónis invénit hunc púerum, et, misericórdia mota, cupiébat serváre eum. Eódem témpore soror púeri párvuli spectábat, et cum vidísset filíam Pharaónis desideráre curáre eum, cucúrrit celériter ad eam. Cui soror púeri ait, "Vis ut vadam et vocem tibi mulíerem Hebraéam, quae curáre possit infántulum?" Quae respóndit, "Vade." Puélla vadit et vocávit matrem suam, quae erat mater huius párvuli. Ad quam locúta filía Pharaónis, "Áccipe, ait, púerum istum, et ale eum mihi: ego dabo tibi mercédem tuam." Suscépit múlier púerum sine mora, et áluit eum. Post paucos annos, dedit illum fíliae Pharaónis. Illa autem adoptávit eum in locum fílii, vocavítque nomen eius Moysen dicens, "Quia de aqua tuli eum." (Nomen "Moyses" probabíliter est solúmmodo pars secunda nomínis hujus púeri. Multi reges Aegýpti habent simília nómina, e.g., Thutmóses. Nunc autem, nomen *Thutmóses* signíficat, "Thoth est pater eius" vel "natus est ex Thoth." Ergo nomen Moyses forsan significávit: "natus est ex aqua.") Moyses ígitur doctus est omnem sapiéntiam Aegyptiórum.

At postquam Moyses crevit, et vir factus est, osténdit se esse amícum Hebraeórum. Hanc propter causam, Phárao non amávit eum, et Moyses fugit in terram Mádian. In terra Mádian duxit in matrimónium Sephóram, fíliam Jethro.

múlier-*woman*
ausa erat-*dared*
abscóndere-*hide*
sporta-*basket*
cálamus-*reed*
ripa-*bank*
desideráre-*desire*
curáre-*care for*
vádere-*go*
iste-*this*
merces-*pay*
suscípere-*take*
mora-*delay*

Vocabularium

audére, ausus est-*dare* (*notice that the first part is normal, but the rest is deponent*)
curáre, ávit, átus-*take care of* (*with obj., not poss. case*)
desideráre, ávit, átus-*desire, miss*
suscípiunt, suscípere, cépit, céptus-*undertake, take*
vádere (*no other parts*)-*go*
mora, a-*delay*
bona múlier, re-*woman*
iste-*this, that* (*see below*)

Formation of Adverbs (Regular):

a) *From first and second declension adjectives*: Take the base (ablative singular minus ending) and add *-e*. Thus: *clarus—clare* (clearly)

b) *From third declension adjecitves*: Take the base (ablative singular minus ending) and add *-iter*. Thus: *acer—ácriter* (keenly)

Comparative and Superlative of adverbs:

1. The comparative is the same as the neuter singular form of the comparative adjective: *clárius*—more clearly.

2. The superlative uses the *-e* ending instead of the *-us* of the adjective: *claríssime*—most clearly.

Irregular Adverbs: Most of these can be formed by the use of the above rules on the irregular adjective forms which we already know. But there are a few peculiarities:

bene (well)	mélius (better)	óptime (very well)
male (badly)	peius (worse)	péssime (very badly)
(*no form*)	*magis* (more)	máxime (most)
	minus (less)	mínime (least)
mult*um* (much)	plus (more)	plúrim*um* (most)

Neuters of Fourth Declension: There are just a few of these—the most common are probably *genu*

(knee) and *cornu* (horn, or flank of an army). They are declined thus:

genu	génua
genus	génuum
genu	génibus
genu	génua
genu	génibus

The singular is monotonous, and therefore easy. The plural is about what we should expect from a neuter—but note that it has not just *-a*, but *-ua*.

A few fourth declension words use *-ubus* instead of *-ibus* (dative and ablative plural).

Domus, which is feminine in a mostly masculine declension, is also odd in that it uses some second declension forms: most common are *domo* (abl.) and *domórum* (poss. pl.) and *domos* (obj. pl.).

ISTE: Declined just like *ille*. Meaning: *this, that*. Sometimes it has an extra idea: "that of yours." Sometimes it gives a tone of contempt. But these extras are not always present.

PLURA DE GILGAMESH

Ántequam cum Humbába pugnárent, Gílgamesh hortátus erat (*encouraged*) amícum suum Eabáni ne pugnam timéret. Nunc autem Eabáni mórtuus est. Gílgamesh patiénter eum spectat, sperans eum ad vitam reversúrum esse. Sed Eabáni non revértitur—corpus eius corrúmpitur. Gílgamesh ipse nunc timet. Sentit mortem étiam sibi ventúram esse. Proficíscitur ítaque, quaerens quo modo mortem vitet (*avoid*). Gílgamesh iam de quodam mirábili (*wonderful*) viro audívit, qui propínquus (*relative*) ei est: Utanapístim. Hic Utanapístim consecútus est immortalitátem. Gílgamesh, per multa monstra ad finem terrae vadit. Omnes hómines quos videt intérrogat de modo consequéndi immortalitátem. Omnes ei nullam esse spem (*hope*) dicunt. Ille autem non vult desperáre. Pergit (*goes on*) ítaque, et ad litus (*shore*) maris venit. In hoc mari sunt aquae mortis. Quo in lítore navem et magístrum navis ínvenit. Huic persuádet (*persuades*) ut eum ad Utanapístim portet.

Utanapístim autem ei immortalitátem dare non potest, sed narratiónem ei narrat de mirábili dilúvio (*flood*) ex quo ille et uxor salvi (*saved*) facti sunt. Post hoc dilúvium, quidam deus, cui nomen erat Enlil, dedit ad Utanapístim vitam aetérnam. Sed tales condiciónes íterum non sunt ventúrae. Utanapístim ígitur non potest dícere Gílgamesh quo modo vitam aetérnam cónsequi possit.

Nihilóminus, Utanapístim dicit quod forsan Gílgamesh possit cum morte pugnáre. Ítaque, Gílgamesh pugnáre conátur cum somno (*sleep*) mágico (hic somnus re vera est genus mortis). At hic somnus fórtior eo est, et Gílgamesh mori coepit. (Continuábitur)

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. Did Humbaba have many horns? 2. Gilgamesh desired immortality more than anything else. 3. He even attempted to fight with a magic sleep, and fought well but the sleep fought better. 4. On his knees he asked Utanapistim for eternal life. 5. The way of dying is known to all, but the way of living eternally is not known to them. 6. Gilgamesh did not see this clearly, and so he dared to fight bravely against death. 7. All men told Gilgamesh: "Death is a heavy burden that the gods have given to men—there is no hope of escaping."

SCRAMBLE EXERCISE

Ausa est fília quaedam ex Hebraéis, quae Moysis soror erat, fíliae Pharáonis loqui. Illa enim, genu flecténdo puéllae Aegyptíacae, num vellet vocári mulíerem ex Hebraéis púeri curándi causa, interrogávit. Qua iubénte, ad matrem celériter cucúrrit suam Moysis soror. Hoc modo iste in palátio vixit regis Aegýpti, sapientiámque Aegýpti doctus est.

LECTIO SEPTUAGESIMA TERTIA

De conditionibus realibus
De ablativo differentiae

Moyses ítaque mansit apud Jethro multos annos, et pastor erat. Quodam die, cum gregem duxísset in desértum, ad Horeb, montem Dei, Dóminus appáruit ei in flamma ignis de médio rubi. Cum ergo conspexísset flammam, Moyses dixit, "Vadam et vidébo visiónem hanc magnam, quare non comburátur rubus." Rubus enim videbátur ardére et nihilóminus ínteger manére. Cernens autem Dóminus quod Moyses veníret ad vidéndum, vocávit eum de médio rubi, et ait, "Moyses, Moyses." Qui respóndit, "Adsum." At ille, "Ne appropínques, ait, huc: solve calceaméntum de pédibus tuis: locus enim, in quo stas, terra sancta est." Dixítque Deus, "Ego sum Deus patris tui, Deus Ábraham, Deus Ísaac, et Deus Iacob."

Abscóndit Moyses fáciem suam; non enim audébat spectáre Deum. Cui ait Dóminus, "Vidi afflictiónem pópuli mei in Aegýpto, et clamórem eius audívi ob durítiam eórum qui afflígunt eos. Et sciens dolórem eius, descéndi, ut líberem eum de mánibus Aegyptiórum, et ducam de terra illa in terram bonam et spatiósam, in terram quae fluit lacte et melle. Sed veni, et mittam te ad Pharaónem, ut ducas pópulum meum, fílios Ísrael de Aegýpto." Dixítque Moyses ad Deum, "Quis sum ego ut vadam ad Pharaónem, et ducam fílios Ísrael de Aegýpto?" Qui dixit ei, "Ego ero tecum, et hoc habébis signum quod míserim te: cum dúxeris pópulum meum de Aegýpto, immolábis Deo super montem istum."

Ait Moyses ad Deum, "Ecce ego vadam ad fílios Ísrael, et dicam eis: Deus patrum vestrórum misit me ad vos. Si díxerint mihi: Quod est nomen eius? quid dicam eis?" Dixit Deus ad Moysen, "Ego sum qui sum." Ait, "Sic dices fíliis Ísrael: 'Qui *est*, misit me ad vos.' " (Continuábitur cras)

apud-*with*
pastor-*shepherd*
grex-*flock*
rubus-*bramble bush*
conspéxit-*saw*
combúrere-*burn up*
ardére-*burn*
íntegér-*whole*
huc-*to this place*
sólvere-*loose*
calceaméntum-*shoe*
pes-*foot*
abscóndere-*hide*
fácies-*face (5)*
ob-*on account of*
durítia-*hardness*
dolor-*grief, pain*
spatiósus-*extensive*
flúere-*flow*
lac-*milk*
mel-*honey*
immoláre-*sacrifice*
sic-*thus*

Vocabularium

conspíciunt, conspícere, spéxit, spéctus-*see, catch sight of*
flúere, fluxit,* fluxúrus-*flow*
sólvere, solvit, solútus-*loosen, pay*
fácies (5), fácie-*face*
íntegér, gra, grum-*fresh, untouched*
apud (*with obj.*)-*with, at the house of*
huc-*to this place*
ob (*with obj.*)-*on account of*

Nunc Cogitemus

Real Conditions: There are six principal kinds of sentences in which one clause starts with *if*. Let us learn how to handle three of them today, and three later. It is best to work by imitating a set of samples (it would be good to memorize them):

1. Si vénerit (véniet)—bonum erit.
   If he will have come (will come, *or* comes)—it will be good.
2. Si adest—bonum est.
   If he is here—it is good.
3. Si ádfuit (*or* áderat)—bonum fuit (*or* erat).
   If he was here—it was good.

These are all called real conditional sentences—they have indicative. Notice that there is a future, a present, and a past real (in that order).

Ablative of Measure of Difference: We already know how to say *than* after a comparative. For example:

> He is taller than Marcus.
> Áltior est Marco (*or* quam Marcus).

But how do we say *how much* taller? Just use the ablative without a preposition:

He is taller than Marcus *by two feet.*
Áltior Marco est *duóbus pédibus.*

or again:

He is much taller than Marcus (taller *by much*)—
Multo áltior quam Marcus est.

Gilgamesh Quaerit Immortalitatem

Gílgamesh cum quodam somno mágico (qui re vera genus mortis est) pugnáre conátus est. Gílgamesh fórtiter pugnávit, sed somnus multo fórtius pugnávit. Ítaque amícus noster fere mórtuus est, et re vera mórtuus esset (*would have died*) nisi uxor Utanapístim, misericórdia mota, eum suscitavísset (*had awakened*).

Post haec Gílgamesh discessúrus erat ut in urbem suam reverterétur. At uxor Utanapístim virum suum hortátur (*urges*) ut ei áliquod donum det priúsquam discédat. Utanapístim ígitur éxplicat ad Gílgamesh quod herba (*plant*) mirábilis in fundo (*bottom*) maris inveníri possit. Omnis qui hanc cómedit herbam, in iuventútem íterum revértitur. Magnis labóribus Gílgamesh ad fundum maris natat (*swims*), invenítque hanc herbam. Herba invénta, Gílgamesh statim comédere eam non vult. Mélius esse putat eam comédere ante oculos pópuli sui in Erech. Proféctus est ítaque, et, magnis itinéribus factis, fere ad urbem suam venit. At dies cálidus (*hot*) fuit, et Gílgamesh, ad aestum vitándum (*avoid the heat*) vult natáre. Dum natat, herbam mirábilem in ripa relínquit. Sed ecce! serpens quidam ad ripam venit, herbam videt, cómedit, et, depósita cute (*skin*), revértitur in iuventútem. Quam ob causam serpéntes étiam nunc cutem depónere et in iuventútem revérti possunt (non verum est serpéntes hoc fácere posse, sed quidam hoc dicunt). At miser (*wretched*) Gílgamesh, quid ille fácere potest? Non iam mirábilem habet herbam: moriéndum est. Nihilóminus, ante mortem, spíritum Eabáni per artes mágicas évocat (*summons*), qui ei multa de regiónibus mortuórum narrat.

English to Latin

1. If Gilgamesh finds the plant, he will live eternally. 2. If he does not watch it, a snake will take it. 3. Therefore snakes now have the power of not dying. 4. Is Gilgamesh much better than a snake? 5. Some of the citizens whom he rules think not. 6. If the people do not believe, what should I do? 7. He went into the sea to seek the plant.

LECTIO SEPTUAGESIMA QUARTA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

Dixit Moyses Deo, "Non credent mihi pópuli mei, neque aúdient vocem meam, sed dicent, "Non appáruit tibi Dóminus." Sed Deus dedit Moysi potestátem magnam, ut posset persuadére Hebraéis. Dixit ítaque Deus, "Quid est quod tenes in manu tua?" Respóndit, "Virga." Dixítque Dóminus, "Próice eam in terram." Proiécit, et versa est in serpéntem, ita ut fúgeret Moyses. Dixítque Dóminus, "Exténde manum tuam, et apprehénde caudam eius." Qui manum exténdit, et versa est in virgam, ita ut Moyses ipse incólumis esset, sine vúlnere. Deus étiam dedit Moysi potestátem faciéndi signa ália, imperavítque ei ut fáceret ea coram Pharaóne.

Moyses ítaque relíquit Jethro, et iter fecit per desértum. Áaron autem, frater Moysis, mónitus a Deo, venit óbviam Moysi in desérto. Moyses et Áaron venérunt simul, et congregavérunt omnes senióres filiórum Ísrael. Locutúsque est Áaron ómnia verba quae díxerat Dóminus ad Moysen; et fecit signa coram pópulo, et crédidit pópulus. Audiverúntque quod visitavísset Dóminus fílios Ísrael, et proni adoravérunt. Intellexérunt enim quod Deus re vera locútus erat Moysi.

Post haec ingréssi sunt Moyses et Áaron, et dixérunt Pharaóni, "Haec dicit Dóminus Deus Ísrael: Dimítte pópulum meum, ut sacríficet mihi in desérto." At ille respóndit, "Quis est Dóminus, ut aúdiam vocem eius, et dimíttam Ísrael? Néscio Dóminum, et Ísrael non dimíttam." Praecépit ergo in die illo praeféctis óperum dicens, "Ne ultra praebeátis páleas pópulo Hebraeórum ut fáciant láteres. Sed ipsi vadant et cólligant páleas suas." (Continuábitur cras)

persuadére-*persuade*
virga-*rod*
proícere-*throw*
apprehéndere-*take*
cauda-*tail*
incólumis-*unharmed*
vulnus-*wound*
óbviam-*to meet* (*adv.*)
simul-*at the same time*
congregáre-*gather*
pronus-*prostrate*
intelléxit-*understood*
praeféctus-*prefect*
ultra-*any more*
praebére-*furnish*
pálea-*chaff*
later-*brick*

VOCABULARIUM

intellégere, léxit, léctus-*understand*
persuadére, suásit, suásus-*persuade* (*with dat.*)
praebére, praébuit, praébitus-*furnish, offer*
[proíciunt] proícere, iécit, iéctus-*throw forth*
incólumis, e, i-*unharmed*
magnum vulnus, vúlnere-*wound*
óbviam (*adverb*)-*to meet* (*dat.*)
simul-*at the same time*
ultra (*adverb and prep. with obj.*)—*more, further, beyond*

VIDEAMUS FORMAS VETERES

1. Give comparative and superlative adjective forms of: *integer, durus, bonus, parvus.* 2. Give the comparative and superlative adverbs of: *fortis, pulcher.* 3. Decline together: *cornu fórtius, fácies mélior.*

NARRATIO BABYLONICA DE DILUVIO

In poémate épico de Gílgamesh, Utanapístim de máximo dilúvio quod in diébus suis vénerat narrávit. Iam narratiónem in Scriptúris Sacris de dilúvio bíblico légimus. Nunc narrándum est de dilúvio Babylónico. Póstea comparatiónem (*comparison*) inter utrámque (*each*) versiónem faciémus.

Olim dei concílium habuérunt. In hoc concílio de humáno génere deliberavérunt. Quandam ob causam (nihil de peccáto dícitur in versióne Babylónica) dei humánum genus delére volunt, diluviúmque míttere státuunt (*decide*).

Unus ex his deis amícum humánum quem non vult delére habet. Hic deus, cui nomen est Ea (deus aquárum est) ad amícum suum Utanapístim vadit, et eum de dilúvio ventúro monet. Ínsuper, Ea mandat ut Utanapístim navem aedíficet, mensurásque (*dimensions*) navis ei dat. Ímperat étiam ut Utanapístim animália omnis géneris in navem suam ducat. Utanapístim ómnia sicut Ea mandávit facit, et in navem ingréditur cum uxóre

sua, omnibúsque animálibus. Imber de coelis dies septem cadit. Omnes álii hómines animaliáque in áquis interfécti sunt. Utanapístim autem, et qui cum eo in navi sunt, salvi (*safe*) sunt. Quodam die post imbres, navis in montem qui Nisir vocátur venit. Utanapístim colúmbam (*dove*) et pásserem (*sparrow*) ex navi mittit, sed ad eum revertúntur. Póstea cornícem (*crow*) emíttit ex navi. Cornix non revérsa est. Utanapístim ígitur ex navi egréditur, et sacrifícium offert. Dei, qui in coelum fúgerant, timéntes dilúvium, sicut muscae (*flies*)—sic enim narrat narrátio Babylónica—ad sacrifícium descéndunt. Sed quidam deus qui vocatur Bel iráscitur quia Utanapístim ex dilúvio incólumis evásit. Nihilóminus álius deus, Enlil, praémia ad Utanapístim dare vult, quia ille genus humánum servávit. Ítaque Enlil ponit Utanapístim et uxórem eius in locum trans aquas mortis, datque eis immortalitátem (Comparátio cum Scriptúris fiet cras.)

English to Latin

1. The gods held a council and sent a flood to destroy the human race. 2. If Ea does not warn Utanapistim, he also will be destroyed. 3. Aaron came to meet him in the desert. 4. Moses did not understand why the bush remained unharmed. 5. Was Bel a much greater god than Ea? 6. The gods came down like flies to take the sacrifice. 7. Utanapistim escaped from the danger of dying in the flood.

Spectaculum Novum

Quidam bonus agrícola, Egbértus nómine, non póterat bene vidére propter debilitátem (*weakness*) oculórum. Iter ergo fecit in urbem ad optometrístam (id est, ad oculórum médicum [*eye doctor*]). Optometrísta pósuit ante Egebértum lítteras parvas et interrogávit, "Potésne légere has lítteras?" Cui Egbértus respóndit, "Non possum." Deínde pósuit optometrísta alías lítteras maióres, et eódem modo interrogávit. Iterum respóndit Egbértus se non posse légere illas lítteras. Maióres lítteras íterum pósuit médicus, et idem respónsum accépit. Último lítteras pedis uníus (*one foot*) pósuit médicus, interrogavítque Egbértum, "Certe, nunc légere has lítteras potes?" Cui Egbértus respóndit, "Non possum." "Quómodo (*how*) áccidit?" dixit médicus. Et Egbértus respóndit, "Numquam dídici légere."

LECTIO SEPTUAGESIMA QUINTA

De conditionibus idealibus
De formis verbi: malle

Moyses et Áaron semel vénerant coram Pharaóne rogántes ut concéderet licéntiam discedéndi Hebraéis. Qui non solum negávit licéntiam, verum étiam magis oppréssit Hebraéos. Pópulus Israel venit ad Moysen et Áaron, queréntes de opresióne. Deus ítaque mandávit Moysi et Áaron ut íterum venírent ad Pharaónem, ut liberarétur pópulus ab onéribus quae vix sustinére póterant, et ut licéntiam habérent egrediéndi ex Aegýpto.

Iam Moyses vidit se frustra locutúrum esse verba Pharaóni, nisi étiam mirácula fáceret. Áaron ergo convértit virgam in serpéntem coram Pharaóne. Hic autem vocávit magos suos, qui idem fecérunt. Sed virga Áaron devorávit virgas eórum.

At Phárao remánsit in durítia cordis sui, prohibuítque Hebraéos égredi ex Aegýpto. Deus ergo fecit decem signa magna, quae fuérunt decem plagae Aegýpti. Áaron venit ad ripam flúminis Nili, percussítque flumen virga sua. Ecce, aqua flúminis facta est sanguis. Phárao autem adhuc durus erat. Post dies septem, Áaron exténdit manum suam super flúmina Aegýpti, et statim multitúdo magna ranárum venérunt ex aquis, et implevérunt omnem terram. Ranae venérunt in domos ómnium, étiam in palátium regis. Phárao térritus est, vocavítque Moysen et Áaron, "Rogáte Dóminum pro me, ait, ut ranae discédant a me et pópulo meo et dimíttam pópulum tuum." Moyses fecit quae rex petíverat, et ranae discessérunt. At Phárao, videns se populúmque suum liberátos esse a ranis, adhuc nóluit dimíttere Hebraéos. (Continuábitur cras)

semel-*once*
concédere-***grant***
negáre-***refuse***
queri-*complain*
vix-*hardly*
sustinére-***bear***
frustra-*in vain*
magus-***magician***
devoráre-***eat***
durítia-***hardness***
cor-***heart***
prohíbuit-*forbade*
plaga-*plague*
percússit-*struck*
rana-*frog*
implévit-*filled*

Vocabularium

concédere, céssit, céssus-*yield, grant*	quéri, questus est-*complain*
negáre, ávit, átus-*deny, say no, refuse*	sustinére, sustínuit, susténtus-*withstand, hold up, bear*
prohibére, prohíbuit, prohíbitus-*prohibit, prevent*	frustra-*in vain*
	semel-*once*
	vix-*hardly, scarcely*

Nunc Cogitemus

Ideal Conditions: Here are samples of the three kinds of ideal conditional sentences. Again, it is best to work by imitating a set of samples (would be good to memorize them):

1. Si vénerit (véniat)—bonum sit. (future ideal)
   If he should come (*or* comes)—it *would* be well.
2. Si adésset—bonum esset. (present ideal)
   If he were here—it *would* be well.
3. Si adfuísset—bonum fuísset. (past ideal)
   If he had been here—it *would have* been well.

Notice the distinguishing marks of these kinds—subjunctive in Latin—*would* in the second part of the sentence (main clause) in English. Notice also how the Latin tenses run: *one notch off* (we have no future subjunctive, and so use present subjunctive for future ideal):

Future ideal: present subjunctive (sometimes perfect subjunctive in the *si* clause)
Present ideal: imperfect subjunctive
Past ideal: pluperfect subjunctive

The Verb Malle ("Prefer"): Its forms are much like those of *velle* (wish):

Present indicative: malo, mavis, mavult, málumus, mavúltis, malunt
Imperfect indicative: malébam, etc.
Future indicative: malam, males, etc.

Perfect indicative: málui, ísti, etc.
Present subjunctive: malim, etc.
The other forms are too obvious to need to be written out.

Comparatio Inter Duas Narrationes Diluvii

Prima fácie (*at first sight*) narrátio Babylónica simíllima vidétur esse narratíoni in Sacris Scriptúris. Sed si diligénter studeámus, máximas adésse differéntias videámus. In Scriptúris enim dilúvium non a multis deis, sed a Deo uno míttitur. Et saepe vidémus hanc differéntiam in duábus narratiónibus—Babylónica enim suppónit (*supposes*) polytheísmum verum esse. Scriptúra, e contra, omníno monotheística est. In Scriptúris, dilúvium est poena (*punishment*) peccatórum hóminum. In Babylónia, e contra, dilúvium non dícitur esse poena peccáti. In Scriptúra, unus solus verus Deus monet Noe de dilúvio ventúro. In Babylónia unus parvus deus, contra voluntátem aliórum deórum, vult serváre Utanapístim. Mensúrae (*dimensions*) navis divérsae in duábus narratiónibus sunt—sed differéntia huius modi non gravis est. Simília sunt ea quae narrántur de ímbribus, de monte Nisir, de ávibus (*birds*) missis ex arca. Post dilúvium, et Noe et Utanapístim sacrifícia ófferunt. Sed in Babylónia, vidétur quod sacrifícium fere necessárium deis est. In Scriptúra, Deus non eget (*needs*) sacrifíciis nostris, et ea habére vult solúmmodo in signum bonárum dispositiónum cordis (*heart*) humáni. In Babylónia dei congregántur "sicut muscae"—sunt verba ipsa narratiónis Babylónicae. Nihil tam indígnum (*unworthy*) Deo in Scriptúris habétur. In Babylónia, deus Bel iráscitur quod (*because*) Utanapístim ex dilúvio evásit. In Scriptúris, Deus non iráscitur. Ipse enim, qui solus est Deus, fecit Noe evádere.

Valde magnae ergo sunt differéntiae inter utrámque (*each*) narratiónem. Quid ergo dicéndum est de multis rebus simílibus in eis? Véritas in hac re non clara est —forsan utráque (*each*) narrátio venit traditiónibus antíquis. In Babylónia, hae traditiónes mutátae sunt polytheístice (*polytheistically, i.e., so as to speak of many gods*). In Scriptúra, scriptor humánus, sub inspiratióne divína scribens, omnem vitat (*avoids*) erórem.

English to Latin

1. If Ea had not warned him, Utanapistim would have died. 2. Most of the gods would have preferred to kill him. 3. If Bel should see the ship, would he destroy it? 4. If they did not have sacrifices, what would the gods do? 5. Gilgamesh says, "If I were immortal, I would be happy." 6. Pharao would yield if he knew the truth about God. 7. If Pharao wants to see me, let him call me.

LECTIO SEPTUAGESIMA SEXTA

De gerundivo

Phárao, videns ranas abiísse, íterum indurávit cor suum, nec permísit Hebraeís ut exírent ex Aegýpto. At Áaron, iussu Dei, percússit virga sua púlverem terrae. Conféstim multa míllia cínifum venérunt e púlvere in omnes hómines et in animália in univérsa terra Aegýpti. Magi Pharaónis conatí sunt edúcere cínifes e terra, nec potuérunt. Et magi Pharaóni dixérunt, "Dígitus Dei hic est." Phárao autem non audívit eos. Indurátum est enim cor illíus. Dixit quoque Dóminus ad Moysen, "Vade ad Pharaónem et dices ad eum: Haec dicit Dóminus: Dimítte pópulum meum, ut sacríficet mihi. Quod si non dimíseris eum, ecce ego mittam in te et in servos tuos et in pópulum tuum et in domos tuas omne genus muscárum. Faciámque mirábilem in die illa terram Gessen in qua pópulus meus est, ut non sint ibi muscae: et scias quod ego Dóminus in médio terrae. Ponámque divisiónem inter pópulum meum et pópulum tuum: cras erit signum istud. Fecítque Dóminus ita. Et venérunt muscae gravíssimae in domos Pharaónis et servórum eius, et in omnem terram Aegýpti; corrúptaque est terra ab huius modi muscis.

Vocavítque Phárao Moysen et Áaron et ait eis, "Ite et sacrificáte Deo vestro in terra hac." Et ait Moyses, "Non potest ita fíeri. Sed viam trium diérum pergémus in solitúdinem, et sacrificábimus Dómino Deo nostro, sicut praecépit nobis." Dixítque Phárao, "Ego dimíttam vos, ut sacrificétis Dómino Deo vestro in desérto; verúmtamen lóngius ne abeátis. Rogáte pro me."

Egressúsque Moyses a Pharaóne, orávit Dóminum. Qui fecit secúndum verbum illíus, et ábstulit muscas a Pharaóne et a servis eius, et a pópulo eius. At cor Pharaónis íterum indurátum est, et non dimísit pópulum. (Continuábitur cras)

induráre-*harden*
cor-*heart*
exíre-*go out*
iussu-*by order*
percússit-*struck*
pulvis-*dust*
cínifes-*gnats*
edúcere-*lead out*
dígitus-*finger*
hic-*here*
quoque-*also*
quod si-*but if*
musca-*fly*
fíeri-*be done*
pérgere-*go*
verúmtamen-*nevertheless*
oráre-*pray, beg*
egréssus-*go out*

Vocabularium

induráre, ávit, átus-*harden*
oráre, ávit, átus-*beg, pray*
percútiunt, percútere, percússit, percússus-*strike*
pérgere, perréxit, perréctus-*proceed, go on*
dígitus, o-*finger*
multus pulvis, púlvere-*dust*
hic (*adverb*)-*here*
quod si-*but if*
quoque-*also, even* (*never first word*)

Nunc Cogitemus

Further Uses of the Gerundive: We have already seen how to use the gerundive (*-ndus*) to express PURPOSE—in that sense it was used with *ad*, *causa*, *grátia*, and sometimes *ob*, *propter*, or *pro*. When the gerundive is used without any of those prepositions (and, of course, not with a linking verb to express obligation), it may give the same effect as the ENGLISH GERUND WITH AN OBJECT. Quite a variety of combinations are possible:

1. Marcus consul factus est *donis dandis*.
   Marcus became consul *by giving bribes* (gifts).
2. Brutus interféctus est *in liberánda pátria*.
   Brutus was killed *in freeing his country*.
3. Scripsit librum *de contemnénda glória*.
   He wrote a book *about despising glory*.
4. Curavit *pontem faciéndum*.
   He took care of *making a bridge* (*or* he had a bridge made).

Notice how these translations work:

1. Translate the preposition (if any—or consider what case we have).
2. Translate the *-ndus* form by the English gerund (*-ing*).
3. Put the Latin noun (the one with which the gerundive agrees) after the gerund in English, as its object.

Test this procedure on each of the above examples. It will seem strange at first—but actually this use of the gerundive is a handy short cut in Latin.

De Pharaone et Iudaeis

Quodam die, unus ex consiliáriis (*counsellors*) regis ad Pharaónem accéssit, et fere hoc modo locútus est ei, "Dómine mi rex, licétne mihi servo vestro loqui vobis de rebus magnis faciéndis?" Cui Phárao, "Licet. Loquáris nobis. Consiliáriis audiéndis, multa bona fácere póssumus." "In regno vestro," ait servus regis, "pópulus novus est. Hic pópulus crescit, et fit gens magna. Ergo, timor mihi est." "Sed quare timéndum est," interrogávit rex. "Nonne bonum est ut multos subiéctos habeámus? Possunt tribúta (*taxes*) sólvere; possunt in opéribus magnis faciéndis laboráre. Sed qui sunt hi homines?" "Hebraéi vocántur, dómine mi rex." "Ex qua terra venérunt?" "Audívi eos venísse in hanc terram, multis saéculis ante regnum vestrum. Quidam dicunt eos venísse ex Chánaan." Cui rex, "Sed nonne hómines boni sunt? Quare eos timéndos esse credis?" Respóndens ítaque consiliárius dixit, "Vidétur quod Hebraéi in terram nostram venérunt témpore quo reges mali hanc terram regébant, dómine mi rex. Id est, venérunt témpore quo reges Aegýpti erant hómines qui vocabántur Hyksos. Hi enim reges in Aegýpto fuérunt plus quam centum annos. Non erant reges boni. Non enim regnábant per potestátem dei magni qui est in coelis, quem vocámus 'Horus.' Sed solúmmodo per potestátem alteríus dei 'Seth' regnavérunt. Hebraéi autem vidéntur potestátem magnam habuísse in diébus horum regum malórum." (Continuábitur)

English to Latin

1. By destroying the ships, the Romans defeated Carthage. 2. The gods spoke about destroying all men. 3. The art of ruling men is quite difficult. 4. By striking the dust, Aaron called forth thousands of gnats (*cínifum*). 5. If Pharao had feared God, he would not have hardened his heart. 6. If the Hebrews had not been in Gessen, would they have had gnats? 7. God preferred to send Moses to free His people by working (use *fácere*) miracles.

LECTIO SEPTUAGESIMA SEPTIMA

De verbis impersonalibus
De ablativis causae et separationis

Dixit autem Dóminus ad Moysen, "Ingrédere ad Pharaónem, et lóquere ad eum: Haec dicit Dóminus Deus Hebraeórum: Dimítte pópulum meum ut sacríficet mihi. Quod si adhuc ímpedis eos et rétines eos, ecce manus mea erit super agros tuos, et super animália vestra. Et fáciet Dóminus mirábile inter possessiónes Ísrael et possessiónes Aegyptiórum, ut nihil omníno péreat ex his quae pértinent ad fílios Ísrael." Statuítque Dóminus tempus, dicens, "Cras fáciet Dóminus verbum istud in terra." Fecit ergo Dóminus verbum hoc áltera die. Mortuáque sunt multa animália Aegyptiórum ex ómnibus genéribus animalíum eórum; de animálibus vero filiórum Ísrael nihil omníno périit. Et misit Phárao ad vidéndum: nec erat quidquam mórtuum de his quae possidébat Ísrael. Induratúmque est cor Pharaónis, et non dimísit pópulum.

Et dixit Dóminus ad Moysen et Áaron, "Tóllite plenas manus cíneris et spargat cínerem Moyses in coelum coram Pharaóne. Sitque pulvis super omnem terram Aegýpti: erunt enim in homínibus et iuméntis úlcera in univérsa terra Aegýpti."

Tulérunt ítaque Moyses et Áaron cíneres, steterúntque coram Pharaóne. Et sparsit cíneres Moyses in coelum; fáctaque sunt úlcera in homínibus et in iuméntis. Nec póterant magi Pharaónis stare coram Moyse propter úlcera quae in illis erant et in omni terra Aegýpti. Phárao autem ipse mansit adhuc in durítia cordis sui, et nóluit dimíttere pópulum Ísrael de Aegýpto. Hoc modo Deus misit per Moysen plagas multas in Pharaónem et in omnem pópulum eius. At opórtuit adhuc míttere álias plagas in Aegýptum ántequam Phárao vellet dimíttere fílios Ísrael ex terra illa. (Continuábitur cras)

impedíre-*hinder*
retinére-*hold back*
péreat (*from* períre)
pertinére-*belong to*
statúere-*set*
quidquam-*anything*
possidére-*possess*
cor-*heart*
cinis-*ashes*
spárgere-*scatter*
iuméntum-*beast of burden*
úlcera-*ulcers*
opórtuit-*was necessary*

Vocabularium

impedíre, ívit, ítus-*hinder, impede*
licet, licére, lícuit, lícitum est-*it is permitted*
opórtet, oportére, opórtuit-*it is necessary, it is proper*
pertinére, pertínuit, —: *pertain, belong*
placet, placére, plácuit, plácitum est-*it pleases, it is decided*
possidére, possédit, posséssus-*possess*
retinére, retínuit, reténtus-*keep back, retain*
statúere, státuit, statútus-*set, decide*
multus cinis, cínere-*ashes*
quisquam, quicquam (*or* quidquam—*decline the* quis *part, not the* quam)—*anyone, anything*

Nunc Cogitemus

Impersonal Verbs: There are some verbs that have no forms except the third person singular, with the subject *it* in English. These verbs are always impersonal. (There are, as we shall see, many verbs that *may* be used impersonally, but have more forms than merely third singular.) For example:

Plácuit senátui míttere eos in cárcerem.
It pleased the senate (*or* the senate decided) to send them to prison.
We could also write the same sentence thus:
Plácuit senátui ut mitteréntur in cárcerem.

Or another: *Licet* vobis discédere ex Aegýpto.
It is permitted to you to depart from Egypt.

Which could also be: Licet ut discedátis ex Aegýpto.
Another example: *Opórtet* vos discédere.

It is proper that you go.

Which could be: Opórtet (ut) vos discedátis.

Notice that some of these verbs, such as *placet* and *licet*, take the dative. Notice also that to explain the subject *it*, we may have a clause—this clause is sometimes objective with infinitive, sometimes *ut* with subjunctive. In general, any impersonal verb may have the objective with the infinitive clause—but the *ut*-subjunctive is usually restricted to verbs that have an idea of willing, wanting, permitting, deciding or something similar.

As to verbs that are sometimes, not always, impersonal —consider this example:

Nuntiátur Caésarem adésse.
It is reported that Caesar is present.

No real problem in it. But some others are a bit different:

Ventum est in terram novam.
They came into the new land.

We cannot translate *ventum est* literally; it would mean "it was comed" (by ——). Instead of *they*, in the above sentence, the *general sense* might have called for *he, she, we, you* or even *I*.

Ablative of Cause and Ablative of Separation: We have already learned that the ablative without a preposition may be translated in English by: *in, by, with*. Now we must add two more meanings: *because of* and *from*. Of course an ablative of separation (*from*) often does have a preposition (*ab, ex, de*), but sometimes it does not. Hardly ever does it have one with names of towns, as we have already seen.

1. *Peccátis meis* Deus haec fecit.
   Because of my sins God has done this.
2. Liberávit me *omni cura*.
   He freed me *from all care*.

Continuantur Verba Pharaonis et Consiliarii Eius

"Nunc autem," perréxit consiliárius loquens Pharaóni, "vidétur mihi quod perículum est ex hoc pópulo. Sicut enim dixi, in terram nostram venérunt tempóribus malórum regum. Sed ínsuper, hi Hebraéi loquúntur saepe de magno viro ex gente sua quem vocant Iosé-phum. Dicunt hunc virum Ioséphum fuísse magnum príncipem sub quodam ex his régibus malis." "Et quis revéra erat hic Ioséphus," interrogávit Phárao. "Eum néscio." Cui consiliárius, "Ego quoque Ioséphum néscio. Nihilóminus, si quodam témpore hi Hebráei magnam habuérunt potestátem in terra nostra, nonne perículum est ne, si íterum gentes áliae fáciant bellum contra nos, Hebraéi pugnent cum illis contra nos? Crescunt número valde, sicut dixi. Ergo vidétur mihi oportére ut áliquid faciámus de his homínibus. Nunc autem, líceat mihi ut éxplicem consílium novum et bonum de Hebraeís impediéndis." Cui rex, "Licet ut éxplices. Semper nos opórtet audíre consília virórum egregiórum. Sed explicándum est consílium tuum." "In parte septentrionáli terrae vestrae, dómine mi rex, olim fuérunt duae urbes bonae. Nunc autem, in eádem parte terrae vestrae Hebraéi agros póssident. Ítaque, si licéat mihi loqui, hoc vidétur bonum: Opórtet ut rex edíctum fáciat de his úrbibus íterum aedificándis. Hebraéi cogéndi sunt ut labórent in úrbibus faciéndis. Si ergo Pharaóni pláceat haec imperáre, ego servus vester statim curábo haec faciénda." Cui rex, "Ea quae dixísti bona vidéntur. Perge, cura statim urbes aedificándas."

English to Latin

1. They were not permitted (literally: it was not permitted to them) to go out of Egypt. 2. It was necessary that Moses send more plagues. 3. Because of the great war, we do not wish to stay here: we prefer to leave. 4. Pharao decided to let them go, but then hardened his heart again. 5. Because of many plagues the Hebrews feared God. 6. Did Moses scarcely escape death in saving the people? 7. But if Aaron had not struck the earth with his rod, the gnats would not have come.

LECTIO SEPTUAGESIMA OCTAVA

Nihil novi hodie—veteribus studeamus

Étiam post úlcera accépta Phárao nóluit dimíttere Ísrael. Moyses ítaque, iubénte Dómino, mane surréxit vadítque ad Pharaónem. Dixítque Moyses, "Haec dicit Dóminus Deus Hebraeórum: Dimítte pópulum meum ut sacríficet mihi. Ut scias quod non sit símilis mei in omni terra, nunc exténdens manum percútiam te et pópulum tuum. En pluam cras hac ipsa hora grándinem multam nimis, qualis non fuit in Aegýpto a die qua fundáta est, usque in praesens tempus."

Extendénte ítaque Moyse manum suam in coelum, facta est grando in univérsa terra Aegýpti, et Dóminus dedit tonítrua ac discurréntia fúlgura super terram Aegýpti. Et percússit grando, in omni terra Aegýpti, cuncta quae fuérunt in agris, ab hómine usque ad iuméntum. Tantum in terra Gessen, ubi erant fílii Ísrael, grando non cécidit.

Misítque Phárao et vocávit Moysen et Áaron, dicens ad eos, "Peccávi étiam nunc. Dóminus iustus; ego et pópulus meus, ímpii. Oráte Dóminum ut désinant tonítrua Dei, et grando: ut dimíttem vos, et nequáquam hic ultra maneátis."

Egressúsque Moyses a Pharaóne ex urbe, teténdit manus ad Dóminum; et cessavérunt tonítrua et grando, nec ultra venérunt super terram. Dóminus fecit haec *quod* Moyses rogáverat eum. Phárao autem, videns quod cessavísset grando et tonítrua, auxit peccátum suum; et indurátum est cor eius, nec dimísit fílios Ísrael, sicut praecéperat Dóminus per manum Moysis.

mane-*in the morning*
en-*behold*
grando-*hail storm*
nimis-*very*
qualis-*such, such as*
tonítruum-*thunder*
discúrrere-*run about*
fulgur-*lightning*
cunctus-*all*
desínere-*cease*
nequáquam-*by no means*
teténdit-*stretched*
cessávit-*ceased*
quod-*because*
auxit-*increased*

Vocabularium

augére, auxit, auctus-*increase*
cessáre, ávit, átus-*cease*
desínere, desívit, désitus-*cease, stop*
téndere, teténdit, tentus-*stretch, spread*
cunctus, a, um-*all*
clarum fulgur, fúlgure-*lightning*
qualis, e, i-*such, what kind*
nimis (*adverb*)-*very, exceedingly, too*
quod-*because*

NOTE: Notice the new use of *quod* in the sense of *because*. *Quod* also may mean *that*, for indirect statements, or for substantive clauses. It can also be one form of the relative pronoun, meaning *which* or *that*.

Videamus Formas Veteres

1. Find three basic English translations that will cover all uses of the future passive participle, gerundive, and gerund. 2. List all the meanings you know for the ablative without a preposition—invent examples of each (it is well to have one example of each memorized). 3. Give the third singular of all tenses and moods of the verb *malle*. 4. Summarize the entire rule for Latin conditions, both real and ideal, in one sentence (make it short, not more than 20 words will easily do).

Pharao de Moyse audit

"Vocavistíne me, Dómine mi Rex?" dixit senex, qui erat princeps inter omnes consiliários Pharaónis. "Útique," rex ait, "audívimus virum novum in hanc terram venísse cui nomen Moyses. Álii consiliárii nostri monuérunt nos de hoc viro. Dicunt eum esse perículo omni terrae Aegýpti. Sed nóvimus te fuísse consiliárium patris mei et monuísse eum de pópulo quodam qui dicúntur Hebraéi. Nunc autem, hic Moyses dícitur esse vir ex Hebraéis." "Vera sunt haec," respóndit vetus consiliárius. "Paucis annis ante mortem patris vestri, ad eum veni et persuási ut cógeret hunc pópulum laboráre in labóribus duris. Si haec non monuíssem, et si Phárao haec non

imperavísset, forsan hi Hebraéi plus aucti essent, et regnum Pharaónis delevíssent. Étiam consílium dedi de interficiéndis ómnibus púeris Hebraeórum in infántia." "Quómodo ergo hic vir Moyses non est interféctus?" interrogávit Phárao. "Mater huius púeri novum consílium ad púerum servándum invénit. Pósuit enim eum in sporta in flúmine sacro. Fília regis, hunc púerum videns, desiderávit eum habére. Ítaque, fília Pharaónis iubénte, mater ipsa huius Moysis áluit púerum paucos annos. His annis finítis, puer in palátium regis ipsíus venit, vixítque ibi. Phárao autem nesciébat púerum esse Hebraéum. Cum autem puer crevísset et vir factus esset, osténdit se amáre Hebraéos, étiam virum Aegyptíacum percússit. Hanc propter causam, fugiéndum erat ei in terram Mádian. Ibi multos annos remánsit. Sed dícunt eum vidísse visiónem Dei Hebraeórum. Deus dixit ei redeúndum esse in terram nostram, et Hebraéos ducéndos esse ex regno vestro. Mélius esset nobis si mórtuus esset in flúmine!"

Ubi est Georgius Washington?

Quidam senex (*old man*) per viam ámbulans (*walk*) vidit quinque púeros cum cane (*dog*). "Quid fácitis?" interrogávit senex. "Mendácia (*lies*) dícimus," respóndit unus ex púeris, "Quisquis (*whoever*) máximum narrat mendácium, canem hunc habébit." "Sed ego," dixit senex, "cum puer essem, numquam mendácium dixi." Siléntium breve erat—deínde unus puer ad senem locútus est: "Áccipe eum—canis tuus est."

English to Latin

1. If Pharao had not sinned, the plagues would not have come. 2. Why did he not decide to let Israel go? 3. Pharao did not free them from work. 4. Pharao increased his sin by hardening his heart. 5. Lightning, such as Egypt had never seen before that time, came upon the whole land. 6. When Moses extended his hand, the thunder stopped. 7. The lightning was seen in all the land except the part in which the Hebrews lived.

LECTIO SEPTUAGESIMA NONA

De casu locativo
De ablativo instrumenti et personae agentis

Introiérunt ergo Moyses et Áaron ad Pharaónem et dixérunt ei, "Haec dicit Dóminus Deus Hebraeórum: Úsquequo non vis obedíre mihi? Dimítte pópulum meum ut sacríficet mihi. Sin autem resístis, et non vis dimíttere eum: ecce ego indúcam cras locústam in fines tuos et si quid grando non delévit, cómedent locústae. Et implébunt domos tuas et servórum tuórum." Dixérunt autem servi Pharaónis ad eum, "Úsquequo patiémur hoc scándalum? Dimítte hómines ut sacríficent. Nonne vides quod períerit Aegýptus?" Revocaverúntque Moysen et Áaron, et Phárao vóluit permíttere eis ut solúmmodo viri sine muliéribus et líberis irent et sacrificárent. Statímque eiécti sunt de conspéctu Pharaónis.

Exténdit Moyses virgam super terram Aegýpti; et Dóminus indúxit ventum uréntem tota die illa et nocte; et mane, ventus urens levávit locústas. Quae ascendérunt super univérsam terram, vastántes ómnia. Quam ob rem Phárao festínus vocávit Moysen et Áaron, et dixit, "Peccávi in Dóminum Deum vestrum et in vos. Sed nunc dimíttite peccátum meum." Moyses ítaque egréssus orávit Dóminum. Qui flare fecit ventum ab occidénte vehementíssimum, et arrípuit locústas proiecítque in Mare Rubrum. At Phárao íterum indurávit cor suum, nec dimísit Ísrael.

Moyses ígitur exténdit manum in coelum; et factae sunt ténebrae horríbiles in univérsa terra Aegýpti tribus diébus. Nemo vidit fratrem suum, nec movit se de loco in quo erat. At ubicúmque habitábant fílii Ísrael lux erat. Vocavítque Phárao Moysen et Áaron et dixit eis, "Ite, sacrificáte Dómino. Oves tantum véstrae et arménta remáneant." At Moyses negávit se posse ire sine arméntis. Dixítque Phárao ad Moysen, "Discéde a me, et cave ne ultra vídeas fáciem meam. Quocúmque die apparúeris mihi, moriéris." Respóndit Moyses, "Ita fiet ut locútus es. Non vidébo ultra fáciem tuam."

introívit-*went in*
úsquequo-*how long*
sin-*but if*
resístere-*resist*
indúcere-*bring in*
locústa-*locust(s)*
eícere-*throw out*
conspéctus-*sight*
úrere-*burn*
leváre-*raise*
festínus-*swift*
flare-*blow*
arrípuit-*snatch*
ruber-*red*
ténebrae-*darkness*
ubicúmque-*wherever*
oves-*sheep*
arméntum-*flock*
quicúmque-*who(what)-ever*
ut-*as*

VOCABULARIUM

flare, avit, atus-*blow*
introíre, iit, *itúrus-*enter*
leváre, ávit, átus-*raise, relieve*
úrere, ussit, ustus-*burn*
quicúmque, quaecúmque, quodcúmque (*decline only the* qui-)-*whoever, whichever, whatever*
ruber, rubra, rubrum-*red*
ténebrae, is-*darkness*
sin-*but if*
ut (*with indicative*)-*as, when*

NUNC COGITEMUS

LOCATIVE CASE: We have already noted that the names of towns and cities do not usually use a preposition with the objective and the ablative to mean *to* or *from* the town. Now when the sense is that of *staying in* the town, something similar happens. We have the *locative case* (which is used only on names of towns, cities, and a few stray other words, such as *domus—domi*: at home). This locative case exists only in the FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Endings are: 1. -ae   2. -i

Thus: Romae   Taréнti

(In the plurals of first and second declensions, and in the third declension, we use the ablative.)
Seldom do we find: in Roma, in Tarénto, etc.

ABLATIVES OF INSTRUMENT AND PERSONAL AGENT: For the most part we have not found it necessary to give special rules on when to use or omit prepositions with

the ablative: in most uses, it is possible to use the case either way. But there are two uses in which most authors are particular about the prepositions:

Instrument—no preposition (some Late authors use *de* or *ex*, but not very commonly)

Personal agent—uses *ab*

The difference is not hard to see from a pair of examples:

1. Interféctus est gládio.
   He was killed by a sword.
2. Interféctus est a Marco.
   He was killed by Marcus.

In other words, in both examples we have something done *by* a person or thing. But when we have a *person*, a preposition (*ab*) is normal—when we have a *thing*, no preposition is ordinarily used.

PHARAO AUDIT CONSILIUM BONUM

"Licétne ut loquar pauca ad dóminum meum regem?" interrogávit idem vetus consiliárius, cum ad Pharaónem introísset. Cui Phárao, "Licet, sed bréviter. Valde enim moti sumus illis rebus quae facta sunt a viro péssimo Moyse." "Bréviter fáciam," respóndit consiliárius. "Ego quoque passus sum multa ab eo. Ipso die in quo Moyses ante vos venit, ad peténdam licéntiam discedéndi pópulo suo, tímui. Non solum enim frater eius Áaron virgam suam in serpéntem convértit, sed étiam, percutiéndo flúmine, fecit aquam sacri flúminis in sánguinem! Dixi enim in mente mea: 'Magno perículo terrae nostrae sunt hi viri! Vidétur quod magni dei pro eis pugnant. Forsan maióres sunt quam dei Aegýpti!' Sed íterum cogitávi non oportére hoc modo loqui. Deínde post septem dies, manu exténsa super flumen, idem Áaron fecit multitúdinem magnam ranárum veníre. Étiam in palátium sacrum venérunt! Póstea, púlvere percutiéndo, vocávit Aaron multa míllia cínifum e terra. Magi autem vestri hoc non potuérunt fácere, ita ut dícerent: 'Manus Dei est hic!' Cum autem cínifes discessíssent, misit Deus eórum muscas in omnem terram Aegýpti—sed non in partem terrae ubi hábitant Hebraéi isti! Magno terróri erat mihi cogitáre de his! Post haec multa animália nostra mórtua sunt—sed non animália Hebraeórum. Deínde Moyses ipse, cínere spargéndo in coelum coram Pharaóne, misit úlcera grávia in nos omnes. Ínsuper, extendénda manu, misit idem vir in nos grándinem, locústas, et ténebras horríbiles, quae tamen in partem terrae ubi Hebraéi sunt non venérunt! Ergo, si líceat loqui, hoc dicam, 'Forsan, ne peióra áccidant terrae nostrae, mélius esset ut Hebraéi isti discédant.' "

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. There were many great men at Rome and at Athens. 2. Caesar was killed by Brutus. 3. He was killed with a dagger. 4. If he had not desired to be a king, would he have been killed? 5. Pharao said that he did not wish to see the face of Moses again. 6. God sent lightning into all Egypt, so that the people were terrified. 7. Because of the sins of Pharao, ten plagues came upon the land.

LECTIO OCTOGESIMA

De clausulis introductis coniunctione: cum
De variis rebus in declinatione tertia

Et dixit Dóminus ad Moysen, "Adhuc una plaga tangam Pharaónem et Aegýptum, et post haec dimíttet vos, et exíre compéllet." Dixitque Dóminus étiam, "Média nocte egrédiar in Aegýptum, et moriétur omne primogénitum in terra Aegyptiórum, a primogénito Pharaónis, qui sedet in sólio eius, usque ad primogénitum ancíllae quae est ad molam, et ómnia primogéntia iumentórum. Erítque clamor magnus in univérsa terra Aegýpti, qualis nec ante hoc tempus fuit, nec póstea futúrus est. Mensis iste, vobis erit princípium ménsium: primus erit in ménsibus anni. Loquímini ad univérsum coetum filiórum Ísrael et dícite eis: Décima die mensis huius tollat unus quisque (*each and every one*) agnum per famílias et domos suas. Sin autem minor est númerus, ut suffícere possit ad vescéndum agnum, assúmet vicínum suum, qui iunctus est dómui suae, secúndum númerum animárum quae suffícere possunt ad esum agni. Erit autem agnus absque mácula, másculus, annículus. Et servábitis eum usque ad quartam décimam diem mensis huius. Immolabítque eum univérsa multitúdo filiórum Ísrael ad vésperam. Et sument de sánguine eius, ac ponent sánguinem super utrúmque postem, et in superlimináribus domórum in quibus cómedent illum. Et edent carnes nocte illa assas igni, et ázymos panes cum lactúcis agréstibus. Et transíbo per terram Aegýpti nocte illa, percutiámque omne primogénitum in terra Aegýpti. Erit autem sánguis vobis in signum in dómibus in quibus éritis, et vidébo sánguinem, et transíbo vos, nec erit in vobis plaga delens quando percússero terram Aegýpti. Habébitis autem hunc diem in monuméntum, et celebrábitis eam solémnem Dómino in generatiónibus vestris."

Factum est autem in noctis médio, percússit Dóminus omne primogénitum in terra Aegýpti, a primogénito Pharaónis usque ad primogénitum captívae, quae erat in cárcere. Surrexítque Phárao nocte, et omnes servi eius, omnísque Aegýptus, et factus est clamor magnus in Aegýpto. Neque enim erat domus in qua non erat mórtuus. Vocatísque Moyse et Áaron nocte, Phárao ait, "Súrgite et egredímini a pópulo meo, vos et fílii Ísrael: ite, immoláte Dómino sicut dícitis, et abeúntes benedícite mihi."

compéllere-*drive*
primogénitus-*first-born*
sólium-*throne*
ancílla-*slave girl*
mola-*mill*
iuméntum-*beast of burden*
clamor-*shout*
princípium-*beginning*
coetus-*assembly*
quisque-*each*
per-*by*
suffícere-*suffice*
vesci-*eat*
assúmere-*take also*
vicínus-*neighbor*
iunctus-*joined*
esus-*eating*
absque-*without*
mácula-*spot*
annículus-*one year old*
véspera-*evening*
utérque-*each, both*
postis-*door post*
superlimináre-*lintel*
assus-*roasted*
ázymus-*unleavened*
agréstis-*wild*
lactúca-*lettuce*
in-*as*

Vocabularium

iúngere, iunxit, iunctus-*join, yoke*
vesci (*no other parts*)-*eat (often with abl.)*
absque (*with abl.*)-*without*
coetus, u-*assembly, crowd*
mácula, a-*spot*
mola, a-*mill, meal*
princípium, o-*beginning*
quisque, quaeque, quidque (*or* quodque)-*each, each one* (unus quisque—*each and every one*)
vicínus, o (*noun or adj.*)-*neighbor, neighboring*

Nunc Cogitemus

Cum Clauses: It is good now to review and make more precise our information about clauses introduced by *cum*. We already know that *cum* may have three classes of meanings:

1. Time—*when* or *after*
2. Cause—*because* or *since*
3. Concession—*although*

We know that:

1. *Cause* and *concession always* have the subjunctive.
2. *Time* sometimes has the subjunctive.

But precisely when does time have the subjunctive? We must distinguish primary and secondary sequence (see Lesson 66—we have primary sequence when the main verb refers to present or future time; secondary, when it refers to past time).

In primary sequence, *cum* will have the indicative whenever it is to be translated by *when* or *after*.

In secondary sequence, however, *cum* will have the indicative only when the clause means *merely* time (i.e., no other idea, such as *because* or *although* is strongly felt in the background). E.g.:

Cum sol oriebátur, Caesar proféctus est.
When the sun was rising, Caesar set out.

The indicative is used because the idea is purely time —there is no thought that Caesar was starting *because* or *although* the sun was rising.

MIXED STEM NOUNS IN THIRD DECLENSION: We have already learned that there are two large groups of nouns in third declension, depending on the ablative singular:

i—means that possessive plural will be-*ium*
nominative-objective plural of neuters will be *-ia*
e—means that possessive plural will be *-um*
nominative-objective plural of neuters will be *-a*

Actually, there are some nouns that are half-breeds, or *mixed stems*. They have *e* in the ablative singular, but *-ium* in the possessive plural. Which are these nouns? There is no simple rule—experience and much reading is the best teacher. But we may note that no neuters are mixed stems. And most nouns of one syllable in the nominative that end in *-ns, -rs, -rx, -lx* in the nominative are mixed.

RULES FOR I-STEM NOUNS: I-stem nouns are those that we have learned with *i* in the ablative singular. There are three rules to help our memory in learning that ablative singular.

1. Monosyllables (i.e., nouns with one syllable in the nominative) whose bases (ablative singular minus ending) end in two consonants—will be either I-stems or mixed stems. (This group is masculine or feminine)

2. Parasyllables (i.e., nouns with same number of syllables in nominative and ablative singular—e.g., *civis, civi*) with nominative singular in *-is* or *-es* (will be masculine or feminine)—will be I-stems.

3. Neuters in *-e, -al,* or *-ar*—will be I-stems. Unfortunately, there are exceptions to these rules—but they are still a help to memory.

DE ELIA PROPHETA ET PROPHETIS BAAL

In diébus Elíae prophétae, cum Iudaéi deos falsos et idóla cólerent, Elías ad omnem pópulum Ísrael locútus est dicens, "Úsquequo (*how long*) claudicátis (*waver*) inter duas partes. Si Dóminus est Deus, sequímini eum: si autem Baal est deus, sequímini illum." Et non respóndit ei pópulus verbum. Et ait rursus Elías ad pópulum, "Ego remánsi prophéta Dómini solus: prophétae autem Baal quadringénti et quinquagínta (*450*) viri sunt. Dentur (*from* dare) ítaque nobis duo boves, et illi éligant (*choose*) sibi bovem unum, et in frusta (*pieces*) caedéntes (*cutting*) super ligna ponant, ignem autem non suppónant (*put beneath*); et ego bovem álterum parábo, et super ligna impónam, ignem autem non suppónam. Invocáte nómina deórum vestrórum, et ego nomen Dómini mei invocábo: et Deus qui per ignem exaudíverit (*hear, grant favor*), ipse sit Deus." Respóndens omnis pópulus ait, "Óptima propositío."

Dixit ergo Elías prophétis Baal, "Elígite vobis bovem unum, et paráte primi, quia vos plures estis: et invocáte nómina deórum vestrórum, ignémque non supponátis."

Qui cum tulíssent bovem quem déderat eis, invocábant nomen Baal de mane (*morning*) usque ad merídiem (*noon*) dicéntes, "Baal, exaúdi nos." Et non erat vox, neque qui respondéret. Transiliebántque (*jump over*) altáre quod fécerant.

Cumque iam esset merídies, illudébat (*mock*) illis Elías, dicens, "Clamáte voce maióre (*louder*): deus enim est, et forsan lóquitur, aut in diversório (*inn*) est, aut in itínere, aut certe dormit (*is asleep*), ut excitétur."

Clamábant ergo voce magna, et incidébant se (*cut themselves*) secúndum ritum suum donec perfunderéntur (*be covered*) sánguine. (Continuábitur cras)

ENGLISH TO LATIN

1. When Pharao saw that his own son was dead, he called Moses and Aaron. 2. He told them that he would let Israel go. 3. Each and every one prepared to leave Egypt at night. 4. When they had eaten the lamb, they put its blood on the doors. 5. The Egyptians were killed by the angel of the Lord. 6. Because of the blood of the lamb, the angel did not kill the Jews. 7. By sacrificing the lamb the Jews were saved.

LECTIO OCTOGESIMA PRIMA

De verbis regentibus casum ablativum
De variis terminationibus
De usu lexici

Phárao déderat pópulo Ísrael licéntiam discedéndi ex Aegýpto. Illi ígitur surrexérunt nocte, et, portántes ossa Ioséphi, discessérunt. Dóminus autem praecedébat eos ad ostendéndam viam per diem in colúmna nubis et per noctem in colúmna ignis, ut dux esset itíneris utróque témpore. Numquam défuit colúmna nubis per diem, nec colúmna ignis per noctem coram pópulo.

Et nuntiátum est regi Aegyptiórum quod fugísset pópulus; immutatúmque est cor Pharaónis et servórum eius super pópulo, et dixérunt, "Quid volúimus fácere ut dimitterémus Ísrael ne servíret nobis?" Iunxit ergo currum, et omnem pópulum suum assúmpsit secum. Tulítque sescéntos currus eléctos et quidquid in Aegýpto cúrruum fuit, et duces totíus exércitus. Cumque appropinquásset Phárao, levántes fílii Ísrael óculos, vidérunt Aegýptios post se: et timuérunt valde, clamaverúntque ad Dóminum. Et ait Moyses ad pópulum, "Nolíte timére, state et vidéte res magnas Dómini quas factúrus est hódie. Aegýptios enim, quos nunc vidétis, nequáquam ultra vidébitis in sempitérnum. Dóminus pugnábit pro vobis, et vos tacébitis." Profécti sunt ígitur fílii Ísrael ad Mare Rubrum. Cumque extendísset Moyses manum super mare, ábstulit mare Dóminus, flante vento veheménti et urénte, et vertit in siccum; divísaque est aqua. Et ingréssi sunt fílii Ísrael per médium sicci maris; erat enim aqua quasi murus a dextra eórum et a laeva. Persequentésque Aegýptii ingréssi sunt post eos. Et ait Dóminus ad Moysen, "Exténde manum tuam super mare, ut revertántur aquae ad Aegýptios super currus et équites eórum." Cumque extendísset Moyses manum contra mare, revérsum est ad priórem locum. Fugientibúsque Aegýptiis occurrérunt aquae, et invólvit eos Dóminus in médiis flúctibus. Ne unus quidem supérfuit ex eis. Fílii autem Ísrael perrexérunt per médium sicci maris et laudavérunt Dóminum.

nubes-*cloud*
défuit-*be lacking*
nuntiáre-*announce*
immutáre-*change*
servíre-*be slave*
currus-*chariot* (*fourth declension*)
assúmere-*take*
quidquid-*whatever*
eléctus-*picked*
nequáquam-*by no means*
tacére-*be silent*
siccus-*dry*
murus-*wall*
dexter-*right*
laevus-*left*
occúrrere-*meet*
fluctus-*wave*
ne . . . quidem-*not even*
laudáre-*praise*

VOCABULARIUM

deésse, défuit, *defutúrus-*fail, be lacking to*
immutáre, ávit, átus-*change*
laudáre, ávit, átus-*praise*
servíre, servívit, servítus-*be slave to* (*with dat.*)
tacére, tácuit, tácitus-*be silent*
dexter, tera, terum-*right*
murus, o-*wall*
siccus, a, um-*dry*
ne . . . quidem—*not even* (*note the word order*)

NUNC COGITEMUS

FIVE DEPONENTS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE: There are five deponent verbs whose apparent object is in the ablative:

uti, usus est—*use*; gládio útitur—*he uses a sword.*

frui, fructus est—*enjoy*; fruménto frúitur—*he enjoys grain.*

fungi, functus est—*busy self with, perform*; consulátu fúngitur—*he performed the duty of a consul.*

potíri, potítus est—*get possession of*; terra potítus est—*he got possession of the land.*

vesci (*sometimes with objective*)—*eat*; cibis vescitur—*he eats foods.*

Actually, the five verbs are in the middle voice (something neither active nor passive, which has no special forms in Latin. The passive in a few examples has such a meaning)—they mean the *subject acts so as to affect*

himself: Thus: *uti*: to serve oneself by means of something; *fungi*: to busy oneself with, etc.

Optional Endings in Third Declension: In addition to the endings we have already learned, there are some optional endings that are sometimes used, as follows:

1. The ablative singular of most I-stems can also be *e* (but the ablative singular of consonant stems can never be *i*). *This holds for nouns, not for adjectives.* Nor does it hold for neuter nouns. Present participles do have the choice.

2. The objective plural of I-stems can be *-is* (with long *i*) instead of *-es*. E.g., the noun *navis* could have ablative *nave*; objective plural *navis*.

Optional Endings of Verbs:

1. The second person singular passive ending is usually *-ris*, as we have seen, in forms made on the first part of the verb. But instead of *-ris* we may have *-re*:

paráris could be *paráre*.

2. The third person plural of the perfect indicative active is usually *-erunt*. It could also be *-ere* (with the first *e* long):

paravérunt could be *paravére*.

Contractions in the Perfect and Pluperfect Active of Verbs: These contractions are rather common in the perfect tense of verbs that have their perfect ending in: *-avit, -evit, -ivit*:

1. *-avit* and *-evit* perfects lose *v* and the following vowel before *s* or *r*.

2. *-ivit* perfects lose *v* and the following vowel before *s*—and also lose *v* before *r*.

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE		
Perfect			*Perfect*		
amásti	delésti	audísti	amárim	delérim	audíerim
amástis	deléstis	audístis	etc.	etc.	etc.
amárunt	delérunt	audiérunt			
Past Perfect			*Past Perfect*		
amáram	deléram	audíeram	amássem	deléssem	audíssem
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
Future Perfect					
amáro	deléro	audíero			
etc.	etc.	etc.			

INFINITIVE

Perfect

amásse
delésse
audísse

There are a few other occasional contracted forms—such as those from *nóscere*—*novísti* becomes *nosti*; *novérunt* becomes *norunt*; *nóveram*, etc., becomes *noram*, etc., *novísse* becomes *nosse*.

Continuatur Narratio de Elia Propheta

Sed vox non audiebátur, et nemo prophétis Baal respondébat. Dixit ítaque Elías omni pópulo, "Veníte ad me." Et accedénte ad se pópulo, curávit altáre Dómini, quod destrúctum erat. Et tulit duódecim lápides (*stones*) secúndum númerum tríbuum (*tribes*) filiórum Iacob. Et de lapídibus altáre in nómine Dómini aedificávit; fecítque fossam (*ditch*) in circúitu (*around*) altáris. Et compósuit ligna, divisítque bovem et super ligna pósuit. Et ait, "Impléte quáttuor hýdrias (*water jars*) aqua (*ablative*) et fúndite super holocaústum et super ligna." Et fecérunt hoc ter (*three times*), Eliá iubénte. Et currébant aquae circum altáre, et fossa repléta est. Cumque iam tempus esset ut offerrétur holocaústum, accédens Elías prophéta ait: "Dómine Deus Ábraham et Ísaac, osténde hódie quia (*that*) tu es Deus Ísrael, et ego servus tuus, et iuxta (*according to*) praecéptum tuum ómnia verba haec feci. Exaúdi (*hear*) me, Dómine, exaúdi me, ut discat pópulus iste, quia (*that*) tu es Dóminus Deus, et tu convertísti cor eórum íterum."

Cécidit autem ignis Dómini, et vorávit (*consumed*) holocaústum, et ligna, et lápides, pulvérem quoque, et aquam quae, erat in fossa, lambens (*licking it up*).

Quod cum vidísset omnis pópulus, cécidit in fáciem suam, et ait: "Dóminus ipse est Deus, Dóminus ipse est Deus."

English to Latin

1. How did the Jews get possession of the Holy Land? 2. They enjoyed all the things that the Lord had given them. 3. Not even one thing was lacking to them. 4. If they had served the Lord well, they would have remained there. 5. We ought to use well all that God has given us. 6. Although the holocaust was not dry, fire from heaven came down upon it and consumed it. 7. The Lord is to be praised greatly (*magnópere*).

The Use of the Latin Dictionary

Latin Dictionaries (and other texts also) do not use the new forms of listing of words such as we have learned. But it is easy to learn to follow them.

They give four parts for normal verbs instead of our three. The last three are the same (substantially) as ours (the difference is that we use the third person ending in

the perfect active, while they use the first person). The additional part they give is the first part. It is the present indicative active, first singular. Compare it to our preliminary part on such verbs as *cápiunt*. Here are a few examples, listed in both ways:

OURS: cápiunt, cápere, cepit, captus
THEIRS: capio, capere, cepi, captus
OURS: loqui, locútus est
THEIRS: loquor, loqui, locutus sum
OURS: paráre, parávit. parátus
THEIRS: paro, parare, paravi, paratus
OURS: conári, conátus est
THEIRS: conor, conari, conatus sum

The first part they give is really unnecessary—we have all the necessary information from three parts—why memorize four? But if we want that other part, we can easily make it from the principles we have learned: merely make the present indicative active first singular. That will be it.

On the last part of the verb, practice varies. Some books will give perfect passive participles instead of future active participles on some verbs. There is no uniformity between various dictionaries and texts. For example on the verb *ire*, some will give the last part as *itus*, others as *iturus*. But if you know one you can easily make the other.

As to nouns, other books give the possessive singular instead of the ablative singular as the second form. But we can handle that easily—the disadvantage in giving the possessive singular is that we then do not learn easily how to distinguish the various subdivisions within third declension (we must try to work them out by rules such as those given in Lesson 80). For example:

OURS: bona véritas, veritáte-truth
THEIRS: veritas, veritatis-*f*-truth
OURS: servus, o-slave
THEIRS: servus, i-*m*-slave

They give the gender by a letter instead of by an adjective. On the *bonus* type they list: *bonus*, *a*, *um*: the three forms of the nominative singular, just as we do. On third declension adjectives they give the same listing as we do except that they do not give the ablative singular, and so do not tell us what type of declension to follow.

So the differences are not extremely great. The older method calls for more memory work, but gives less information, since it fails to help us in third declension.

Other grammars write similarly to this book, but in the names of the cases they use the term genitive instead of possessive, and accusative instead of objective.

Declensions of Nouns

	1	2(M)	2(N)	3(M-F)	3(M-F)
Nom.	puélla	agnus	bellum	rex	navis
Poss.	puéllae	agni	belli	regis	navis
Dat.	puéllae	agno	bello	regi	navi
Obj.	puéllam	agnum	bellum	regem	navem
Abl.	puélla	agno	bello	rege	navi(e)
Nom.	puéllae	agni	bella	reges	naves
Poss.	puellárum	agnórum	bellórum	regum	návium
Dat.	puéllis	agnis	bellis	régibus	návibus
Obj.	puéllas	agnos	bella	reges	naves(is)
Abl.	puéllis	agnis	bellis	régibus	návibus

	3(N)	3(N)	4(M)	4(N)	5
Nom.	nomen	mare	senátus	genu	dies
Poss.	nóminis	maris	senátus	genus	diéi
Dat.	nómini	mari	senátui	genu	diéi
Obj.	nomen	mare	senátum	genu	diem
Abl.	nómine	mari	senátu	genu	die
Nom.	nómina	mária	senátus	génua	dies
Poss.	nóminum	márium	senátuum	génuum	diérum
Dat.	nomínibus	máribus	senátibus	génibus	diébus
Obj.	nómina	mária	senátus	génua	dies
Abl.	nomínibus	máribus	senátibus	génibus	diébus

Declensions of Adjectives

POSITIVE DEGREE

Singular

	M	F	N	M-F	N	M-F	N
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	ferox	ferox	fortis	forte
Poss.	boni	bonae	boni	ferócis	ferócis	fortis	fortis
Dat.	bono	bonae	bono	feróci	feróci	forti	forti
Obj.	bonum	bonam	bonum	ferócem	ferox	fortem	forte
Abl.	bono	bona	bono	feróci	feróci	forti	forti

Plural

	M	F	N	M-F	N	M-F	N
Nom.	boni	bonae	bona	feróces	ferócia	fortes	fórtia
Poss.	bonórum	bonárum	bonórum	ferócium	ferócium	fórtium	fórtium
Dat.	bonis	bonis	bonis	ferócibus	ferócibus	fórtibus	fórtibus
Obj.	bonos	bonas	bona	feróces	ferócia	fortes	fórtia
Abl.	bonis	bonis	bonis	ferócibus	ferócibus	fórtibus	fórtibus

Singular

	M	F	N	M-F	N
Nom.	acer	acris	acre	vetus	vetus
Poss.	acris	acris	acris	véteris	véteris
Dat.	acri	acri	acri	véteri	véteri
Obj.	acrem	acrem	acre	véterem	vetus
Abl.	acri	acri	acri	vétere	vétere

Plural

	M	F	N	M-F	N
Nom.	acres	acres	ácria	véteres	vétera
Poss.	ácrium	ácrium	ácrium	véterum	véterum
Dat.	ácribus	ácribus	ácribus	vetéribus	vetéribus
Obj.	acres	acres	ácria	véteres	vétera
Abl.	ácribus	ácribus	ácribus	vetéribus	vetéribus

COMPARATIVE DEGREE

Singular

M-F	N
clárior	clárius
clarióris	clarióris
clarióri	clarióri
clariórem	clárius
clarióre	clarióre

Plural

M-F	N
claióres	clarióra
claiórum	clariórum
clarióribus	clarióribus
claióres	clarióra
clarióribus	clarióribus

SUPERLATIVE DEGREE

All are declined liked *bonus*

Conjugations of Verbs

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

PRESENT: He loves, he does love, he is loving

	1	2	3	3	4
1.	amo	hábeo	pono	cápio	aúdio
2.	ama|s	habe|s	poni|s	capi|s	audi|s
3.	ama|t	habe|t	poni|t	capi|t	audi|t
1.	amá|mus	habé|mus	póni|mus	cápi|mus	audí|mus
2.	amá|tis	habé|tis	póni|tis	cápi|tis	audí|tis
3.	amant	habent	ponunt	cápiunt	aúdiunt

IMPERFECT: He loved, he did love, he was loving

1.	amába|m	habéba|m	ponéba|m	capiéba|m	audiéba|m
2.	amába|s	habéba|s	ponéba|s	capiéba|s	audiéba|s
3.	amába|t	habéba|t	ponéba|t	capiéba|t	audiéba|t
1.	amabá|mus	habebá|mus	ponebá|mus	capiebá|mus	audiebá|mus
2.	amabá|tis	habebá|tis	ponebá|tis	capiebá|tis	audiebá|tis
3.	amába|nt	habéba|nt	ponéba|nt	capiéba|nt	audiéba|nt

FUTURE: He will love, he will be loving

1.	amábo	habébo	ponam	cápiam	aúdiam
2.	amábi|s	habébi|s	pone|s	cápie|s	aúdie|s
3.	amábi|t	habébi|t	pone|t	cápie|t	aúdie|t
1.	amábi|mus	habébi|mus	poné|mus	capié|mus	audié|mus
2.	amábi|tis	habébi|tis	poné|tis	capié|tis	audié|tis
3.	amábunt	habébunt	ponent	cápient	aúdient

	PERFECT*	PLUPERFECT*	FUTURE PERFECT*
1.	amávi	amáveram	amávero
2.	amavísti	amáveras	amáveris
3.	amávit	amáverat	amáverit
1.	amávimus	amaverámus	amavérimus
2.	amavístis	amaverátis	amavéritis
3.	amavérunt	amáverant	amáverint

* The perfect active tenses of all conjugations are the same.

INDICATIVE PASSIVE

PRESENT: He is loved, he is being loved

1.	amor	hábeor	ponor	cápior	aúdior
2.	amáris	habéris	póneris	cáperis	audíris
3.	amátur	habétur	pónitur	cápitur	audítur
1.	amámur	habémur	pónimur	cápimur	audímur
2.	amámini	habémini	ponímini	capímini	audímini
3.	amántur	habéntur	ponúntur	capiúntur	audiúntur

IMPERFECT: He was loved, he was being loved

1.	amábar	habébar	ponébar	capiébar	audiébar
2.	amabáris	habebáris	ponebáris	capiebáris	audiebáris
3.	amabátur	habebátur	ponebátur	capiebátur	audiebátur
1.	amabámur	habebámur	ponebámur	capiebámur	audiebámur
2.	amabámini	habebámini	ponebámini	capiebámini	audiebámini
3.	amabántur	habebántur	ponebantur	capiebántur	audiebántur

FUTURE: He will be loved

1.	amábor	habébor	ponar	cápiar	aúdiar
2.	amáberis	habéberis	ponéris	capiéris	audiéris
3.	amábitur	habébitur	ponétur	capiétur	audiétur
1.	amábimur	habébimur	ponémur	capiémur	audiémur
2.	amabímini	habebímini	ponémini	capiémini	audiémini
3.	amabúntur	habebúntur	ponéntur	capiéntur	audiéntur

	PERFECT*	PLUPERFECT*	FUTURE PERFECT*
1.	amátus sum	amátus eram	amátus ero
2.	amátus es	amátus eras	amátus eris
3.	amátus est	amátus erat	amátus erit
1.	amáti sumus	amáti erámus	amáti érimus
2.	amáti estis	amáti erátis	amáti éritis
3.	amáti sunt	amáti erant	amáti erunt

* The perfect passive tenses of all conjugations are the same.

SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

PRESENT

1.	ame	m	hábea	m	pona	m	cápia	m	aúdia	m
2.	ame	s	hábea	s	pona	s	cápia	s	aúdia	s
3.	ame	t	hábea	t	pona	t	cápia	t	aúdia	t
1.	amé	mus	habeá	mus	poná	mus	capiá	mus	audiá	mus
2.	amé	tis	habeá	tis	poná	tis	capiá	tis	audiá	tis
3.	ame	nt	hábea	nt	poná	nt	cápia	nt	aúdia	nt

	IMPERFECT				PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
1.	amáre	m	Other conjugations are the same:	The conjugations are the same in the perfect and pluperfect.	amáveri	m	amavísse	m
2.	amáre	s			amáveri	s	amavísse	s
3.	amáre	t	habéret, etc.		amáveri	t	amavísse	t
1.	amaré	mus	póneret, etc.		amaverí	mus	amavissé	mus
2.	amaré	tis	cáperet, etc.		amaverí	tis	amavissé	tis
3.	amáre	nt	audíret, etc.		amáveri	nt	amavísse	nt

SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

PRESENT

1.	ame	r	hábea	r	pona	r	cápia	r	aúdia	r
2.	amé	ris	habeá	ris	poná	ris	capiá	ris	audiá	ris
3.	amé	tur	habeá	tur	poná	tur	capiá	tur	audiá	tur
1.	amé	mur	habeá	mur	poná	mur	capiá	mur	audiá	mur
2.	amé	mini	habeá	mini	poná	mini	capiá	mini	audiá	mini
3.	amé	ntur	habeá	ntur	poná	ntur	capiá	ntur	audiá	ntur

	IMPERFECT				PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
1.	paráre	r	Other conjugations are the same:	All conjugations are the same in the perfect and pluperfect.	amátus sim	amátus essem
2.	pararé	ris			amátus sis	amátus esses
3.	pararé	tur	haberétur, etc.		amátus sit	amátus esset
1.	pararé	mur	ponerétur, etc.		amáti simus	amáti essémus
2.	pararé	mini	caperétur, etc.		amáti sitis	amáti essétis
3.	pararé	ntur	audirétur, etc.		amáti sint	amáti essent

Infinitives

Present Active: to love

1	2	3	3	4
amáre	habére	pónere	cápere	audíre

Present Passive: to be loved

1	2	3	3	4
amári	habéri	poni	capi	audíri

Perfect Active: to have loved

Perfect Passive: to have been loved

(all conjugations are same)

amavísse, habuísse, posuísse, etc.

amátus esse, hábitus esse, pósitus esse, etc.

Future Active: to be about to love

Future Passive: to be about to be loved

(all conjugations same)

amatúrus esse, habitúrus esse, etc.

amátum iri, hábitum iri, etc.

Participles

present active: loving

M-F	N
amans	amans
amántis	amántis
amánti	amánti
amántem	amans
amánte(i)	amánte(i)
amántes	amántia
amántium	amántium
amántibus	amántibus
amántes(is)	amántia
amántibus	amántibus

future active: about to, going to, intending to love

amatúrus, a, um (decline like *bonus*)

perfect passive: having been loved

amátus, a, um (decline like *bonus*)

perfect deponent: having spoken

locútus, a, um

Gerundive

amándus, a, um habéndus, a, um ponéndus, a, um capiéndus, a, um audiéndus, a, um

Imperatives

Active: love!

ama	habe	pone	cape	audi
amáte	habéte	pónite	cápite	audíte

Passive: be loved!

amáre	habére	pónere	cápere	audíre
amámini	habémini	ponímini	capímini	audímini

Latin Numbers

There are several different kinds of numbers both in English and in Latin. We are concerned with chiefly two kinds: the ordinal and cardinal numbers. The ordinal numbers are: first, second, third, etc. They tell in what *order* a thing comes. The cardinal numbers are: one, two, three, etc.

In Latin, all ordinal numbers are declined, like *bonus, a, um*. Of the cardinal numbers, *unus, duo,* and *tres* are declined—but after that no cardinals are declined until we reach *ducénti, ae, a* (200). Of course, compound numbers, having the words *unus, duo, tres* in them, decline those parts. *Unus* is declined like the nine irregular adjectives (possessive singular in *-ius* and dative singular in *-i*). *Duo* has only a few forms:

Masculine and Neuter: duo, duórum, duóbus, duos (duo) duóbus

Feminine: duae, duárum, duábus, duas, duábus

Tres has only a few forms:

Masculine and Feminine: tres, trium, tribus, tres (tris), tribus

Neuter: tria, trium, tribus, tria, tribus

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1.	unus	primus
2.	duo	secúndus
3.	tres	tértius
4.	quáttuor	quartus
5.	quinque	quintus
6.	sex	sextus
7.	septem	séptimus
8.	octo	octávus
9.	novem	nonus
10.	decem	décimus
11.	úndecim	undécimus
12.	duódecim	duodécimus
13.	trédecim	tértius décimus
14.	quattuórdecim	quártus décimus
15.	quíndecim	quíntus décimus
16.	sédecim	séxtus décimus
17.	septéndecim	séptimus décimus
18.	duodevigínti	duodevicénsimus
19.	undevigínti	undevicénsimus
20.	vigínti	vigésimus (vicénsimus)
21.	vigínti unus (unus et vigínti)	vigésimus primus (vicénsimus primus)
22.	vigínti duo	vigésimus secúndus (vicénsimus secundus)
30.	triginta	trigésimus (tricénsimus)
40.	quadragínta	quadragésimus(quadragénsimus)
50.	quinquagínta	quinquagésimus (quinquagénsimus)
60.	sexagínta	sexagésimus (sexagénsimus)
70.	septuagínta	septuagésimus (septuagénsimus)
80.	octogínta	octogésimus (octogénsimus)
90.	nonagínta	nonagésimus (nonagénsimus)
100.	centum	centésimus (centénsimus)
200.	ducénti, ae, a	ducentésimus (ducenténsimus)
300.	trecénti, ae, a	trecentésimus (trecentensimus)
400.	quadringénti, ae, a	quadringentésimus (quadringenténsimus)
500.	quingénti, ae, a	quingentésimus (quingenténsimus)
600.	sescénti, ae, a	sescentésimus (sescenténsimus)
700.	septingénti, ae, a	septingentésimus (septingenténsimus)
800.	octingénti, ae, a	octingentesimus (octingenténsimus)
900.	nongénti, ae, a	nongentésimus (nongenténsimus)
1000.	mille (*several 1000's:* míllia)	millésimus (milllénsimus)

abésse, áfuit, afutúrus—be absent
abíre, iit, itúrus—go away
Ábraham—poss. & dat.: Ábrahae, other forms: Ábraham
abscóndere, abscóndit, abscónditus—hide
absque (with abl.)—without
accédere, céssit, cessúrus—go to, approach
accídere, áccidit, ——, happen
accípiunt, ere, cépit, céptus—receive
accusáre, ávit, átus—accuse
acer, acris, acre, i—sharp, eager, keen
ad (with obj.)—to, near
addúcere, dúxit, dúctus—lead to, influence
adésse, ádfuit, adfutúrus—be present
adhuc—yet, still
administráre, ávit, átus—govern, manage
adoráre, ávit, átus—respect, reverence, adore
aedificáre, -ávit, -átus—build
aeger, aegra, aegrum—sick
aetas, aetáte, magna—age
affíciunt, affícere, affécit, afféctus—affect, move
ager, agro—field, farm
ágere, egit, actus—do, drive, discuss, spend (time)
aggrediúntur, ággredi, aggréssus est—attack
agnus, o—lamb
álibi—elsewhere
aliénus, a, um—foreign, unfavorable
áliqui, quae, quod—some, any
áliquis, áliquid—someone, anyone
álius, a, um—other, another
altáre, i, magnum—altar
alter, era, erum—one, the one . . . the other
altus, a, um—high, deep
amáre, ávit, átus—love
amíttere, mísit, míssus—lose
amor, óre, magnus—love
an—or (in questions only)
ánima, a—soul, life, breath
animadvértere, vértit, vérsus—notice, punish
annus, o—year
ante (with obj.)—before
ántea (adv.)—before
ántequam (conjunction)—before
aperíre, apéruit, apértus—open
apparére, appáruit, appáritus—appear
appropinquáre, ávit, átus—approach (with dat.)
apud (with obj.)—with, at the house of
aqua, a—water
arcus, u—bow
aréna, a—sand
ars, arte, bona (poss. pl. *-ium*)—art, skill
at—but
atque—and
auctóritas, táte, magna—authority, influence
audax, áci—bold
audére, ausus est—dare (notice that the first part is normal, but the rest is deponent)
audíre, ívit, ítus—hear
auférre, ábstulit, ablátus—take away something (obj.) from someone (dat.)
augére, auxit, auctus—increase
aurum, o—gold
aut—or; aut . . . aut—either . . . or
autem—however, moreover (never first word in its clause)
auxílium, o—help
avúnculus, o—uncle (on mother's side: on father's side is *pátruus*)

bellum, o—war
benedícere, díxit, díctus—bless (sometimes with dat.)
bonus, a, um—good
bos, bove—cow, bull, ox (masc. or fem.)
brevis, e, i—short

caecus, a, um—blind
cádere, cécidit, casus—fall
Caésar, are—Caesar
cálidus, a, um—hot
calix, cálice, magnus—cup
campus, o—field, plain
capíllus o—hair
cápiunt, ere, cepit, captus—take, capture
caput, cápite, magnum—head
carcer, cárcere, magnus—prison
caro, carne, bona—flesh, meat
causa—for sake of (with poss.)
causa, a—cause, case, reason
cavére, cavit, cautus—beware, guard against
celériter—quickly, swiftly
certus, a, um—certain
cibus, o—food
cinis, cínere, multus—ashes
circum (with obj.)—around
circumcídere, cídit, císus—circumcise
circumíre, iit, itúrus—go around
circumstáre, stetit, ——, surround
civis, i, bonus—citizen
cívitas, civitáte, magna—city, citizenship
clam—secretly
clarus, a, um—famous, brilliant
classis, i, magna—fleet
claúdere, clausit, clausus—close
coelum, o (but pl. is masc.: *coeli*)—heaven, sky
——, coepit, coeptus (the last part has active meaning)—begin
coetus, u—assembly, crowd
cógere, coégit, coáctus—compel
cogitáre, ávit, átus—think
cognóscere, nóvit, nitus—learn (and therefore the perfect means:—know)
cólere, cóluit, cultus—worship, till, cultivate
collígere, collégit, colléctus—collect
comédere, comédit, comésus—eat
commíttere, commísit, commíssus—commit, intrust
comprehéndere, prehéndit, prehénsus—grasp, arrest
conári, conátus est—attempt
concédere, céssit, céssus—yield, grant
conféstim—at once
confídere, confísus est—trust in (half deponent)
coniurátio, ióne, mala—conspiracy
cónsequi, consecútus est—follow up, overtake, accomplish
consílium, o—plan
conspíciunt, conspícere, spéxit, spéctus—see, catch sight of
constitúere, stítuit, stitútus—set up, decide, determine
consuetúdo, túdine, bona—custom
consulátus, u-consulship
consúlere, consúluit, consúltus—consult
contémnere, témpsit, témptus—despise, scorn
continére, contínuit, conténtus—hold together, restrain
contra (with obj.)—against
cópia, a—abundance
coram (with abl.)—in the presence of, before
corpus, córpore, magnum—body
creáre, ávit, átus—make, create
crédere, crédidit, créditus—believe (with dat. of the person believed)
créscere, crevit, cretus—grow
crimen, crímine, malum—charge, crime
crux, cruce, bona—cross
cum—when, after, although, because
cum (with abl.)—with
cunctus, a, um—all
cúpiunt, cúpere, cupívit, cupítus—desire
cur—why
curáre, ávit, átus—take care of (with obj., not possessive case)
cúrrere, cucúrrit, cursúrus—run

dare, dedit, datus—give
de (with abl.)—about, concerning, down from
debére, débuit, débitus—owe, ought
decolláre, ávit, átus—behead
deésse, défuit, defutúrus—fail, be lacking to
deínde—then, next
deléctus, u—draft, levy
delére, delévit, delétus—destroy
deliberáre, ávit, átus—deliberate
depónere, pósuit, pósitus—put down
desideráre, ávit, átus—desire, miss
desínere, desívit, désitus—cease, stop
Deus, o—God (dea, a—goddess)
dexter, tera, terum—right
diábolus, o—devil
dícere, dixit, dictus—say, tell
dies, die (5)—day
diffícilis, e, i—difficult
dígitus, o—finger
dilúvium, o—flood, deluge
dimíttere, mísit, míssus—dismiss
discere, dídicit, ——, learn
discédere, céssit, cessúrus—depart
diu—a long time
dives, dívite—rich (poss. pl.—*um*)
divídere, divísit, divísus—divide
docére, dócuit, doctus—teach
dolor, óre, magnus—sorrow, pain, grief
domi—at home
dóminus, o—lord, master
donec—while, until
dormíre, ívit, ítus—sleep
dúbium, o—doubt
dúcere, duxit, ductus—lead (dúcere in matrimónium—marry)
dum—while
durus, a, um—hard
dux, duce, magnus—leader

e, ex (with abl.)—from, out from
ecce—behold
egrediúntur, gredi, gréssus est—go out
egrégius, a, um—excellent
émere, emit, emptus—buy
enim (never 1st word)—for

epístola, a—letter
equus, o—horse
eques, équite, bonus—horseman
ergo—therefore
esse, fuit, futúrus—be
étiam—even, also
etsi—even if, although
evádere, evásit, evásus—escape
exercére, exércuit, exércitus—practice, train
exércitus, u—army
exclamáre, ávit, átus—shout
expéllere, pulit, púlsus—expell
explicáre, ávit, átus—explain
explorátor, óre, bonus—spy, scout
exsílium, o—exile
exspectáre, ávit, átus—expect

fábula, a—legend, story
fac—imperative singular of fácere (pl. is regular: *fácite*) There are 4 irregular imperative singulars: Dic, Duc, Fac, Fer
fácies, e (5)—face, appearance
fácilis, e, i—easy
fáciunt, 3, fecit, factus—do make
fállere, feféllit, falsus—deceive
fames, fame, magna—hunger, famine
fémina, a—woman
fere—almost, in general, about
ferox, feróci—fierce
ferre, tulit, latus—bear, bring, carry
ferus, o *and* fera, a—wild beast
fília, a—daughter
fílius, o—son
finíre, ívit, ítus—finish, complete
finis, e (poss. pl. *-ium*), bonus—end
fiunt, fíeri, factus est—become, happen (the infinitive is irregular—*factus est* is really the last part of *fácere*—*to be made* means the same as: *to become*)
fiare, avit, atus—blow
flére, flevit, fletus—weep
flúere, fluxit, fluxúrus—flow
flumen, flúmine, magnum—river
foedus, foédere, bonum—pact, covenant
fons, fonte (poss. pl. *-ium*), magnus—fountain, spring
forsan—perhaps
fortis, e, i—brave, strong
fórtiter—bravely
forum, o—market, forum
frángere, fregit, fractus—break
frater, fratre, bonus—brother
frígidus, a, um—cold
fruméntum, o—grain
frustra—in vain
fúgiunt, fúgere, fugit, fugitúrus—flee
fulgur, fúlgure, clarum—lightning
fúndere, fudit, fusus—pour, shed

gens, gente, magna—tribe, people (poss. pl. *-ium*)
genu, u—knee
genus, génere, bonum—kind, race
gérere, gessit, gestus—wage, wear
gládius, o—sword
grátia, a—favor, grace, gratitude
gratus, a, um—pleasing
gravis, e, i—heavy
guttur, ure, magnum—throat

habére, hábuit, hábitus—have
habitáre, ávit, átus—dwell, inhabit
hic, haec, hoc—this
hic (adverb)—here
hódie—today
homo, hómine, bonus—man (*vir* is man in the strictly masculine sense, almost meaning *hero*; *homo* is more general, and means merely: *human being*—may include women and children)
hórreum, o—barn
hostis, i, magnus—enemy
huc—to this place

iáciunt, 3, iecit, iactus—throw
iam—already
ibi—there
idem, éadem, idem—same
ígitur—therefore
ignis, i, calidus—fire
ignóscere, ignóvit, ignótus—forgive (with dat. and obj.: Caésari multa ignóvit—He forgave Caesar many things)
ille, illa, illud—that
imágo, imágine, bona—image
imber, imbre, bonus—rain
immutáre, ávit, átus—change
impedíre, ívit, ítus—hinder, impede
imperáre, ávit, átus—command
imperátor, óre, bonus—general
impérium, o—command, power
implére, implévit, implétus—fill, fulfill
in (with abl.)—in, on (with obj.)—into
incólumis, e, i—unharmed
induráre, ávit, átus—harden
infúndere, fúdit, fúsus—pour in
ingénium, o—talent, natural ability
inimícus, o—enemy (personal enemy)
inítium, o—beginning
iniústus, a, um—unjust
inópia, a—need
insídiae, is—ambush, snare
ínsuper—in addition
íntegег, gra, grum—fresh, untouched
intellégere, telléxit, telléctus—understand
inter (with obj.)—between, among
interclúdere, interclúsit, interclúsus—cut off
intérea—meanwhile
interfíciunt, 3, fécit, féctus—kill
interrogáre, ávit, átus—question, ask
introíre, iit, itúrus—enter
inveníre, vénit, véntus—find
invídia, a—envy, unpopularity
ipse, ipsa, ipsum—himself, herself, itself
ira, a—anger
irásci, irátus est—be angry
ire, iit, itúrus—go
is, ea, id—this, that, he, she, it
iste, ista, istud—this, that (often with feeling: "that of yours," or with feeling of contempt)
ita—so
ítaque—and so
iter, itínere, magnum—journey
íterum—again
iubére, iussit, iussus—order
iudícium, o—judgment, court, trial
iúngere, iunxit, iunctus—join, yoke
ius, iure, verum—right, law
iuváre, iuvit, iutus—help, please
iuvéntus, túte, bona—youth (time of life)

labor, óre, multus—work, suffering
lacéssere, cessívit, cessítus—harass
laetus, a, um—glad
laudáre, ávit, átus—praise
légere, legit, lectus—read
leváre, ávit, átus—raise, relieve
lex, lege, bona—law
liber, libro—book
liberáre, ávit, átus—free
líberi, is (pl. only)—children
licéntia, a—permission
licet, licére, lícuit, lícitum est—it is permitted
ligáre, ávit, átus—bind
lignum, o—wood
língua, a—tongue, language
locus, o (plural shifts to neuter: loca)—place
loqui, locútus est—speak
luna, a—moon
lux, luce, magna—light

mácula, a—spot
magíster, tro—teacher
magnus, a, um—great, large
maior, maius, maióre—greater
maióres—ancestors (merely pl. of *maior* in special sense)
malle, máluit—prefer
malum, o—apple
malus, a, um—bad, evil
mandáre, l—order, send word, intrust
manére, mansit, mansúrus—remain
manus, u, longa—hand
mare, i, magnum—sea
mater, matre, bona—mother
máximus, a, um—very great, greatest
mélior, mélius, melióre—better
mens, mente, mea—mind (poss. pl.—méntium)
mensis, i, unus—month
merére, méruit, méritus—earn, deserve
meridionális, e, i—south
mérito—deservingly
metus, u—fear
meus, a, um—my, mine
miles, mílite, bonus—soldier
mínimus, a, um—least, smallest
mirári, mirátus est—wonder, admire
misericórdia, a—mercy, pity
Mithradátes, e, malus—Mithradates
míttere, misit, missus—send
modus, o—manner, way, measure, limit
mola, a—mill, meal
monére, mónuit, mónitus—warn, advise
monítio, óne, bona—advice, warning
mons, monte, magnus—mountain
monstráre, ávit, átus—show
mora, a—delay
morári, morátus est—delay, stay
moriúntur, mori, mórtuus est—die
mors, morte, bona—death
mos, more, bonus—custom, habit (in plural: morals, character)
movére, movit, motus—move
mox—soon
múlier, re, bona—woman
multus, a, um—much, many
mundus, o—world
munus, múnere, bonum—duty, gift, bribe, function
murus, o—wall
mutáre, ávit, átus—change
mystérium, o—mystery, rite

narráre, ávit, átus—tell
nasci, natus est—be born
nauta, a—sailor
navigáre, ávit, átus—sail

navis, i, longa—ship
ne—lest
ne . . . quidem—not even (Lat. word comes in between, but is translated after the *quidem*)
nec(neque)—and not; nec . . . nec—neither . . . nor
necésse (indecl.)—necessary
negáre, ávit, átus—deny, say no, refuse
negótium, o—business, trouble
nemo, némine (has no poss.)—no one
nescíre, nescívit, nescítus—not know
neuter, tra, trum—neither
nihil—nothing; nihil certi—nothing certain
nihilóminus—nevertheless
nimis (adverb)—very, exceedingly, too
nímius, a, um—excessive, very great
nisi—unless, except,if . . . not
nocére, nócuit, nocitúrus—harm (with dat.)
nolle, nóluit, ——, be unwilling
nomen, nómine, bonum—name
non—not, no
nondum—not yet
non iam—no longer
non solum . . . verum étiam—not only . . . but also
nóscere, novit, notus—learn (but the perfect means: *has learned*, *knows*)
novus, a, um—new
nox, nocte, longa—night
nullus, a, um—no one
num—whether
numeráre, ávit, átus—count, number
nunc—now
núntius, o—messenger, message

ob (with obj.)—on account of
obedíre, obedívit, obedítus—obey (with dat.)
oblivísci, oblítus est—forget (with poss. or obj.)
óbviam (adverb)—to meet (with dat.)
occidentális, e, i—western
occídere, occídit, occísus—kill
óculus, o—eye
odit, osúrus—hate
ódium, o—hatred
offérre, óbtulit, oblátus—offer
omníno—altogether, at all, in all
omnis, omne, i—all, every
onus, ónere, durum—burden
opórtet, oportére, opórtuit—it is necessary, it is proper
óppidum, o—town
óptimus, a, um—best, very good
opus, ópere, magnum—work
oráre, ávit, átus—beg, pray
orátio, óne, magna—speech
oratiónem habére—give a speech
ordo, órdine, bonus—row, order, rank
orientális, e, i—eastern
oriúntur, oríri, ortus est—rise, arise
os, ore, magnum—mouth
os, osse, durum—bone (compare: *os, ore*-mouth)
osténdere, osténdit, osténsus—show

panis, e, bonus—bread
paráre, ávit, átus—prepare
párcere, pepércit, párcitus (or: parsus)—spare (with dat.)
pars, parte (poss. pl., *-ium*), bona—part
parvus, a, um—small
pasci, pastus est—feed on (with abl.)
pastor, óre, bonus—shepherd, herdsman
pater, tre, bonus—father
patiúntur, pati, passus est—suffer
pauci, ae, a (plural only)—few
pax, pace, bona—peace
peccáre, ávit, átus—sin
peccátum, o—sin
pecúnia, a—money
peior, peius, peióre—worse
péllere, pépulit, pulsus—drive, rout
per (with obj.)—through
percútiunt, percútere, percússit, percússus—strike
pérgere, perréxit, perréctus—proceed, go on
perículum, o—danger
permíttere, mísit, míssus—permit (permísit hoc Marco)
perseveráre, ávit, átus—continue, persevere
persuadére, suásit, suásus—persuade (with dat.)
pertinére, pertínuit, ——, pertain, belong
pes, pede, magnus—foot
péssimus, a, um—very bad, worst
pétere, petívit, petítus—ask, seek
pínguis e, i—fat
placet, placére, plácuit, plácitum est (with dat.)—it pleases, it is decided
planus, a, um—flat
plenus, a, um—full
plúrimus, a, um—very many, most
plus, plure (has only neuter form in sing.; plural is: plures, plura—two termination type, with *-ium* poss. plural)—more
pollicéri, pollícitus est—promise
pónere, pósuit, pósitus—put, place
pons, ponte, longus—bridge
póntifex, fice, magnus—priest
porta, a—gate, door
portáre, ávit, átus—carry
posse pótuit, ——, be able
possidére, possédit, posséssus—possess
post (with obj.)—after
póstea—afterwards
postquam—after
potéstas, táte, magna—power
praebére, praébuit, praébitus—furnish, offer
praecédere, céssit, cessúrus—go before
praecípiunt, praecípere, praecépit, praecéptus—command
praeco, cóne, bonus—herald
praefíciunt, praefícere, fécit, féctus—put someone in charge of something (praefécit Iosephum fruménto)
praémium, o—reward
praesértim—especially
praeter (with obj.)—beyond, besides, except
praevidére, vídit, vísus—foresee
primus, a, um—first
prínceps, cipe, magnus—chief, leader
princípium, o—beginning
priváre, ávit, átus—deprive (with abl.)
pro (with abl.)—for
probáre, ávit, átus—prove, test
prodésse, prófuit, profutúrus—be profitable to (with dat.)
proélium, o—battle
profanáre, ávit, átus—defile
proférre, prótulit, prolátus—bring forth
proficísci, proféctus est—set out
prohibére, prohíbuit, prohíbitus—prohibit, prevent
proíciunt, proícere, iécit, iéctus—throw forth
promíttere, mísit, míssus—promise
prope—near
propónere, pósuit, pósitus—propose
propter (with obj.)—on account of
proscríbere, scrípsit, scríptus—proscribe, list
próximus, a, um—next, nearest
puélla, a—girl
puer, púero—boy
pugna, a—battle
pulcher, chra, chrum—beautiful
pulvis, púlvere, multus—dust
puníre, punívit, punítus—punish
putáre, ávit, átus—think

quaérere, quaesívit, quaesítus—seek
qualis, e, i—such, what kind
quam—than
quamquam—although
quando—when
quare—why
-que—and
queri, questus est—complain
qui, quae, quod—who, which, that
quia—because
quicúmque, quaecúmque, quodcúmque (decline only the *qui-*) whoever, whichever, whatever
quid—what?
quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam)—certain
quis, quid—who, what?
quis, quid—someone, anyone (indef.)
quisquam, quicquam (or: quidquam—decline the *quis* part, not the *quam*)—anyone, anything
quisque, quaeque, quidque (or: quodque)—each, each one
(unus quisque—each and every one)
quod—because, that (ind. disc.), the fact that, as to the fact that
quoque—also, even (never first word)
quotídie—daily

rápiunt, rápere, rápuit, raptus—seize, snatch
recípere se—retreat
recípiunt, recípere, cépit, céptus—take back
recordári, recordátus est—remember (with poss.)
réddere, réddidit, rédditus—give back, return
redíre, rédiit, reditúrus—return, go back
régere, rexit, rectus—rule
regína, a—queen
regnáre, ávit, átus—reign
relínquere, relíquit, relíctus—leave
réliquus, a, um—rest of (used like *médius*: middle of)
remanére, mánsit, mansúrus—remain
reperíre, repéruit, repértus—find, find out
requiéscere, requiévit, requiétus—rest
res, re(5)—thing
respondére, respóndit, respónsus—answer
respónsum, o—answer
restitúere, restítuit, restitútus—restore
retinére, retínuit, reténtus—keep back, retain
reverti, revérsus est—return
revocáre, ávit, átus—recall
rex, rege, magnus—king
rogáre, ávit, átus—ask
rotúndus, a, um—round
ruber, rubra, rubrum—red

rúere, ruit, rutus—fall, rush
rúmpere, rupit, ruptus—break

sacérdos, dóte, bonus—priest
saéculum, o—century, age
saepe—often
salus, salúte—safety, salvation, health
sánguis, sánguine, bonus—blood
sapiéntia, a—wisdom
satis—sufficiently, very, enough
scire, ivit, itus—know
scríbere, scripsit, scriptus—write
scriptor, óre, bonus—writer
secúndum (with obj.)—according to
secúndus, a, um—second, successful
sed—but
semel—once
semper—always
senátor, óre, magnus—senator
senátus, u—senate
senex, sene, bonus—old man
sentíre, sensit, sensus—feel, realize, perceive
septentrionális, e, i—northern
sequi, secútus est—follow
sermo, óne, bonus—word, conversation
serváre, ávit, átus—save
servíre, 4 (with dat.)—serve, be slave to
servus, o—slave
si—if
siccus, a, um—dry
sicut—as, just as, as if
signum, o—sign, signal, standard
símilis, e, i—like, similar (with poss. or dat.)
simul—at the same time
simuláre, ávit, átus—feign, pretend
sin—but if
sine (with abl.)—without
singuli, ae, a (pl. only)—one at a time, each
sócius, o—ally, companion
sol, sole, bonus—sun
solus, a, um—alone, only
sólvere, solvit, solútus—loose, pay, free
soror, óre, bona—sister
spectáre, ávit, átus—look at
speráre, ávit, átus—hope
stare, stetit, statúrus—stand
statim—at once
statúere, státuit, statútus—set, decide, establish
sub—under (cases are like *in*—obj. for motion; abl. for rest)
subíciunt, subícere, iécit, iéctus—subject
sui, sibi, se, se—himself, etc.
súmere, sumpsit, sumptus—take, assume (súmere supplícium de eo—exact punishment from him)
super (with obj.)—above, over
supérbus, a, um—proud
supplícium, o—punishment
suscípiunt, suscípere, cépit, céptus—undertake, take
suspéndere, péndit, pénsus—hang
sustinére, sustínuit, susténtus—withstand, hold up, bear
suus, a, um—one's own, his, hers, its, theirs

tacére, tácuit, tácitus—be silent
talis, e, i—such
tam—so
tamen—nevertheless
tángere, tétigit, tactus—touch
tantum—only
tantus, a, um—so great, so large
tempus, témpore, longum—time
téndere, teténdit, tentus (tensus)—stretch, spread
ténebrae, is—darkness
tenére, ténuit, tentus—hold, keep
terra, a—land
terrére, térruit, térritus—terrify
timére, tímuit—fear
tóllere, sústulit, sublátus—remove, take, lift, raise
totus, a, um—whole
trádere, trádidit, tráditus—hand over
tráhere, traxit, tractus—draw, drag
trans (with obj.)—across
tribúere, buit, bútus—assign, give
tum—then
turris, i, magna—tower

ubértas, táte, magna—fertility, richness
ubi—where
ullus, a, um—any
último—at last
últimus, a, um—last
ultra (adv. and prep. with obj.)—more, further, beyond
unde—whence, from where
urbs, be, magna—city
úrere, ussit, ustus—burn
usque ad—as far as, even to, up to
ut—that (with subj.)

vádere (no other parts)—go
valde—very
vates, i, bonus—soothsayer, prophet
véhemens, ménti—forceful
vel—or, even
velle, vóluit—wish
véndere, véndidit, vénditus—sell
veníre, venit, ventúrus—come
ventus, o—wind
verbum, o—word
véritas, táte, bona—truth
vértere, vertit, versus—turn, change, translate
verus, a, um—true; re vera—in truth, really
vesci (no other parts)—eat (often with abl.)
vetus, vétere—old
via, a—way, road, means
victória, a—victory
vidére, vidit, visus—see
víncere, vicit, victus—conquer
vínculum, o—bond, chain
vir, viro—man
virgo, virgine, bona—virgin, maiden
vita, a—life
vívere, vixit, victúrus—live
vix—hardly, scarcely
vocáre, ávit, átus—call
volúntas, táte, bona—will
vox, voce, magna—voice
vulnus, vúlnere, magnum—wound

ENGLISH — LATIN VOCABULARY

For the most part, the parts of words are not given here, since they are provided in the Latin-English section. But they are given for some odd words, and for words which occur early in the year, before the use of the system of parts is fully explained. You will find it very helpful to reread the stories, for that will show you many expressions, some of considerable size, that you can use in translating the sentences.

able (be)—posse, pótuit
adore—adoráre
against—contra
age—aetas
alive—vivus: be alive—vívere
alone—solus
allow—permíttere
although—quamquam, cum
among—inter
ancestors—maióres
angel—ángelus
anger—ira
angry (be)—irásci, ira movéri
animal—ánimal
appear—apparére
arise—súrgere
ark—arca
arms—arma
arrest—comprehéndere
art—ars
ask—rogáre, pétere
attack—aggrediúntur
attempt—conári
Athens—Athénae, is
authority—auctóritas

bad—malus
barn—hórreum
battle—pugna, proélium
be—esse
because of—propter *or* ob (with obj.) or use abl. case alone
before—ántequam
believe—crédere
better—mélior
be willing—velle
bird—avis
birth—natívitas
blind—caecus
blood—sanguis
bold—audax
border—finis
born (be)—nasci
brave—fortis
bravely—fórtiter
break—frángere
bring—ferre
bring forth—proférre

brother—frater
build—aedificáre
burden—onus
bush—rubus
buy—émere

Caesar—Caesar, are
call—vocáre
camel—camélus
capture—cápiunt
Carthage—Carthágo, gine
catch—cápiunt
Cato—Cato, óne
certain—quidam, certus
chain—vínculum
change—mutáre
charge—crimen
circumcise—circumcídere
citizen—civis
city—urbs
collect—collígere
come—veníre
commander—dux
commands—iussa
commit—commíttere
communist—communísta, a
conquer—víncere, vicit
conspiracy—coniurátio
consul—consul, ule
consult—consúlere
consume—consúmere
continue—perseveráre
council—concílium
count—numeráre
country—pátria, terra
courage—fortitúdo
create—creáre
crown—coróna
cry out—exclamáre
cut off—interclúdere

dagger—sica
danger—perículum
dare—audére
day—dies
death—mors
decide—statúere; placére ei
defeat—víncere
delay—morári
depart—discédere
deserve—merére
deservingly—mérito
destroy—delére
devil—diábolus
die—moriúntur
divide—divídere
do—fácere
door—porta
doubt—dúbium
draft—deléctus
drag—tráhere
dry—siccus
dust—pulvis
dwell—habitáre

each and every one—unus quisque
earth—terra, mundus
eastern—orientális, e, i
eat—comédere
Egyptians—Aegýptii
either . . . or—aut . . . aut
enemy—hostis, inimícus
enjoy—frui
enter—iníre, ingrediúntur

envy—invídia
escape—evádere ab *or* ex
eternal—aetérnus
every—omnis
evil—malum
except—praeter (with abl.), nisi
exile—exsílium
expel—expéllere
explain—explicáre
extend—exténdere

face—fácies
famine—fames
father—pater
favor—grátia
fear—timére
feed—álere
feed on—pasci
few—pauci
field—ager
fierce—ferox
fight—pugna, proélium
fight—pugnáre
fill—complére, implére
find—inveníre
finish—finíre
fire—ignis
flee—fúgiunt
flood—dilúvium
fly—musca
follow—sequi
food—cibus
foot—pes
force—cógere
forget—oblivísci
forgive—ignóscere
for sake of—propter *or* ob (obj.)
free—liberáre
friend—amícus
fulfill—complére, implére

gate—porta
Gaul—Gállia (country); Gallus (man)
general—dux, imperátor
get out—discédere
get possession of—potíri
girl—puélla
give—dare
give back—réddere
give (speech)—oratiónem habére
glad—laetus
gnats—cínifes (malae)
go—ire
God—Deus
gold—aurum
good—bonus
go out—exíre
govern—gubernáre
grain—fruméntum
great—magnus
grief—dolor
grow—créscere

hand—manus
Hannibal—Hánnibal, ále
happen—accídere
happy—felix, laetus
hard—difficilis
harden—induráre
harm—nocére
hate—odísse
hatred—ódium
have—habére, hábuit
hear—audíre

heart—cor
heavy—gravis
Hebrew—Hebraéus
help—auxílium dare, adiuváre, iuváre
help—auxílium
hide—abscóndere
holocaust—holocaústum
holy—sanctus
hope—spes
horn—cornu
horseman—eques, ite
house—domus

immortal—immortális
immortality—immortálitas
in—in (abl. or obj.)
increase—augére
in order that—ut
in reality—re vera
interpreter—intérpres, ete
into—in (with obj.)
irrigate—irrigáre
Italy—Itália

keep—retinére
kill—interfícere
king—rex
knee—genu
know—scire, scivit; not know—nescíre
knowledge—sciéntia

lack (be lacking)—deésse
lamb—agnus
land—ager, terra
last—últimus
law—lex
lead—dúcere
learn—díscere
leave (depart from)—discédere ab, relínquere
legate—legátus
legend—fábula
lest—ne
letter—epístula
life—vita
light—lux
lightning—fulgur
like—amáre
loud (voice)—vox magna
love—amor, óre
love—amáre

make—fáciunt
make war—bellum movére
man—vir, homo
many—multi
marry—in matrimónium dúcere
Mary—María
messenger—núntius
mile—mille pássuum
miracle—miráculum
Mithradates—Mithradátes, e
money—pecúnia
moon—luna
mountain—mons
much—multus
mystery—mystérium

name—nomen
nation—nátio, gens
natural ability—ingénium
necessary—necésse
neither . . . nor—nec . . . nec (neque)
never—numquam

nevertheless—nihilóminus
new—novus
night—nox
number—númerus

obey—obedíre
offer—offérre
often—saepe
Old Testament—Vetus Testaméntum
on account of: see: "because of"
once upon a time—olim
open—aperíre
orator—orátor, óre
order—iubére, imperáre
Osiris—Osíris, ide
ought—debére
overtake—cónsequi
owe—debére

pain—dolor
part—pars
patrician—patrícius
peace—pax
perish—períre
permission—licéntia
Pharao—Phárao, óne
pig—porcus
pirate—piráta, a
place—locus
plague—plaga
plan—consílium
plant—herba
please—placére, iuváre
power—potéstas
praise—laudáre
precious—pretiósus
prefer—malle
prepare—paráre
pretend—simuláre
prison—carcer
profane—profanáre
promise—promíttere
prophecy—prophetía
province—província
Punic—Carthaginiénsis, e, i; Púnicus, a, um
punish—puníre
put—pónere
put down—depónere

question—interrogáre
quickly—celériter

race (human)—genus humánum
rain—imber
raise—exténdere, tóllere
really—re vera
recall—revocáre
receive—accípiunt
religion—relígio, óne

remain—remanére
rest—requiéscere
rest of—réliquus
restore—réddere, restitúere
retreat—se recípere
return—redíre, revérti, íterum veníre
reward—praémium
rich—dives
right—ius
ring—ánulus
river—flumen
rod—virga
Roman—Románus
Rome—Roma
rule—régere, regnáre
run—cúrrere

sack—saccus
sacrifice—sacrifícium
sad(be)—dolóre afficiúntur
sail—navigáre
sailor—nauta
salvation—salus
same—idem
save—serváre, salváre
say—dícere; say no—negáre
scarcely—vix
school—schola
scorn—contémnere
sea—mare
see—vidére
seek—quaérere
seem: use passive of vidére
seize—cápiunt, ere
-self—ipse, sui
sell—véndere
senate—senátus
send—míttere
servant—servus
set out—proficísci
set over—praefíciunt
sharp—acer
shed (blood)—effúndere sánguinem
shepherd—pastor
show—monstráre
sick—aeger
similar—símilis
sin—peccátum
sin—peccáre
sky—coelum
slave—servus
sleep—somnus
snake—serpens
snatch—rápiunt
soldier—miles, mílite
son—fílius
soon—mox
soothsayer—vates
southern—meridionális, e, i

spare—párcere
speak—loqui
speech—orátio
star—stella
statue—státua
stop—cessáre
strange—novus
suffer—patiúntur
suffering—labor
sun—sol
surround—circumstáre
sword—gládius

take—accípiunt
teacher—magíster
terrify—terrére
test—probáre
that—ille
that—quod (ind. statement)
there—ibi
thing—res
this—hic
throw—iáciunt, ere
thunder—tonítruum
time—tempus
touch—tángere
tower—turris
town—óppidum
tree—lignum
trial—iudícium
tribune—tribúnus
trust—confídere (in)
truth—véritas, táte
try—conári

uncle—avúnculus
unharmed—incólumis

vegetation—herbae

want—velle, vóluit
war—bellum
warn—monére
water—aqua
weep—flére
well—bene
were—fuérunt, erant
where—ubi
whether—num
which—qui, quae, quod
whole—totus
will—volúntas
will—velle
willing (be)—velle
word—verbum
work—labor; opus, ópere
world—mundus
worship—cólere
write—scríbere

year—annus

Index